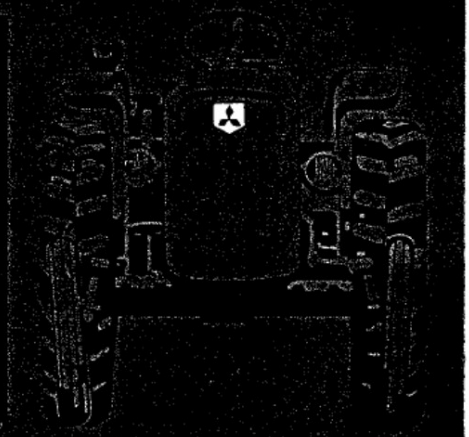
ISO

MITSUBISHI
MT160,160D
MT180,180D
MT180H,180HD
REPAIR MANUAL



REMARQUES

INDEX

REMARQUES

ISO

CHAPTER 1
GENERAL DESCRIPTION

REMARQUES

TABLE OF CONTENTS

REMARQUES

Tractor model					MT160	MT160D	MT180	MT180D	MT180H	MT180HD
Type					All purpose wheel tractor					
Body structure					Monocoque type					
Dimensions	Overall length	To end of rear tire		mm(in.)	2200 (86-19/32)		2225 (87-19/32)			
		To end of 3-point linkage			2523 (99-11/32)					
	Overall width				975 (38-3/8)		940 (37)	970 (38-3/16)	940 (37)	970 (38-3/16)
	Overall height	To top of steering wheel			1155 (45-15/32)	1165 (45-7/8)	1175 (46-1/4)	1185 (46-21/32)	1175 (46-1/4)	1185 (46-21/32)
	Wheelbase				1300 (51-3/16)					
	Ground clearnce				260 (10-1/4)	215 (8-15/32)	280 (11-1/32)	215 (8-15/32)	280 (11-1/32)	215 (8-15/32)
	Gross weight			kg (lb)	565 (1246)	615 (1356)	575 (1268)	625 (1278)	575 (1268)	625 (1278)
	Load distribution (without load)		Front axle		260 (573)	310 (684)	260 (573)	320 (706)	260 (573)	320 (706)
			Rear axle		305 (673)		315 (695)	305 (673)	315 (695)	305 (673)
	Turning radius (with brakes)			mm (in.)	1850 (72-27/32)					
Engine	Model				MITSUBISHI K3A-13MT		MITSUBISHI K3C-13MT			
	Type				Vertical, 4-stroke cycle, water cooled, overhead valve, in line, diesel					
	Number of cylinders				3					
	Combustion chamber type				Swirl combustion chamber with preheater					
	Cylinder liner				Non liner					
	Bore and stroke			mm (in.)	65 x 78 (2-9/16 x 3)		70 x 78 (2-49/64 x 3)			
	Piston displacement			cc (cu in.)	776 (47.4)		900 (54.9)			
	Compression ratio				23 : 1					
	Firing order				1 - 3 - 2					
	Rated rpm			rpm	2700					
	Max. rpm				2900^{+0}_{-75}					
	Idling rpm				925± 25					
	Max. bare HP (SAE)			HP/rpm	16.5/2700		18.5/2700			
	Max. torque			kg-m/rpm (ft-lb/rpm)	4.5 (32.5)/1900		5.2 (37.6)/1900			

Tractor model				MT160	MT160D	MT180	MT180D	MT180H	MT180HD
Engine	Compression pressure		kg/cm² (psi)/rpm	32 (455) /280					
	Number of piston rings			3 compression rings and 1 oil ring					
	Intake valves	Open	deg	At 18° before TDC					
		Close		At 46° after BDC					
	Exhaust valves	Open		At 46° before BDC					
		Close		At 18° after TDC					
	Injection timing			At 21° ± 2° before TDC					
	Valve clearance	Intake valves	mm (in.)	0.25 (0.01) at cold					
		Exhaust valves		0.25 (0.01) at cold					
	Fuel consumption		g/HP/h (oz/HP/h)	220 (7.7)		230 (8.1)			
	Direction of rotation			Clockwise (as viewed from front)					
	Weight, dry		kg (lb)	125 (276)					
Cooling system	Radiator fin			Corrugate type					
	Radiator cap pressure		kg/cm² (psi)	0.9 (12.8)					
	Thermostat	Type		Wax pellet type					
		Begins to open	°C (°F)	82 (180)					
		Full open		95 (203)					
		Lift	mm (in.)	8 (0.3) at 95° C (203 °F)					
	Water pump	Type		Centrifugal impeller type					
		Feeding capacity	ℓ /min (U.S.gal/min.)	52 (13.7) at 2600 engine rpm					
	Cooling fan	Diameter	mm (in.)	290 (11-13/32)					
		Number of blades		4					
		Blade meterial		Plastic					
	Pulley ratio of fan and crankshaft pulley			1.32					
	Drive system			"V" - type belt					

Fuel system	Fuel			Bruns grade No. 2-D fuel oil (ASTM specifications)
	Fuel injection pump	Type		Bosch "M" plunger in line
		Model		NIPPON DENSO ND-PFR-3M
		Diameter of plunger	mm (in.)	5.5 (7/32)
		Cam lift		7 (9/32)
	Fuel injection nozzles	Type		Throttle type
		Model		NIPPON DENSO ND-DN4SD24
		Injection pressure	kg/cm^2 (psi)	$120\ ^{+10}_{-0}$ ($1706\ ^{+142}_{-0}$)
	Fuel filter			Paper element type
Lubrication system	Oil pump	Type		Trochoid type
		Feeding capacity	ℓ/min. (U.S. gal/min.)	20 (5.28) at 2600 engine rpm
	Oil filter			Full flow paper element filter cartridge type
	Relief valve setting		kg/cm^2 (psi)	4 (57)
Air cleaner	Type			Cyclone dry air cleaner
	Filter			Dry paper element cartridge type
	Cleaning efficiency			More than 99.9%
	Dust holding		g (oz)	20 (0.7)
Governor system	Type			Mechanical all-speed control
	Speed control		rpm	90～2900
Electrical system	Generator	Type		Alternator
		Model		MITSUBISHI AH2053M4
		Voltage	V	12
		Capacity	A	35
	Starter motor	Type		Magnet type
		Model		MITSUBISHI M002T50381
		Voltage	V	12
		Output	kW	1.6

Tractor				MT160	MT160D	MT180	MT180D	MT180H	MT180HD
Electrical system	Regulator	Type		Tirrill type					
		Model		MITSUBISHI RQB2220D1					
		Regulator voltage (no load)	V	14.8					
		Warning lamp lighting on voltage		0.5 ~ 3.0					
		Warning lamp lighting off voltage		4.2 ~ 5.2					
	Glow plugs	Type		Sheathed type					
		Rated voltage	V (A)	10.5					
		Resistance capacity (at normal temperature)	Ω	1 ~ 1.2					
	Glow plug indicator	Type		Red heat type					
		Rated current	A	30					
		Terminal-to-terminal voltage	V	0.9 ~ 1.1 (at 30A)					
Clutch system	Type			Dry single disc plate diaphragm spring type					
	Clutch disc diameter		mm (in.)	184 x 127 (7-5/16 x 5-1/32)					
	Lining thickness			7.8 (5/16)					
	Torque capacity		kg-m (ft-lb)	11.0 (79.6)					
	Spring pressure		kg(lb)	195 (430)					
Transmission	Number of shift levers			2					
	Speeds			6 - forward, 2- reverse				2-forward, 2-reverse	
	Speed change method			Selective sliding gear type				Hydrostatic type	
	Differential			Bevel gear type with differential lock					
	Differential lock			Foot pedal (right side of transmission case)					

Travel speeds

MT160 and MT160D
(2-WD and 4-WD) (at engine speed 2700 rpm)

Speed	Lever position	km/hr	mile/hr	m/sec
F-1	L-1	1.1	0.68	0.31
F-2	L-2	1.7	1.06	0.47
F-3	L-3	2.9	1.80	0.81
F-4	H-1	4.9	3.04	1.36
F-5	H-2	7.4	4.60	2.06
F-6	H-3	13.5 (max)	8.38	3.75
R-1	L-R	1.4	0.87	0.39
R-2	H-R	6.3	3.91	1.75

Tire size: 8–18AG tire

Speed	Lever position	km/hr	mile/hr	m/sec
F-1	L-1	1.2	0.75	0.33
F-2	L-2	1.8	1.12	0.50
F-3	L-3	3.1	1.93	0.86
F-4	H-1	5.3	3.29	1.47
F-5	H-2	7.9	4.91	2.19
F-6	H-3	14.5 (max)	9.00	4.03
R-1	L-R	1.5	0.73	0.42
R-2	H-R	6.7	4.16	1.86

MT180 and MT180D
(2-WD and 4-WD) (at engine speed 2700 rpm)

Speed	Lever position	km/hr	mile/hr	m/sec
F-1	L-1	1.15	0.71	0.32
F-2	L-2	1.78	1.11	0.49
F-3	L-3	3.04	1.89	0.85
F-4	H-1	5.13	3.18	1.42
F-5	H-2	7.75	4.82	2.16
F-6	H-3	14.14	8.78	3.93
R-1	L-R	1.47	0.91	0.41
R-2	H-R	6.56	4.09	1.83

Tire size: 9.5–18ES tire

Speed	Lever position	km/hr	mile/hr	m/sec
F-1	L-1	1.24	0.78	0.34
F-2	L-2	1.86	1.16	0.52
F-3	L-3	3.21	2.00	0.89
F-4	H-1	5.49	3.41	1.52
F-5	H-2	2.18	5.09	2.27
F-6	H-3	15.02	9.32	4.17
R-1	L-R	1.55	0.96	0.43
R-2	H-R	6.94	4.31	1.93

MT180H and MT180HD
(2-WD and 4-WD) (at engine speed 2700rpm)

Speed	Lever position	km/hr	mile/hr	m/sec.
F-1	L	0 ~ 6.2	0 ~ 3.9	0 ~ 1.7
F-2	H	0 ~ 16.6	0 ~ 10.3	0 ~ 4.6
R-1	L	0 ~ 3.4	0 ~ 2.1	0 ~ 0.9
R-2	H	0 ~ 8.5	0 ~ 5.3	0 ~ 2.4

Tire rise: 9.5–18ES tire

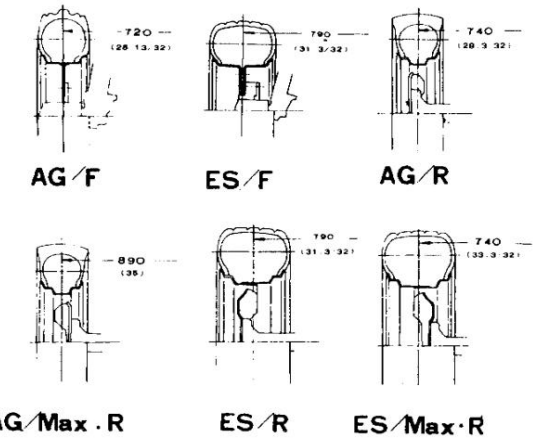
Speed	Lever position	Km/hr	mile/hr	m/sec.
F-1	L	0 ~ 6.4	0 ~ 4.0	0 ~ 1.8
F-2	H	0 ~ 17.2	0 ~ 10.7	0 ~ 4.8
R-1	L	0 ~ 3.5	0 ~ 2.2	0 ~ 0.97
R-2	H	0 ~ 8.8	0 ~ 5.5	0 ~ 2.4

Tractor model					MT160	MT160D	MT180	MT180D	MT180H	MT180HD
Final reduction	Final reduction gear				Spur gear					
	Reduction ratio				11/72 (0.153)					
	Type of rear axle				1/2 floating type					
Power take-off	Power take-off step				3-step				2-step	
	Power take-off HP			HP/rpm	13.6/2700		15.5/2700			
	Power take-off shaft				1-3/8 in. 6-spline SAE standard					
	Power take-off rpm	First		rpm	623/2700 engine rpm				606/2700 engine rpm	
		Second			919/2700 engine rpm				1,186/2700 engine rpm	
		Third			1,506/2700 engine rpm					
	Standard power take-off	Shift position	First		540/2660 engine rpm				540/2405 engine rpm	
			Third(second)		1,000/1793 engine rpm				1,000/2278 engine rpm	
	Direction of rotation				Clockwise as viewed from the rear					
Steering	Steering system				Ackerman jant method					
	Axle center				Center pivot type					
	Steering knuckle arrangement				Lemoine type	Reverse Elliott type	Lemoine type	Reverse Elliott type	Lemoine type	Reverse Elliott type
	Tread adjustment				Not adjustable					
	Axle center swing angle			deg	8					
	Kingpin angle				8	10	8	10	8	10
	Camber				2.5					
	Caster				3	0	3	0	3	0
	Toe-in			mm(in.)	6.4±1.5(1/4±1/16)	0 ~ 6(15/64)	6.4±1.5(1/4±1/16)	0 ~ 6(15/64)	6.4±1.5(1/4±1/16)	0 ~ 6(15/64)
	Steering angle			deg	55	53	55	53	55	53
	Steering gear box (inside)				Ball screw type					
	Gear ratio				15					
	Steering wheel diameter			mm(in.)	403 (15-29/32)					
Brake system	Type				Foot operating, internal expansion, waterproof dry type					
	Brake pedal				Seperate with interlocking foot operating type					
	Parking brake and operating				Main brake used hand, operating lock, type					

Brake system	Lining	Lengh x width x thickness	mm(in.)	119 x 28.5 x 4.0 (4-11/16 x 1-1/8 x 5/32)						
		Number of linings		4						
	Drum diameter		mm(in.)	114 (4-31/64)						
	Brake location			Differential shaft						
	Brake pedal free play		mm(in.)	25 ~ 30 (63/64 ~ 1-3/16)						
Tire	Front AG	Tire size and ply rating		4.00-9-4PR	5-12-4PR	4.50-10-4PR	5-12-4PR	4.50-10-4PR	5-12-4PR	
		Tire pattern		Three-rib:F-2	Farm-lug:R-1	Three-rib:F-2	Farm-lug:R-1	Three-rib:F-2	Farm-lug:R-1	
		Tire pressure	kg/cm² (psi)	3.25(46.2)	2.2 (31.3)					
		Outside diameter	mm(in.)	457 (18)	550(21-21/32)	488(19-7/32)	550(21-21/32)	488(19-7/32)	550(21-21/32)	
		Tire width		113 (4-7/16)	123(4-27/32)	120(4-23/32)	123(4-27/32)	120(4-23/32)	123(4-27/32)	
		Maximum load	kg (lb)	200 (441)	210 (463)	205 (452)	210 (463)	205 (452)	210 (463)	
		Type of valve		TR - 13						
		Rim size		3.00Dx9DT	4JAx12	3.00Dx10DT	4JAx12	3.00Dx10DT	4JAx12	
	Front ES (option)	Tire size and ply rating		18x7.00-8-4PR	6-12-4PR	20x8.00-10-4PR	6-12-4PR	20x8.00-10-4PR	6-12-4PR	
		Tire pattern		Pillow-dia:G-2	All-weather:R-3	Pillow-dia:G-2	All-weather:R-3	Pillow-dia:G-2	All-weather:R-3	
		Tire pressure	kg/cm² (psi)	2.0 (28.4)	2.2 (31.3)	1.7 (24.2)	2.2 (31.3)	1.7 (24.2)	2.2 (31.3)	
		Outside diameter	mm(in.)	457 (18)	564(22-7/32)	495(19-15/32)	564(22-7/32)	495(19-15/32)	564(22-7/32)	
		Tire width		170(7-3/32)	155(6-3/32)	193(7-19/32)	155(6-3/32)	193(7-19/32)	155(6-3/32)	
		Maximum load	kg(lb)	310 (684)	270 (595)	410 (904)	270 (595)	410 (904)	270 (595)	
		Type of vlave		TR - 413	TR - 13	TR - 413	TR - 13	TR - 413	TR - 13	
		Rim size		5.50x8DT	5JAx12	6.00Ix10DT	5JAx12	6.00Ix10DT	5JAx12	
	Rear AG	Tire size and ply rating		8 - 16 - 4PR		8 - 18 - 4PR				
		Tire pattern		Farm-lug : R-1						
		Tire pressure	kg/cm² (psi)	1.0 (14.2)						
		Outside diameter	mm(in.)	783 (30 - 13/16)		840 (33 - 5/64)				
		Tire width		197 (7 - 3/4)		197 (7 - 3/4)				
		Maximum load	kg/(lb)	475 (1047)		515 (1136)				
		Type of valve		TR - 15		TR - 281A				
		Rim size		W6 x 16		W6 x 18				

Tractomr model					MT160	MT160D	MT180	MT180D	MT180H	MT180HD
Tire	(option)	Tire size and ply rating			9.5 - 16 - 4PR		9.5 - 18 - 4PR			
		Tire pattern			All-weather : R-3		All- weather : R-3			
		Tire pressure		kg/cm² (psi)	1.0 (14.2)		1.0 (14.2)			
		Outside diameter		mm(in.)	820 (32 - 9/32)		870 (34 - 1/4)			
		Tire width			242 (9 - 17/32)		242 (9 - 17/32)			
		Maximum load		kg(lb)	555 (1224)		600 (1323)			
		Type of valve			TR - 15		TR - 218A			
		Rim size			W8 x 16		W8 x 18			
Tread adjustment	AG tire	Standard tread	Front		720(28-13/32)	785(30-29/32)	720(28-13/32)	785(30-29/32)	720(28-13/32)	785(30-29/32)
			Rear		740 (29 - 3/32)		740 (29 - 3/32)			
		Max. tread	Front		–	–	–	–	–	–
			Rear		890 (35)		890 (35)			
	ES tire	Standard tread	Front		790(31-3/32)	800 (31-1/2)	795(31-5/16)	800(31-1/2)	795(31-5/16)	800(31-1/2)
			Rear		790 (31 - 3/32)		770 (30 - 5/16)			
		Max. tread	Front		–	–	–	–	–	–
			Rear		840 (33 - 3/32)		865 (34 - 1/16)			

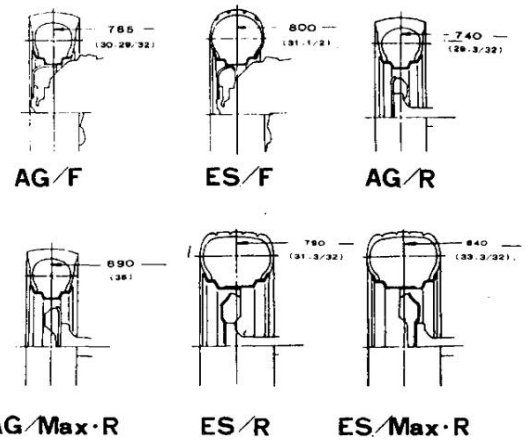
MT160 (2-WD)



AG/F ES/F AG/R

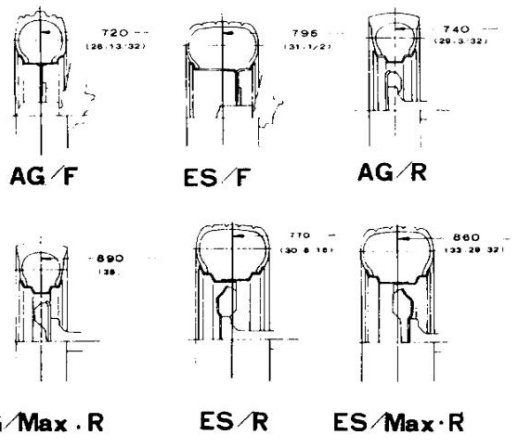
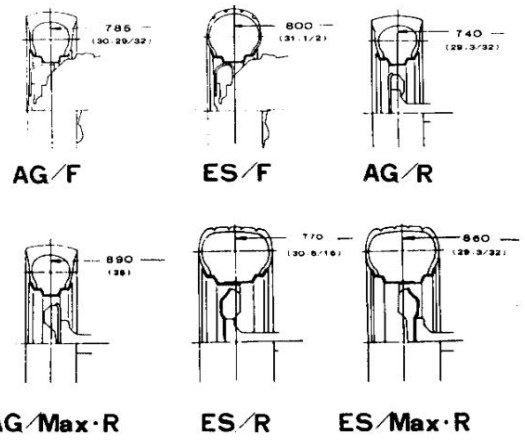
AG/Max . R ES/R ES/Max·R

MT160D (4-WD)



AG/F ES/F AG/R

AG/Max·R ES/R ES/Max·R

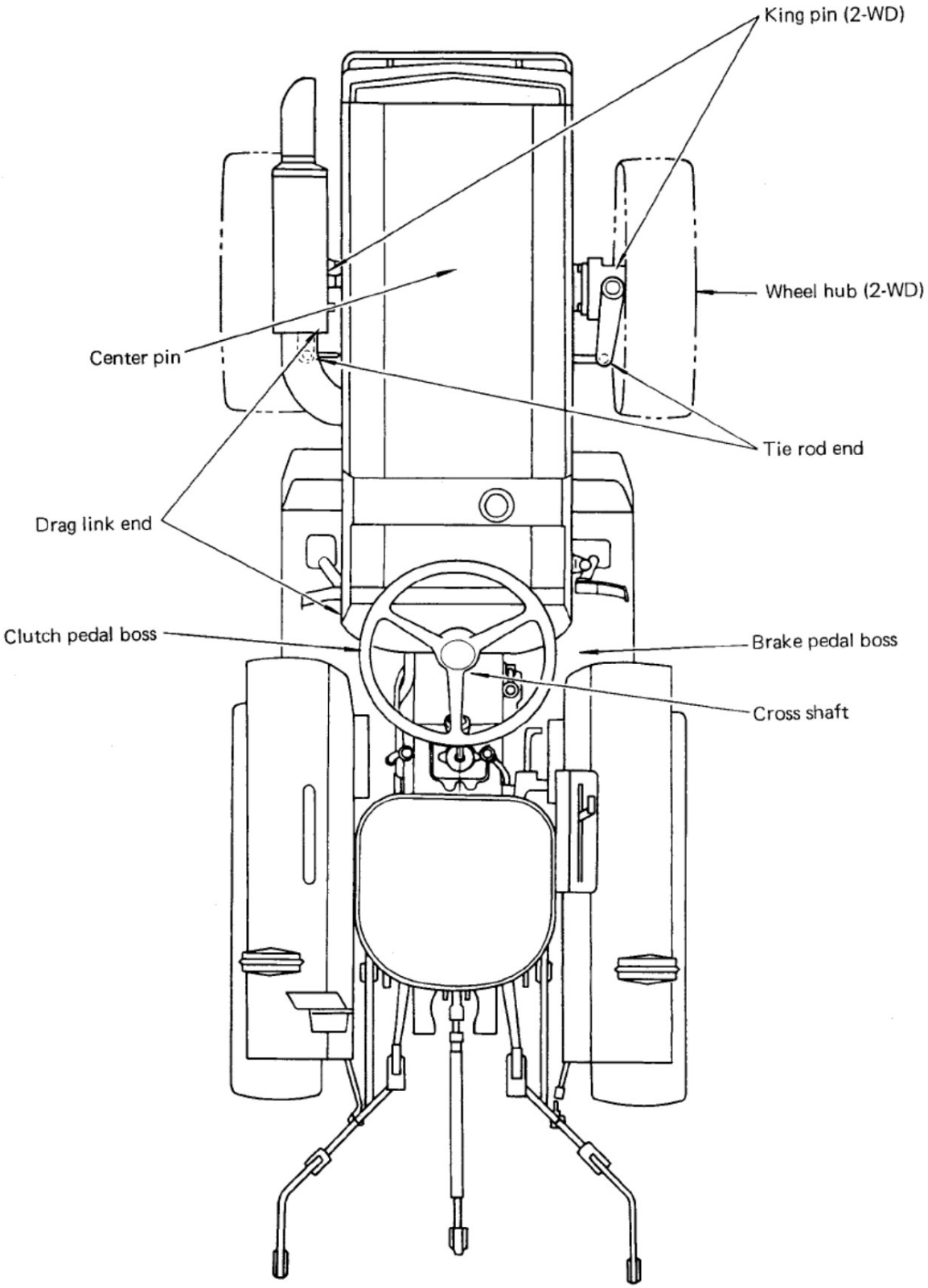
Tread adjustment	MT180 & MT180H			MT180D & MT180HD	
	 AG/F ES/F AG/R AG/Max·R ES/R ES/Max·R			 AG/F ES/F AG/R AG/Max·R ES/R ES/Max·R	
Hydraulic system	Control			Lift,hold,down,flow control	Position control, downspeed control and lock
	Cylinder	Type		Single - acting	
		Diameter of piston	mm(in.)	60 (2 - 3/8)	
		Stroke of piston		71 (2 - 13/16)	
	Maximum lift power at end of lower link		kg(lb)	500 (1103)	
	Pressure for pump relief valve setting		kg/cm^2 (psi)	135 (1920)	
	Hydraulic pump	Type		Pressure loading gear type	
		Name and model		NACHI GP - 3607A	
		Capacity	liter/min (U.S.gal/min)	12.9 (3.4) at 2700 engine rpm	
	Control valve type			Spool valve, 3-port, 3-position	2 spool valve with unload valve
	Oil lock valve			In line, non-return valve, flow control valve type	
	Strainer mesh			# 42 x 100 mesh	
	Hydraulic oil			SAE # 80 gear oil same as transmission oil	
	Hydraulic external adaptor			Optional	
	Lifting speed of 3-point linkage		sec	1	

Tractor model				MT160	MT160D	MT180	MT180D	MT180H	MT180HD
3-point linkage	Category			JIS "1"					
	Lifting capacity		kg (lb)	500 (1103)					
	Top hitch pin hole dia		mm (in.)	19 (3/4)					
	Lower link stud hole dia			22 (7/8)					
	Width of cross-shaft			683 (26-29/32)					
Drawbar	Type			Fixed type					
	Max. drawbar pull		kg (lb)	–	–	390 (860)	590 (1300)	390 (860)	590 (1300)
	Max. drawbar HP		HP	–	–	–	–	–	–
Electrical system	Battery	Model		NX100 - S6L (S)					
		Capacity	V-Ah	12 - 45					
		Size (length x width x height)	mm (in.)	238 x 129 x 203 (9-3/8 x 5-5/64 x 8)					
		Weight	kg (lb)	14 (30.9)					
		Specific gravity of electrolyte		1,260[20°C (68° F)]					
		Polarity of ground		Negative					
	Head lamps	Bulbs	V-W	12 - 35, 2 pcs					
		Light switch		Relay type 3 steps, up and down					
	Tractor meter			Engine tachometer					
	Engine lubrication warning lamp	Location		On the instrumental pannel					
		Type		Warning tellite					
		Warning lamp lighting pressure	kg/cm^2 (psi)	0.2~0.4 (2.8~5.7)					
		Lamp color		Red					
	Water temperature warning lamp	Location		On the instrumental pannel					
		Type		Warning tellite					
		Warning lamp lighting temperature	°C (°F)	105 ~ 111 (221 ~ 232)					
		Lamp color		Red					
	Battery charging warning lamp	Location		On the instrumental pannel					
		Type		Warning tellite					

Electrical system	Battery charging warning lamp	Warning lamp lights on	V	0.5 ~ 3.0							
		Warning lamp lights off		4.2 ~ 5.2							
		Lamp color		Red							
	Safety starter switch	Capacity	V-A	12 - 35 (Momentary 70A)							
		Stroke	mm (in.)	3 ± 0.5 (1/8 ± 1/64)							
	Working lamp (optional)	Bulb	V-W	12 - 23							
		Location		At the rear of right hand fender							
	Fuse		A	10							
Capacities (approximate initial fill)	Cooling water		liter (quart)	5 (5)							
	Engine oil		liter(pint)	3 (6)							
	Transmission oil		liter (U.S.gal-pint)	12 (3-1)					14 (3-6)		
	Steering gearbox		CC (oz)	200 (6.8)							
	Hydraulic oil			Same as transmission oil							
	Front differential case oil Incl. kingpin case oil		liter(pint)	–	2.5 (5)	–	2.5 (5)		–		2.5 (5)
	Fuel tank		(U.S.gal-pint)	18 (4 - 6)							

These specifications are subject to change without notice.

GREASING DIAGRAM



The greasing part of MT160/D and MT180H/HD are same as MT180/D.

This figure shows MT180D.

PERIODICAL MAINTENANCE SERVICES

● = replacement ○ = clean-up ⊕ = check

Item	Maintenance interval								Thereafter every
	Initial 50 hrs	100 hrs	150 hrs	200 hrs	250 hrs	300 hrs	350 hrs	400 hrs	
Engine oil	●	●		●		●		●	100
Engine oil filter element	●	●		●		●		●	100
Fuel filter element	○	○		○		○		●	○ 100 ● 400
Air cleaner element	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	●	○ 50 ● 400
Injection nozzle pressure								⊕	400
Transmission oil and HST filter	●	⊕		●		⊕		●	● 200 ⊕ 100
Hydraulic oil filter element	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	50
4-WD front axle differential case and front gear case oil	●	⊕		●		⊕		●	● 200 ⊕ 100
Valve clearance	⊕							⊕	400
Cooling water	●	⊕	⊕	⊕	⊕	⊕	⊕	●	⊕ 50 ● 400
Specific gravity of battery electrolyte	⊕	⊕		⊕		⊕		⊕	100

NOTE

It is advised the intervals mentioned in the above list regarding replacing, cleaning-up and checking are for the standard cases and then desired to make each work so as to meet the requirement depending upon the usage condition of the tractors.

Initial 50 hrs services are for a brand new tractor.

LUBRICATION TABLE

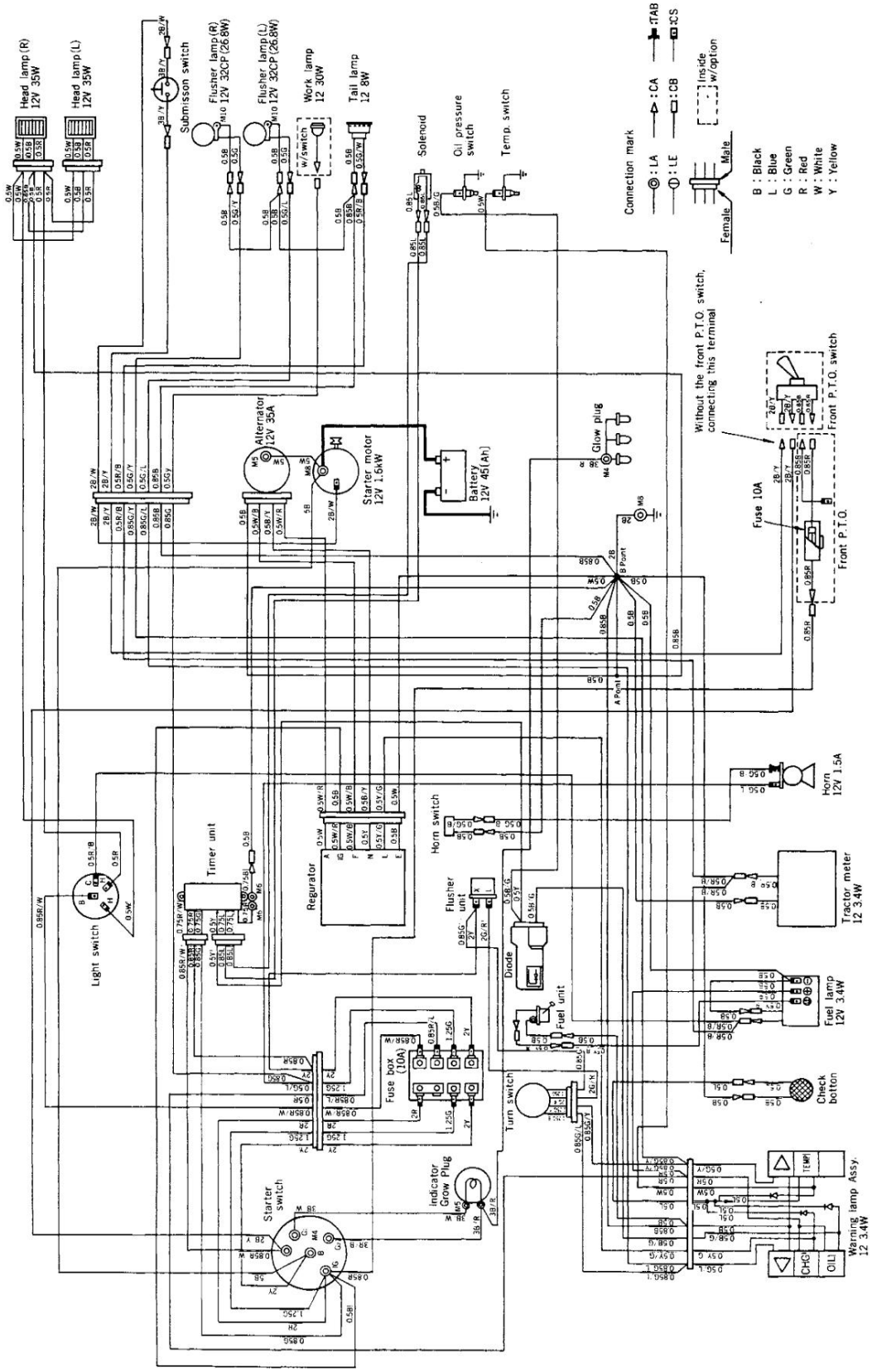
Application	Kind of Oil	API classification	Ambient Temperature	Grade (SAE No.)		Description
				Single	Multi	
Engine	Motor oil or Super tractor oil universal (STOU)	CC CD	~ 10°C (14°F)	5W	5W-20	Use High grade oil of famous brand.
			–20 ~ 0°C (–4 ~ 32°F)	10W	10W-30	
			–10 ~ 10°C (14 ~ 50°F)	20W		
			0 ~ 20°C (32 ~ 68°F)	20		
			10 ~ 30°C (50 ~ 86°F)	30		
			30°C (86°F) ~	40	20W-40	
Transmission/ Hydraulic, 4-WD Front Axle.	Gear Oil	GL-3 or better	Below 0°C (32°F)	75W	–	Use good grade oil of famous brand.
			–10 ~ 30°C (14 ~ 86°F)	80W	80W-90	
			0 ~ 35°C (32 ~ 95°F)	85W	85W-140	
			10°C (50°F) & above	90		
	——OR——					
	* Farm tractor use transmission /hydraulic oil or multi-service fluid.		All seasons			Use good grade oil supplied by famous farm tractor manufacturers or oil companies.
Steering gear oil	Grease	–	NLG1 – No. 1			Not requiring periodical service. Replace only when overhauling.

* **NOTE**

As transmission oil is also used as hydraulic oil, gear oil with higher viscosity will give a very bad influence on starting behaviour of the engine. From this standpoint this kind of oil is recommendable for the areas of very low air temperature in winter season.

For more details, please ask your MITSUBISHI dealer.

WIRING DIAGRAM



ANTIFREEZE

When the atmospheric temperature is lower than 0°C (32°F), cooling water should be drained off completely or antifreeze solution should be added to prevent the breakdown of the cylinder block due to the frozen cooling water. Percentage of the antifreeze to be added should be a little higher than specified for the lowest atmospheric temperature in your area.

When adding antifreeze solution, the following rules should be observed, otherwise, the cylinder block will rust.

(1) This tractor's engine is of a diesel type and its cylinder block is made of cast iron. Therefore antifreeze solution suitable for such a cast engine block must be used.

(2) Before adding mixture of antifreeze and water, completely drain cooling water and clean the radiator using a detergent.

(3) Water to be added to the antifreeze should be a clean soft water.

(4) When the antifreeze is no longer required, drain and wash the cooling system using a detergent and fill it again with clean water. Do not re-use the antifreeze solution after it has been drained from cooling system.

(5) Treat antifreeze carefully as it can remove paint from the cylinder block.

(6) Any antifreeze solution (antifreeze and water), even if it is a permanent antifreeze, should not be used for more than 2 years.

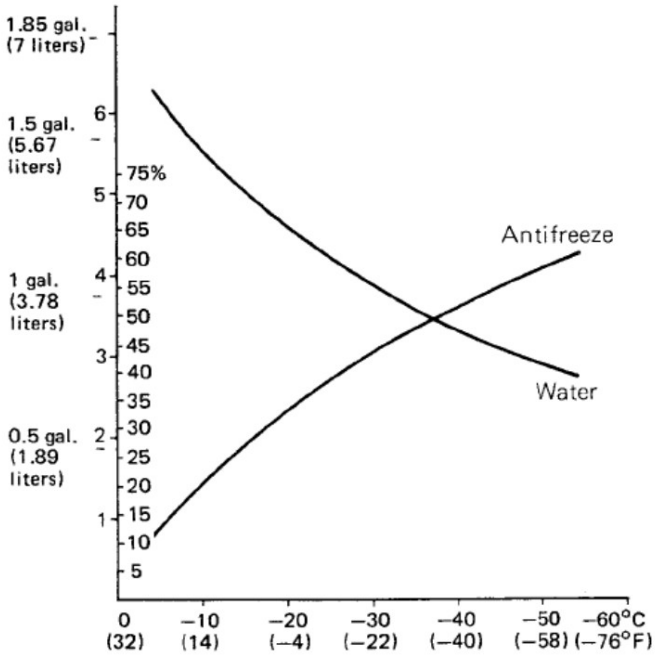
(7) Confirm that there are no leaks from the hose joints or cylinder head gasket.

(8) Antifreeze with correct density to suit the climate in your area should be used.

(9) When antifreeze is used for a long period in winter, measure the specific gravity frequently.

Temperature, mixing ratio and specific gravity of the antifreeze

Freezing point °C (°F)	Percentage of antifreeze %	Specific gravity at 20°C (68°F)
−6.3 (20.7)	15	1.022
−9.3 (15.3)	20	1.029
−12.6 (9.3)	25	1.037
−16.2 (2.8)	30	1.044
−20.5 (−4.9)	35	1.051
−25.2 (−13.0)	40	1.058
−31.2 (−24.2)	45	1.066
−37.6 (−35.7)	50	1.073
−45.2 (−49.4)	55	1.078
	60%	1.088



TIGHTENING TORQUE

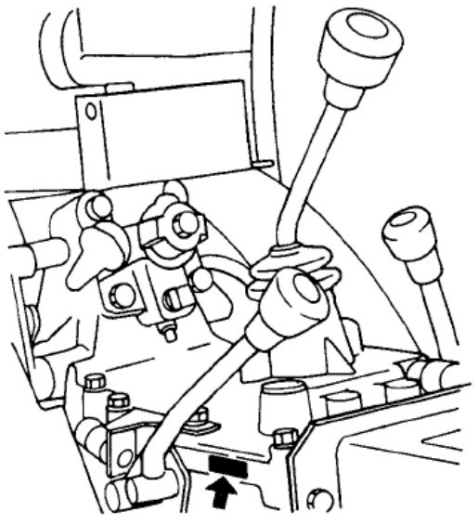
Unit: kg-m (lb-ft)

Bolt size	4T	6T	7T	8T
M5	0.2 ~ 0.35 (1.44 ~ 2.53)	0.45 ~ 0.55 (3.25 ~ 3.97)	0.55 ~ 0.65 (3.97 ~ 4.69)	0.65 ~ 0.75 (4.69 ~ 5.42)
M6	0.5 ~ 0.7 (3.61 ~ 5.06)	0.80 ~ 1.00 (5.78 ~ 7.23)	1.0 ~ 1.2 (7.23 ~ 8.68)	1.2 ~ 1.4 (8.68 ~ 10.1)
M8	1.2 ~ 1.7 (8.67 ~ 12.3)	2.0 ~ 2.5 (14.4 ~ 18.1)	2.5 ~ 3.0 (18.1 ~ 21.7)	3.0 ~ 3.5 (21.7 ~ 25.3)
M10	2.1 ~ 3.0 (15.2 ~ 21.7)	4.0 ~ 5.0 (28.9 ~ 36.1)	5.0 ~ 6.0 (36.1 ~ 43.3)	6.0 ~ 7.0 (43.3 ~ 50.6)
M12	4.5 ~ 5.5 (32.5 ~ 39.7)	7.0 ~ 8.0 (50.6 ~ 57.8)	8.5 ~ 9.5 (61.4 ~ 68.6)	9.5 ~ 11.0 (68.6 ~ 79.5)
M14	6.5 ~ 8.0 (46.9 ~ 57.8)	10.0 ~ 12.0 (72.2 ~ 86.7)	12.0 ~ 13.5 (86.7 ~ 97.5)	13.5 ~ 15.0 (97.5 ~ 108.0)
M16	9.0 ~ 11.0 (65.0 ~ 79.5)	13.0 ~ 15.0 (93.9 ~ 108.0)	15.5 ~ 17.5 (112.0 ~ 126.0)	18.0 ~ 20.0 (130 ~ 144)
M18	12.0 ~ 14.0 (87.7 ~ 101.0)	17.0 ~ 19.0 (123 ~ 137)	21.0 ~ 24.0 (152 ~ 173)	25.0 ~ 28.0 (181 ~ 202)
M20	15.0 ~ 17.0 (108.0 ~ 123.0)	20.0 ~ 22.0 (144 ~ 159)	24.0 ~ 28.0 (173 ~ 202)	32.0 ~ 36.0 (231 ~ 260)

SERIAL NUMBER LOCATION

Tractor serial number

It is located at the left side of the clutch housing, specifically upper side of the step.

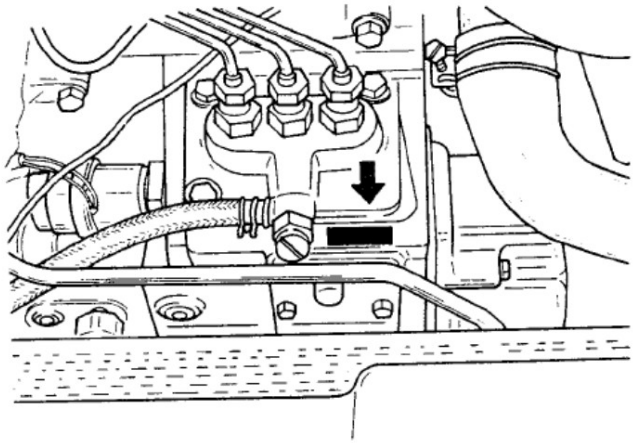


Tractor serial number

It is located at the right side of the transmission case specifically upper side

Engine serial number

It is located at the right hand side of the cylinder block, specifically injection pump side.



Engine serial number

It is located at the right hand side of the cylinder block, specifically injection pump side.

SEALANTS

Sealants are similar in function to gaskets; they are used to keep liquids (such as lubricants and water) in – and dust, dirt, moisture and chemicals ("enemy" of the tractor) out. In this respect, too much emphasis cannot be placed on the importance of selecting sealants of the types called for the MITSUBISHI Tractor. The following chart will serve as a rough guide for selecting sealants:

Sealant Selection Chart

Where to use		Sealant base	Properties (minimum requirements)	Operating temperature
Engine	Threaded parts	Epoxy-modified	• Weather resistance • Oil resistance • Heat resistance	–30°C ~ 200°C (–22°F ~ 392°F)
	Main bearing caps and side seals	Silicone rubber	• Weather resistance • Oil resistance • Heat resistance	–60°C ~ 250°C (–76° F ~ 482°F)
Chassis	Transmission case, hydraulic case, etc.	Heat-resistant synthetic rubber (nonhardening type)	• Weather resistance • Oil resistance • Heat resistance • Tear resistance	–40°C ~ 150°C (–40°F ~ 302°F)
	Brake covers, engine-clutch housing joint, etc.	Special synthetic rubber (hardening type)	• Moisture resistance • Weather resistance • Oil resistance • Heat resistance	–40°C ~ 150°C (–40°F ~ 302°F)

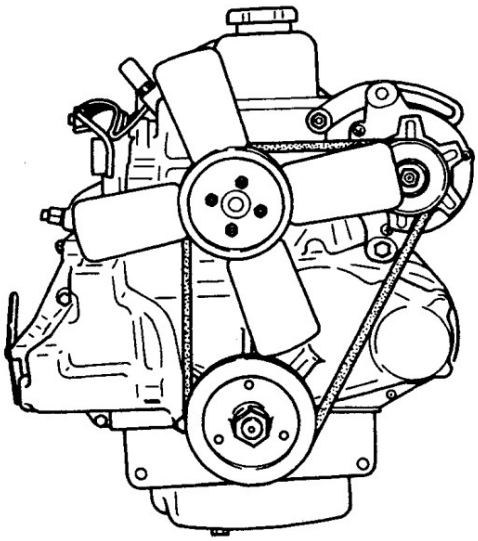
CHAPTER 2
ENGINE SYSTEM

REMARQUES

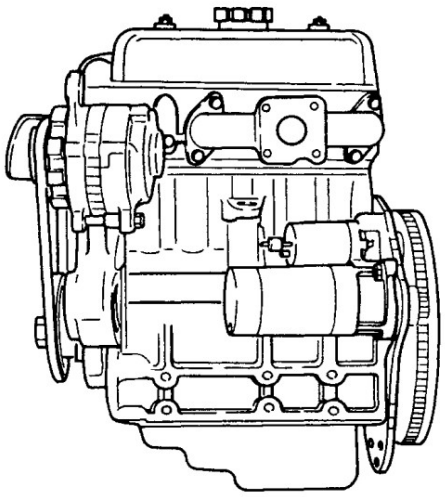
TABLE OF CONTENTS

DESCRIPTION

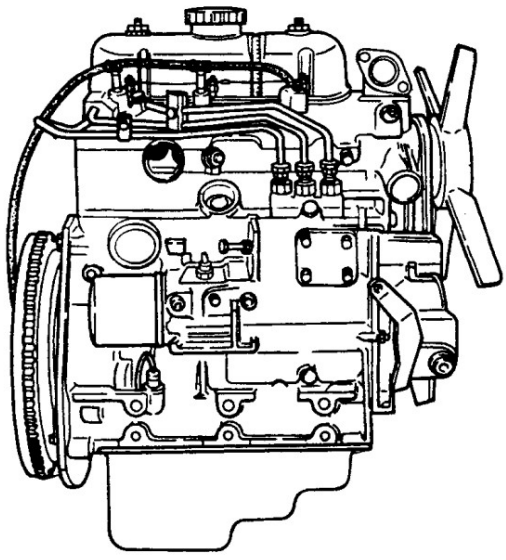
The engines mounted on MITSUBISHI MT160/D, MT180/D and MT180H/HD water-cooled, 4-stroke cycle, overhead-valve, three cylinders diesel engines.
They are Model K3A for MT160 and MT160D and K3C for MT180, MT180D, MT180H and MT180HD which technology and manufacturing know-how. Their combustion chambers are of swirl type designed to provide inproved combustion efficiency and high fuel economy; their preheating system of glow plug type assures positive cold starting; and their crankshaft, supported at four places, is well balanced to withstand continuous full load without exhibiting any abnormal vibration at all speeds. Each piston is fitted with three compression rings and one oil ring. Full consideration is given to all features of engine construction in order to ensure the reliability of engine performance and to facilitate maintenence services.



Frontal view

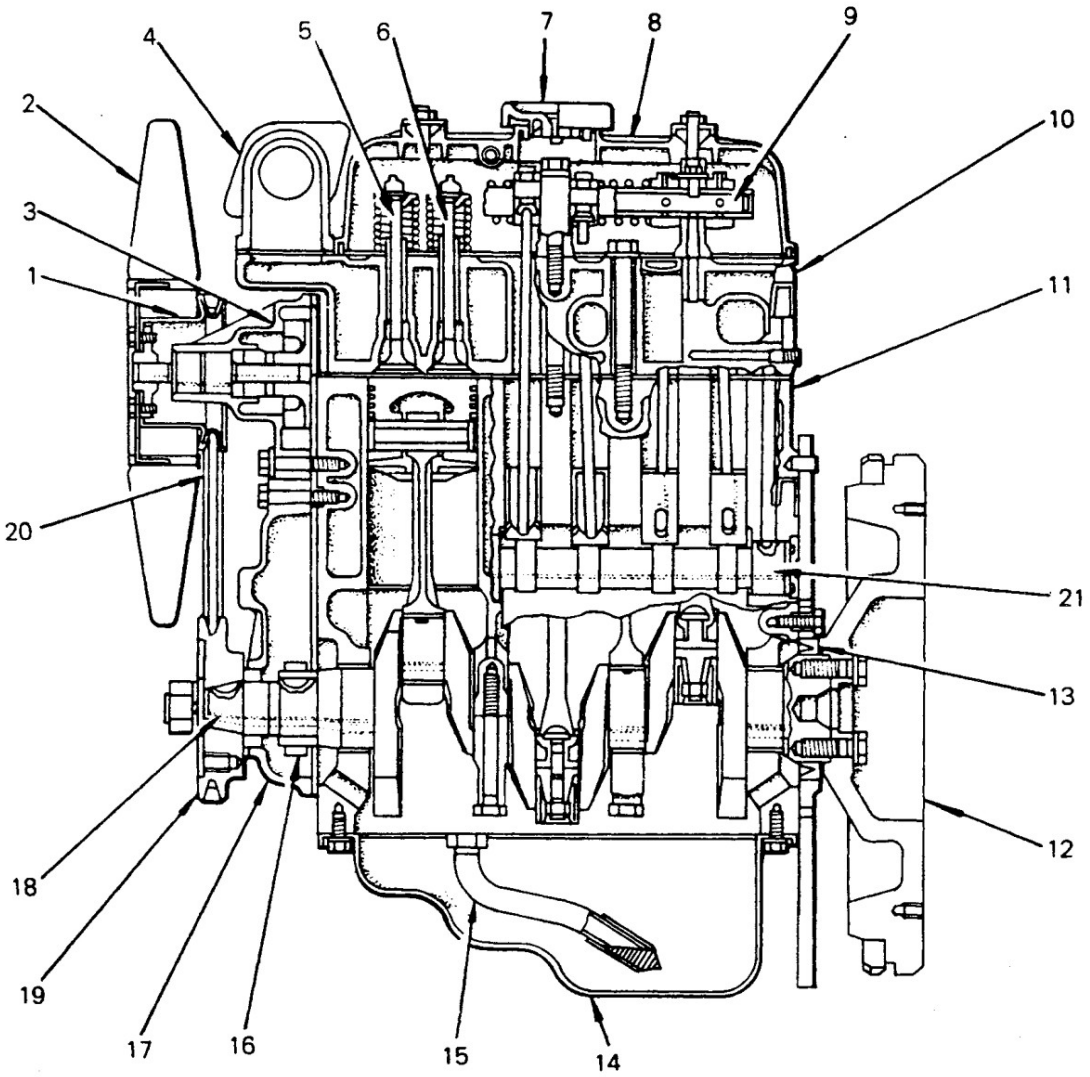


Right-hand side view



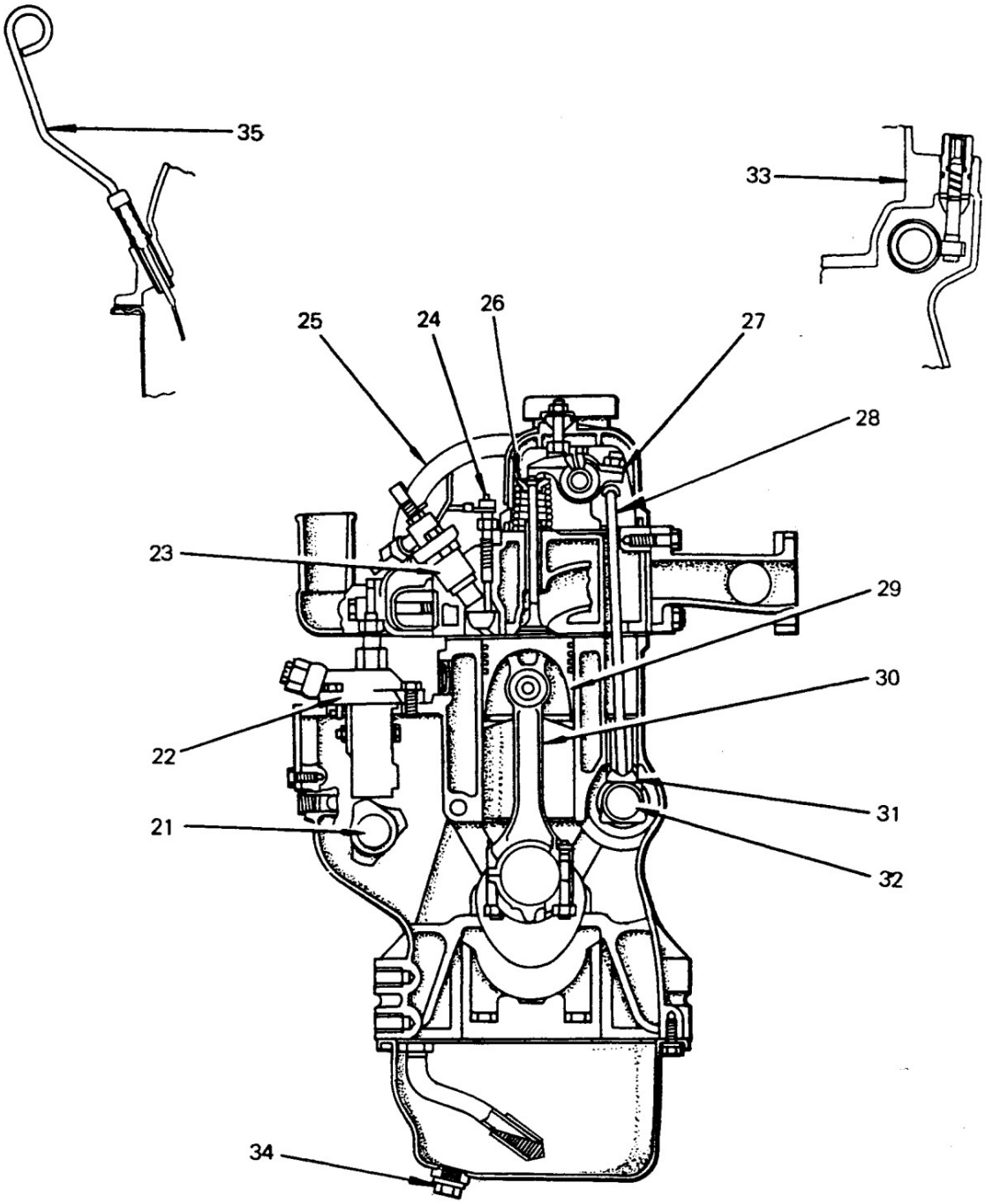
Left-hand side view

SECTIONAL VIEWS



1-Water pump pulley
2-Cooling fan
3-Water pump
4-Water outlet fitting
5-Intake valve
6-Exhaust valve
7-Oil filler cap
8-Rocker cover
9-Rocker shaft
10-Cylinder head
11-Cylinder block
12-Flywheel
13-Rear oil seal case
14-Oil pan
15-Oil screen
16-Crank gear
17-Gear case
18-Crankshaft
19-Crankshaft pulley
20-Fan belt

Longitudinal view



21-Fuel injection pump camshaft
22-Fuel injection pump
23-Injection nozzle holder
24-Glow plug
25-Air breather pipe
26-Valve spring
27-Rocker arm
28-Valve pushrod
29-Piston
30-Connecting rod
31-Tappet
32-Camshaft
33-Speedometer driven gear
34-Drain plug
35-Oil level gauge

Transverse view

CONSTRUCTION

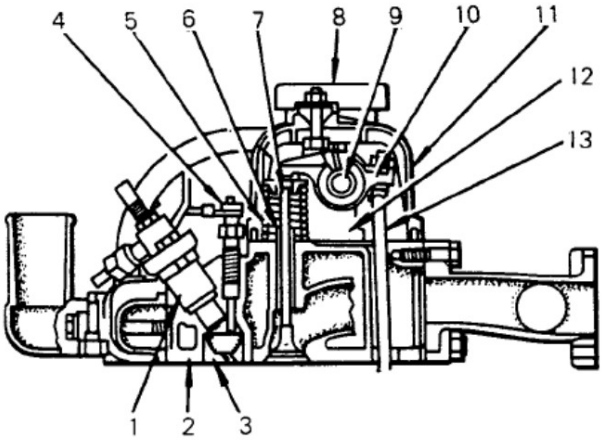
CYLINDER HEAD ASSEMBLY

Cylinder head

The head, made of a special cast iron, is shaped to retain greater rigidity and promote the conduction of excess heat to the coolant. As will be noted in the cross section, the head carries overhead valves arranged for cross-flow intake-air admission and scavenging, with intake port located on the right and exhaust port on the left. The high power capability of the Model K3A and K3C is measurably accounted for the improved volumetric efficiency resulting from this valve configuration.

The pre-chamber (pre-combustion chamber), in which the swirl type of pre-combustion takes place, is of insert type in construction, and is press-fitted into the cylinder head to form its integral part. The pre-chamber is not meant to be removed from the head in engine disassembly.

The valve guides for both intake and exhaust valves are common, there being no need to distinguish between the two. They are of a sintered alloy, impregnated with oil for increased resistance to abrasive wear.



1-Nozzle holder
2-Cylinder head
3-Mouth piece
4-Glow plug
5-Valve spring
6-Valve stem seal
7-Valve
8-Oil filler cap
9-Rocker shaft
10-Rocker arm
11-Rocker cover
12-Rocker shaft stay
13-Push rod

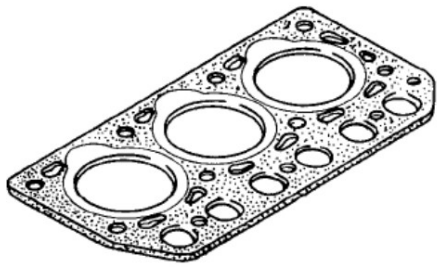
Cylinder head — Cross section

Cylinder head gasket

A steel-and-asbestos gasket is used for the head gasket. Its internal edges for cylinder bores are grommetted with stainless steel sheet to resist the high combustion heat and pressure encountered there. Both faces of the gasket are coated with a sealing compound.

Each replacement gasket comes with its surfaces so treated that no sealing compound is required when installing it during engine reassembly.

The later production of this engine uses gasket whose base material is carbon called "Gra-Foil."

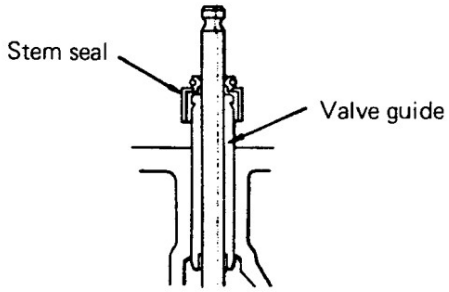


Cylinder head gasket

Valves and valve springs

The material of intake valves is a heat-resistant steel; the head diameter is sized large for increased intake efficiency. The heads of exhaust valves are faced with a special alloy, which is deposited by welding.

Valve springs, made of a high-carbon spring steel, have their bottom ends shaped specially so that they will solidly seat on the cylinder head. Their top ends are identified by red enamel. There are no differences in spring retainers and retainer locks between intake and exhaust valves.



Valve stem seal

So that no lube oil will find its way into the cylinder head through the sliding clearance between valve stem and guide, a valve stem seal is fitted to the guide.

Rocker arms, shaft and stays

The arms are a special cast iron in material; each arm is casehardened by gas carburization. A lube oil hole is drilled in the top part of the arm.

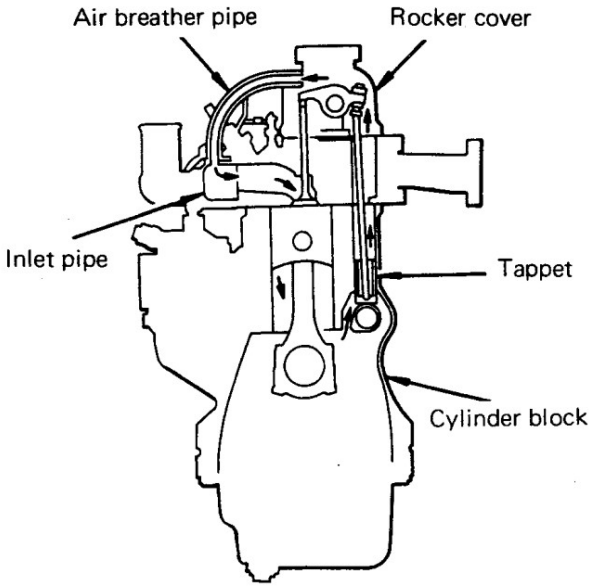
The rocker shaft is fabricated from carbon-steel pipe stock; its hollow serves as oil passage. Those parts of the shaft on which rocker arms are mounted are induction-hardened.

There are three shaft stays made of an aluminum alloy by casting. The stay on the rear side has an internal oilway drilled in such a way as to convey the lube oil coming from the cylinder head. The stay for the rear side is also usable for the front side.

Crankcase ventilation system

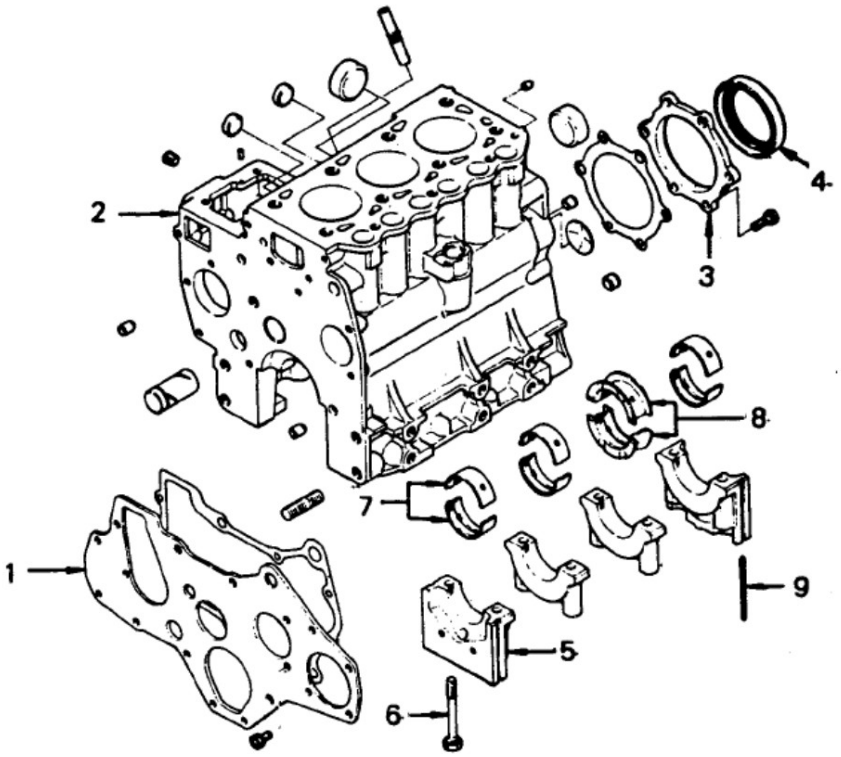
This system refers to the arrangement designed to feed back the blowby gas (occurring in the crankcase) to the air breather pipe, so that the gas (which is high in combustible content) will be drawn into the air inlet side and then into the cylinders.

The space inside crankcase is communicated to the space inside the rocker cover through the tappets and the space around the pushrods.



Crankcase ventilation system

CYLINDER BLOCK ASSEMBLY



1-Front plate	4-Oil seal	7-Main bearing, No. 1
2-Cylinder block	5-Bearing cap, No. 1	8-Main bearing, flanged, No. 3
3-Oil seal case	6-Cap bolt	9-Cap side seal

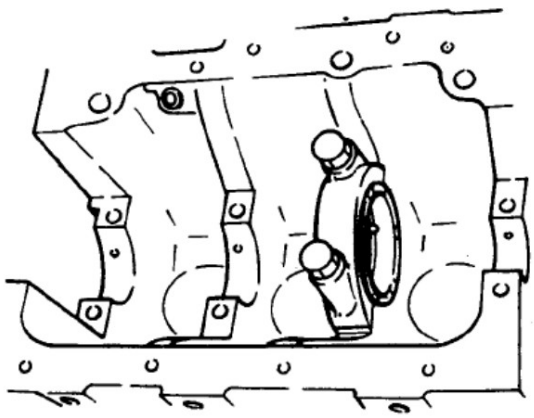
Cylinder block assembly — Exploded view

Cylinder block

The material of the block is a special cast iron whose composition is carefully controlled to present surfaces adapted to sliding contact with pistons. In other words, liners are not used in this block. Four ribs are cast out of the block for four main bearings, of which No. 3 bearing is flanged to take up the axial thrust.

These bearings are of shell type constructed according to the tri-metal concept: a sintered copper alloy (Kelmet type) deposited on the steel backing, with an overlay of a tin-lead alloy for improved initial wearing-in action. The whole surface is flash-plated.

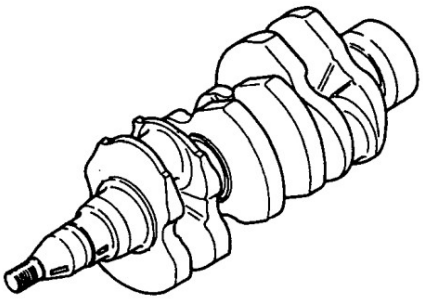
The bushing supporting the front journal of camshaft is a special copper alloy deposited on the backing. (The early production of this engine is not equipped with this bushing.)



No. 3 bearing as thrust-and-journal bearing

Crankshaft

The crankshaft is a carbon-steel precision forging, whose sliding-contact surfaces at journals, crankpins and sealed portions are induction-hardened. It is an integral piece, well balanced and shaped for high rigidity.



Crankshaft

Flywheel and ring gear

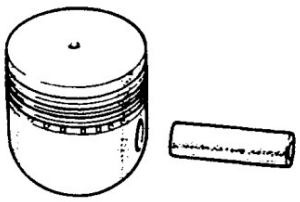
The flywheel is made of a cast iron. The pilot bearing for holding the clutch main shaft end is a ball bearing.

The ring gear is made of a carbon steel and shrink-fitted to the flywheel; its gear teeth are induction-hardened.

Pistons, piston pins and piston rings

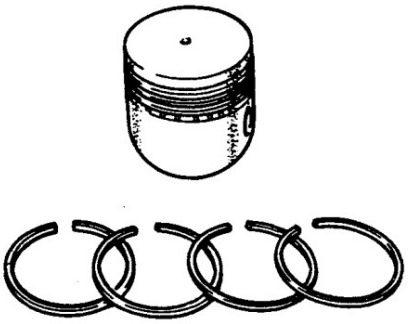
The piston is an aluminum-alloy die casting, and possesses a minimized inertial mass so that the high-speed load on the main bearings is greatly reduced. Its diameter is cam-ground and tapered to optimize its fit in the bore when the block comes up to the normal operating temperature.

The piston pin is a hollow forging, whose finished surface is casehardened by carburization; it rotates in the piston but press-fitted into the connecting rod, thereby presenting a semi-floating type of small end connection.



Piston and piston pin

The three compression rings are of a special cast iron. The top ring (compression) and oil ring are plated with hard chromium at their sliding faces.



Piston and piston rings

Connecting rods

The connecting rod has its big end split horizontally and its shank forged into "I" shape in cross section for greater rigidity. The bearing in the big end is of the same tri-metal type as the main bearings. The bearing shells are flash-plated.

Connecting rod

Front plate and gear case

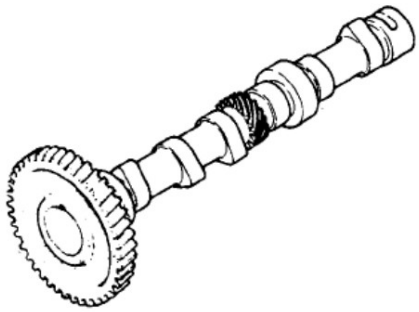
The front plate is bolted to the cylinder block; it is a steel plate, located in place by a positioning pin above the camshaft gear and another pin below the injection pump gear. A gasket is used between this plate and the block.

To the left-hand rear face of this plate is secured the hydraulic pump gear bearing housing together with the gear case.

The gear case is an aluminum casting secured to the front plate, and houses the front bearing for the hydraulic pump gear and also other parts associated with the governor. It should be noted that the gear case serves also as stoppers for the camshaft and idle gear.

Camshaft and timing gears

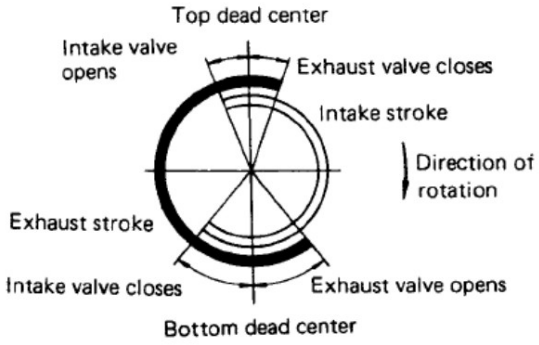
The camshaft is a high-carbon steel forging having three journals by which it is fitted into and held by the cylinder block. Its journal and cam faces are induction-hardened for increased resistance to wear. Lube oil is pressure-fed from cylinder block to each camshaft journal. By a recess or notch provided in the rear journal, lube oil is intermittently supplied through the cylinder head in order to lubricate the rocker arms and related parts of the valve mechanism. An oil hole which permits an excess of the oil to return to the oil pan is drilled in the rear end of the shaft.



Camshaft

Valve timing

Intake valve opens	18° Before Top Dead Center
Exhaust valve closes	18° After Top Dead Center
Intake valve closes	46° After Bottom Dead Center
Exhaust valve opens	46° Before Bottom Dead Center
Fuel injection lining	21° Before Top Dead Center



Valve timing diagram

The valve timing data, listed above, presuppose that the valve clearance has been accurately set to meet the specification for each valve.

Helical gears, finished by shaving and crowning for greater durability and quieter running, are used for the timing gears.

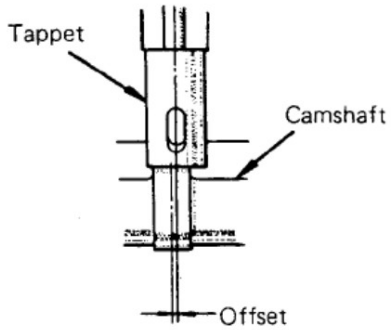
Hydraulic pump gear

The gear for driving the hydraulic pump is located at the left-hand end part of the gear case. The rear end face of the shaft of this gear has a groove for Oldham coupling. The pump is connected to the bearing housing directly.

Tappets and pushrods

The tappet, pot-like in shape, is heat-treated in a carburizing gas furnace and has its bottom face hardened by chilling. Thus, it is highly resistant to wear. Relative to the center of its cam, the center of the tappet is slightly offset in order to avoid uneven wear of its bottom face riding on the cam.

The pushrod is a steel bar, whose end portions are flame-hardened.

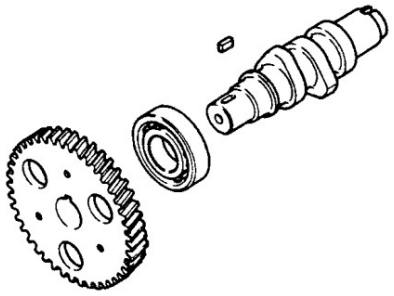


Offset between tappet and cam

Fuel-injection-pump camshaft

This injection pump is of "in-line" type and is driven by the camshaft built in the engine side. Its material is a high-carbon steel, the cam faces being induction-hardened.

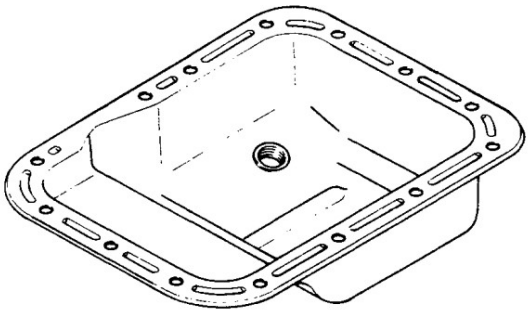
A ball bearing is used to support the front part of this camshaft; the tip of the front part is shaped to admit the governor shaft. The rear end face has a groove for Oldham coupling. It is through this coupling that the oil pump is driven.



Injection-pump camshaft

Oil pan

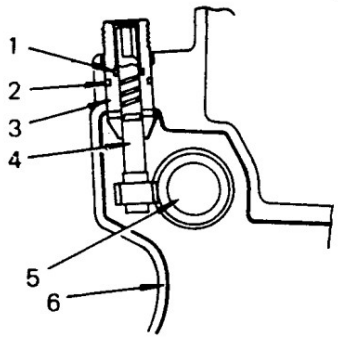
The oil pan is a steel-sheet vessel having a drain plug located at the lowest point of its bottom.



Oil pan

Speedometer driven gear

This driven gear is of high-speed automotive type and provides good durability. It is mounted on the center part of the left side of cylinder block and is driven by the camshaft.



(Rear view)

1-"O" ring (small)
2-"O" ring (large)
3-Sleeve
4-Driven gear shaft
5-Camshaft
6-Cylinder block

Speedometer driven gear

ENGINE SERVICES

Besides the daily or routine services required on the engine, repair and replacement services have to be carried out at times depending on the internal conditions of the engine. For the latter class of services, the whole engine may have to be dismounted from the tractor or some of its components may have to be dismantled and taken down with the engine remaining in place. In either case, it is essential that the work be performed in a clean place, with a clean floor and a surrounding space large enough to handle the engine or its components freely.

Use of the prescribed tools (special tools) in addition to the common tools is another essential requirement. The standard practices for engine servicing include the following:

(a) Have a hoisting or lifting means ready for use. Some of engine components are too heavy to handle with bare hands.

(b) The exterior surfaces of any part or component must be cleaned before its removal.

(c) Have a full assortment of hand tools (including special tools) ready for use. Make sure they are clean.

(d) There should be an adequate number of trays and pans for holding disassembled parts in an orderly manner, plus plenty of washing fluid and wiping cloths. A supply of clean compressed air is desirable.

A repair or replacement service is usually occasioned by an operating difficulty or failure of one or more components of the engine. If the service involves removal of one or more of the below-named engine parts, it is not necessary to take down the engine from the tractor; the service can be carried out with the engine in place.

(1) Cylinder head. (This includes the valve mechanism.)

(2) Pistons.

(3) Fuel-injection pump or oil pump.

(4) Water pump.

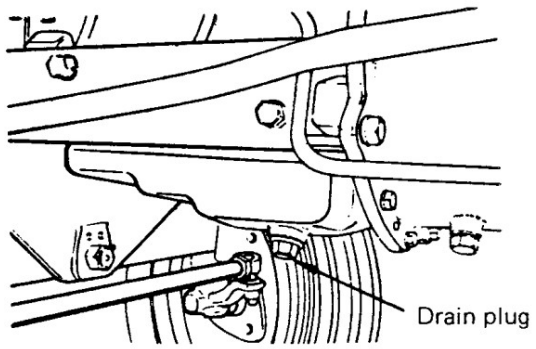
(5) Gear case cover, timing gears or related parts.

ENGINE REMOVAL

In the event of the flywheel or clutch needing a repair service, the engine must be taken down, complete with the radiator, front axle and chassis, by detaching it from the clutch housing. The method of separating the engine from the clutch housing is detailed in the section for CLUTCH.

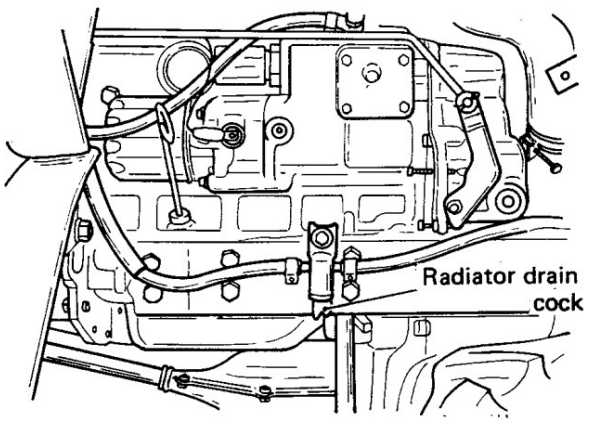
The engine removal procedure for replacing crankshaft or cylinder block is as follows:

(1) Bring the tractor to the place of work, letting it stand on the level floor, and drain the engine oil pan.

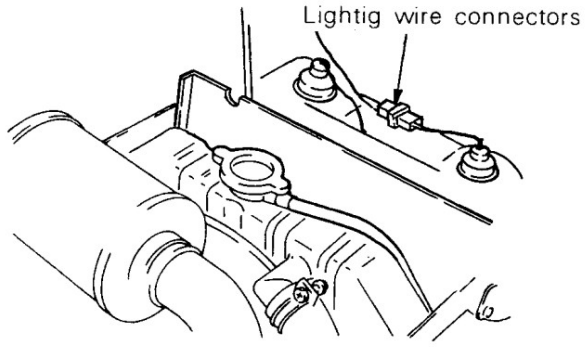


Drain plug on oil pan

(2) Drain the engine cooling system by opening the cock cock on the cylinder block.

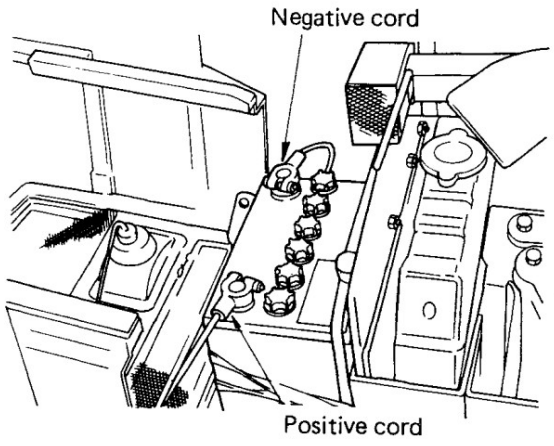


(3) Unlatch and open the bonnet, and undo the headlight wire connectors inside. Remove hinge bolts and take down the bonnet.



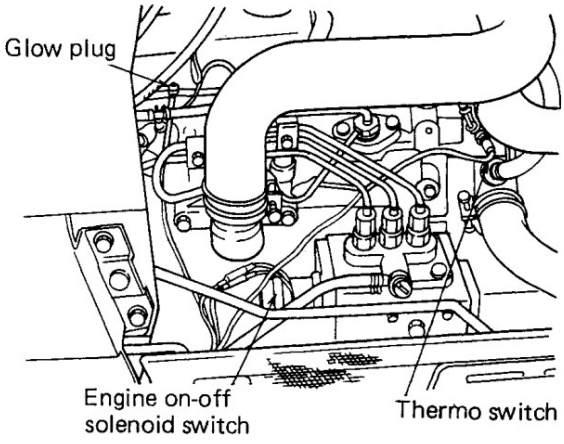
Lighting wire connectors

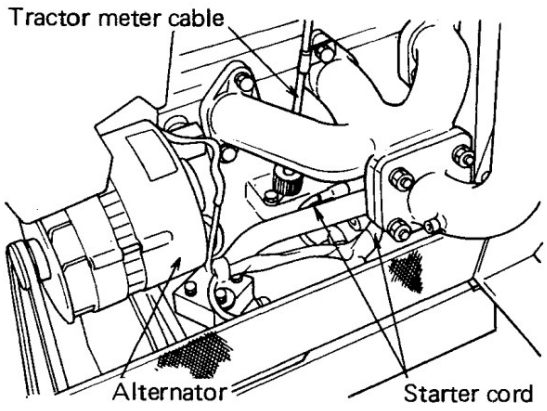
(4) Disconnect cables from the battery terminals: disconnect the minus (–) cable first and the plus (+) cable next.



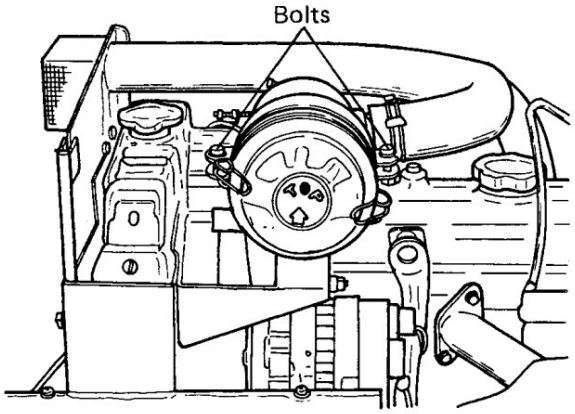
(5) Remove safety covers and engine covers

(6) Undo all electrical connectors and disconnect wires from their terminals.





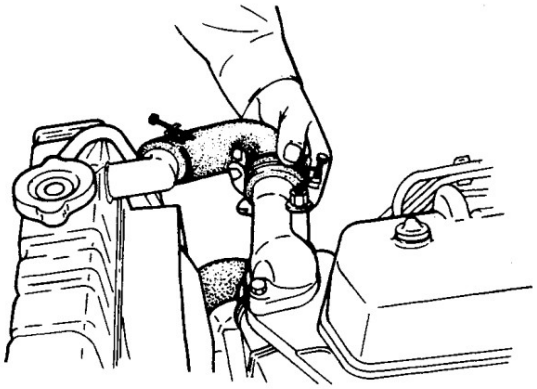
(7) Loosen the clamp on the manifold-side end of air cleaner hose, and pull off this end. Loosen the bolt on air cleaner band, and remove the air cleaner.



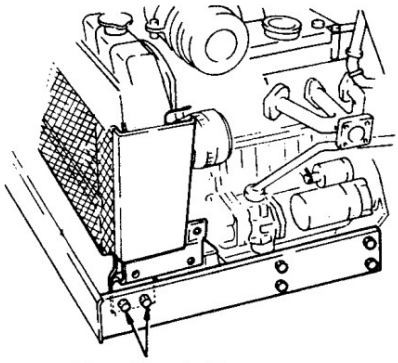
Removing air cleaner

(8) Remove the bolt and unit securing the air cleaner mounting bracket in place, and take off the bracket.

(9) Disconnect upper and lower hoses of the radiator from the engine side, loosening the clamps on hose connections.



Removing radiator hose



Removing radiator mounting bolt

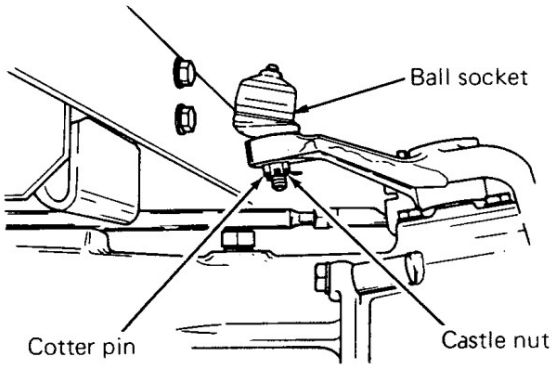
(10) Loosen radiator mounting bolts, right and left, and take down the radiator from the chassis.

(11) Disconnect fuel return pipe from fuel tank.

(12) Turn off fuel filter cock, and remove the fuel pipe between filter and injection pump.

(13) Disconnect engine control rod from governor lever.

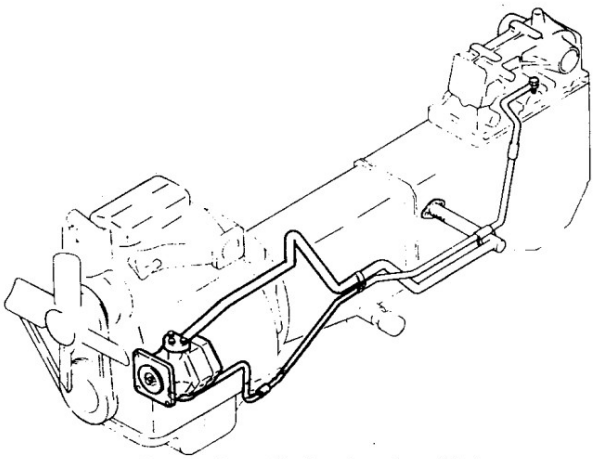
(14) Disconnect drag link from steering lever.



Removing drag link

(15) Disconnect oil pipes from the hydraulic pump, making sure that "O" rings come out of the pipe connections.

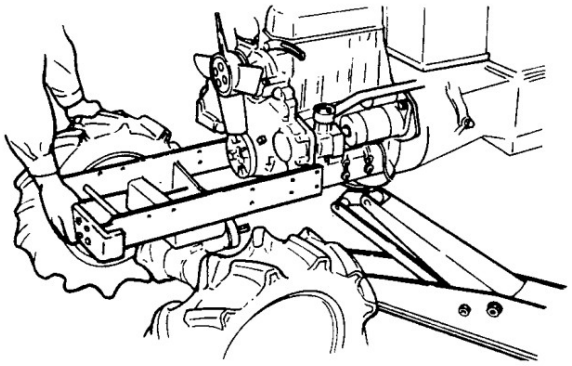
In case of MT180H/HD, remove cooler outlet pipe and cooler in let pipe.



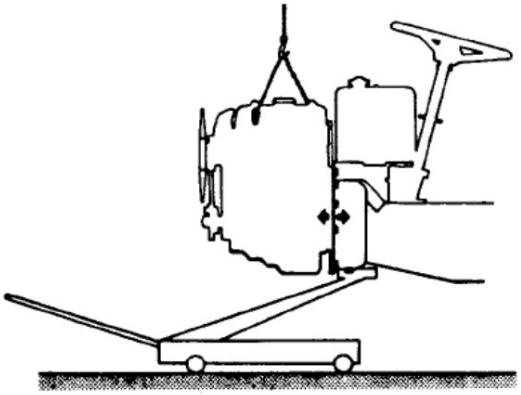
Removing oil pipe (engine side)

(16) Place a jack under the clutch housing, and operate the jack to push up the housing lightly.

(17) Remove the bolts securing the chassis: there are two bolts on front side and a total of eight on right and left sides. Remove the chassis gently.



Removing chassis



(18) Hitch a wire-rope lifting sling to the engine hanger bolts, and operate the hoist to take up the weight of the engine.

(19) Remove the bolts securing the engine to the clutch housing. As necessary, ply open the joint to sever the engine from the housing by using a flat-tip (plain) screwdriver. Pull the engine (in suspended state) off the housing.

NOTE

The bolts securing the fuel tank bracket need not be removed.

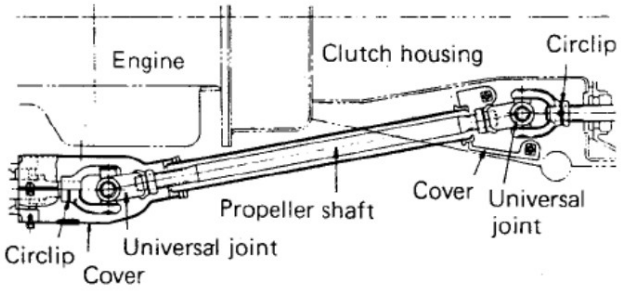
(20) Bring the engine over to and set it on the work stand: the engine is now ready for disassembly.

<4-WD TRACTOR>

If the machine is a 4-WD tractor, two more steps must be carried out just before taking up the weight of the clutch with a jack in Step (17), above. The two additional steps concern the universal joint:

(a) Remove the front and rear universal-joint covers.

(b) Pick out the front universal-joint circlip, pull out the pin, and disconnect the joint.



Cover

ENGINE INSTALLATION

The procedure of re-installing the engine is reverse of the foregoing removal procedure.

PISTON REMOVAL

To remove the pistons, proceed as follows (with the engine in place):

(1) Drain oil pan.

(2) Drain the cooling system by opening the cock on the lower part of the radiator.

(3) Remove air cleaner cap. Unlatch and open the bonnet.

(4) Disconnect cables from the battery terminals, undoing the terminal connection of minus (−) cable first and that of plus (+) cable next.

(5) Remove safety guards, right and left.

(6) Loosen the clamp on air cleaner hose at manifold side, and disconnect the hose. Loosen the air cleaner band bolt, and take down the cleaner.

(7) Remove the bolts securing air cleaner bracket in place, and take off the bracket.

(8) Disconnect the radiator upper hose from the engine.

(9) Disconnect the tractor meter wire at engine side.

(10) Disconnect the fuel eturn pipe from the fuel tank.

(11) Undo the wire connectors of glow-plug and water-temperature wires.

(12) Remove the bolts securing the alternator brace to cylinder head.

(13) Disconnect the exhaust manifold (complete with muffler) from the cylinder head.

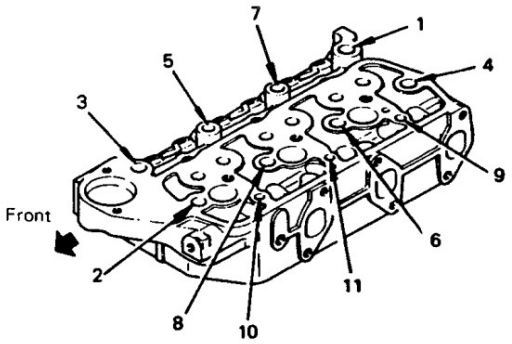
(14) Disconnect and remove fuel injection pipes.

(15) Remove the nuts fastening down the rocker cover, and take off the cover.

(16) Remove the bolts securing the rocker stays, and take off the three stays complete with rocker arms and shaft.

(17) Pull out the pushrods one by one.

(18) Loosen the cylinder head bolts sequentially in the ascending order of numbers as shown below and remove the cylinder head.



Cylinder head bolt loosening sequence

(19) Remove the cylinder head gasket.

(20) Disconnect tie rod from knuckle arm.

(21) <4-WD TRACTOR>
Remove the front and rear universal-joint covers; pick out the front circlip; pull off the pin; and disconnect the universal joint.

(22) Remove the bolts securing the oil pan to the cylinder block, and take off the oil pan, taking care not to distort it. Remember, the sealing compound used in this joint may not permit the oil pan to separate easily.

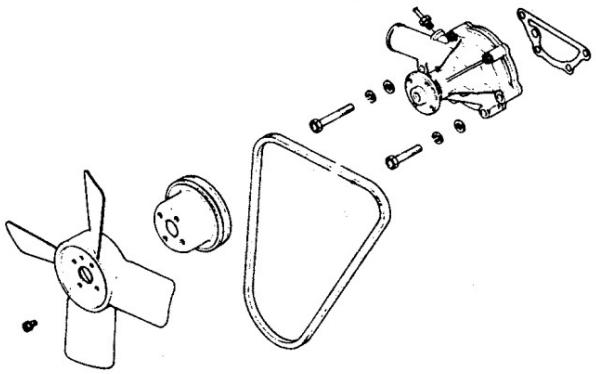
(23) Remove the cap nuts on each connecting-rod big end, take off the cap, and push out the piston assembly from block top.

PISTON INSTALLATION

To re-install the pistons, carry out the foregoing procedure in the reverse order. Be sure to clean each part thoroughly before installing it, and to oil it just before it is inserted or fitted if it is a rotary or sliding part.

WATER PUMP REMOVAL

It is necessary to take down the radiator from the chassis in order to remove the water pump.



Removing water pump

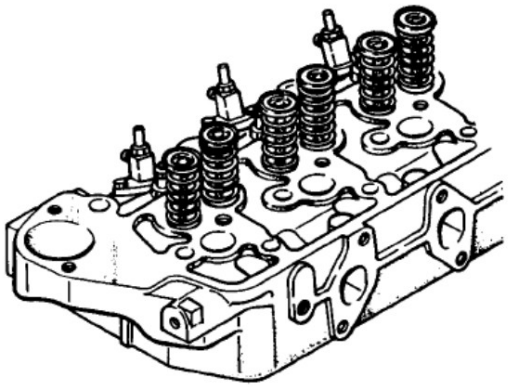
CYLINDER HEAD DISASSEMBLY

Carry out the Steps (1) through (19) of piston removal procedure, outlined above. Set the removed cylinder head assembly on the bench, and proceed as follows:

(1) Remove nozzle holders.

(2) Disconnect glow-plug lead wires, and remove the plugs.

(3) Using the valve lifter, remove each valve in this manner: Compress the spring with the lifter; take off retainer locks; and pick out retainer, spring and valve in that order. Place the removed parts in trays or pans, separating them into three groups, one group for each cylinder. Be sure to identify each part for the cylinder it has been servicing.



Cylinder head assembly

(4) Disconnect water bypass hose, and remove thermostat fitting.

CYLINDER BLOCK DISASSEMBLY

(1) Take down the engine from the machine.

(2) Remove the cylinder head assembly, as outlined in piston removal procedure, above.

(3) Remove the water pump and electrical parts and components as outlined in respective paragraphs.

(4) After pulling out the pushrods, draw out the tappets, taking them out from the cylinder block top.

(5) Remove the speedometer driven unit.

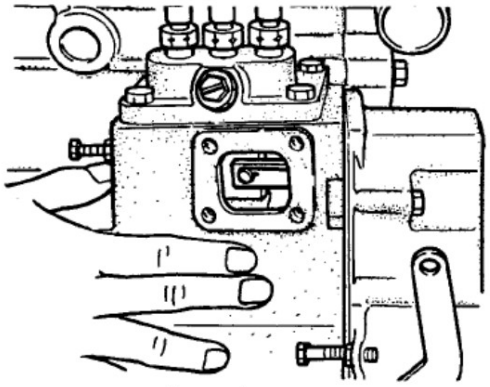
(6) Loosen the nut securing the crank pulley, and take off the pulley and washer.

(7) Take down the flywheel: loosen the flywheel bolts just a little at a time.

(8) Remove the rear plate and rear oil seal case.

(9) Turn over the cylinder block upside down, and remove the oil pan and oil screen.

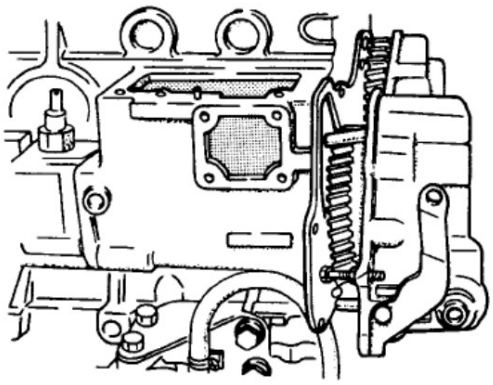
(10) Remove the hydraulic-pump gear bearing housing and the gear case. Just before detaching the gear case, be sure to remove the inspection peep hole cover and to disconnect the stopper spring and tie rod from the pump control rack.



Removing tie rod

NOTE

It is very important that, before the gear case is removed, the injection pump control rack should be disconnected from the tie rod. As mentioned previously, the front plate is bolted to the cylinder block, the bolts being run in from inside the gear case. Be careful not to remove the plate together with the gear case and also not to disturb the dowel pins.



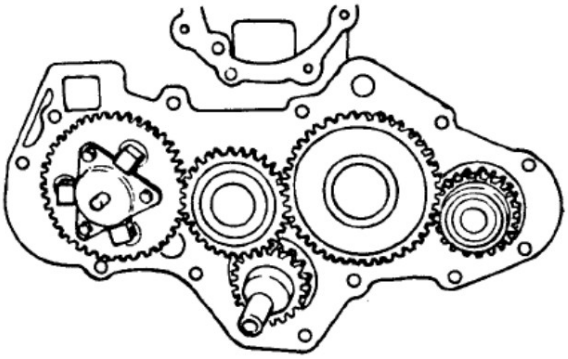
Removing gear case

(11) Remove the fuel injection pump.

(12) Remove the governor weight securing bolt, and take out the weights.

(13) Remove the set screw on pump camshaft.

(14) Remove oil filter and oil pump assembly, and draw out the pump camshaft.



Removing timing gears

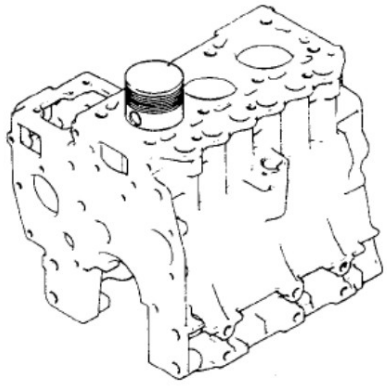
(15) Remove timing gears and detach the front plate from cylinder block.

(16) The push rods, tappets and speedometer driven unit having all been removed, draw out the engine camshaft.

(17) Open the big end of each connecting rod by removing the cap. Push out each piston assembly from block top.

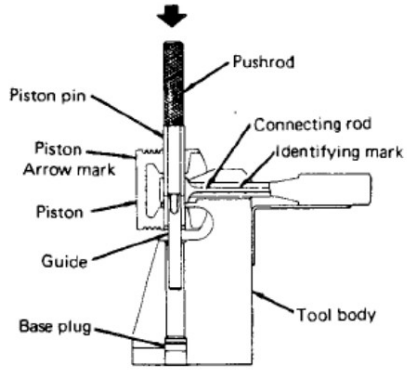
NOTE

Have all removed parts laid out in groups, identifying each part for the cylinder from which it was taken. It is a standard practice to assign a reference number to each cylinder and use that number to refer to the group of parts, which of course include bearing shells, piston rings, etc. Never drive out the combination of piston and connecting rod: push on the mating face of big end with a wooden stick, as necessary, not to damage the bearing shell.



Removing piston complete with connecting rod

(18) Use the piston pin setting tool (special tool) to separate piston pin from piston in the manner illustrated here: lay down the connecting rod on the tool body, fit the pushrod tool to the piston pin in place, and press down the pushrod to force the pin out. Never use a hammer to drive on the pushrod tool.



Removing piston pin

NOTE

a) Never drive off the pin. If the pin is seized in the piston, it may be necessary to replace, piston, pin and connecting rod with new ones.

b) Do not apply a press force of more than 3000 kg (6615 lb) to the special tool.

(19) Remove the main bearing caps. Set aside the removed caps and bearings separately in groups, each marked for its journal, so that the same combination as before can be reproduced at the time of reassembling. Before removing caps, read the crankshaft end play and write the reading down for reference.

(20) Take off the crankshaft.

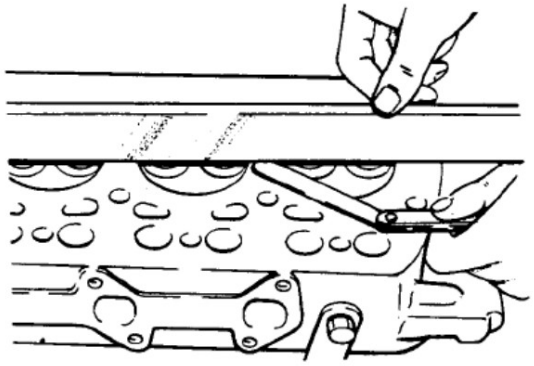
INSPECTION

Cylinder head

(1) Wash the cylinder head clean. Before doing so, visually examine it for evidence of cracking, water leakage or any damage.

(2) Check to be sure that the internal oil passages are all clear.

(3) Using a straightedge and feeler gauge, check the gasketed surface for flatness.



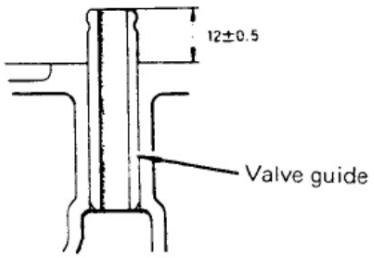
Checking the gasketed surface for flatness

Valve guides

(1) Take diameter measurements on valve guide and stem to find out the radial clearance by subtraction; if the determined clearance exceeds the limit, replace the guide or valve, or both.

(2) To remove the guide for replacement, drive it out of the cylinder head by giving a push to the bottom side of the guide. Use the valve guide remover.

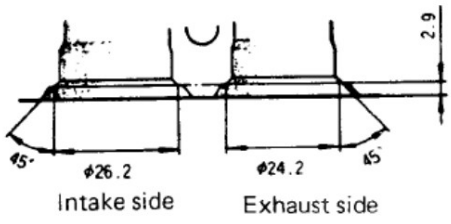
To install the replacement guide, press it into the hole until its trailing portion measures 12 ± 0.5 mm (0.5 ± 0.02 in.) from cylinder head top, as shown below. After pressing the guide in, check the radial clearance by inserting its valve stem just for a trial: if the clearance is too small, ream the guide to produce a proper radial clearance.



Pressing in of valve guide

Valve seats

(1) Visually inspect each valve seat for seating contact pattern and for damage and, as necessary, repair it by lapping in the usually manner to the seat angle and diameter specified.

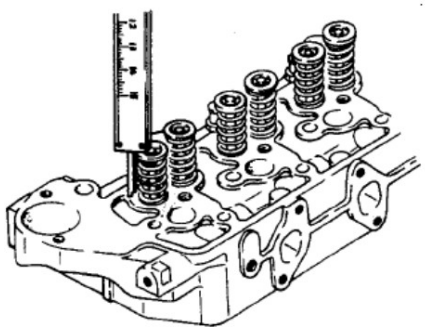


Valve seat angle and diameter

(2) An insert-type valve seat in service is subject to beating action of its valve and might force itself, though very gradually, into the cylinder head, thereby presenting a phenomenon of "seat sinkage," which is primarily due to creeping effect of stressed metal. This sinkage shows up as an increment in the as-installed length of valve spring.

Measure the length of each valve spring in place and, if the increment (corresponding to the sinkage) is found to exceed the limit, replace the whole cylinder head.

In measuring the as-installed length, it is permissible to read the distance between the bottom end of spring to the top face of spring retainer. In such a case, the thickness (measured in advance) of the retainer must be subtracted from the reading. The retainer (actually the flange) thickness is $1.7\ ^{+0.3}_{0}$ mm ($0.067\ ^{+0.0118}_{0}$ in).



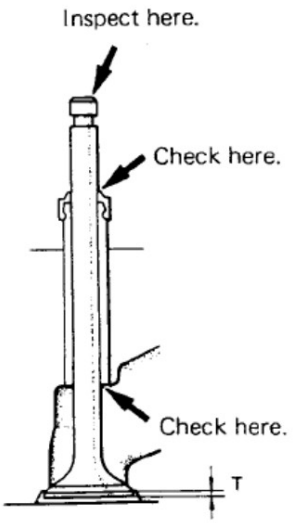
Measuring as-installed length of valve spring

Valves

(1) Visually inspect the seating face and stem of each valve for wear and damage, and repair or replace the valve, as necessary.

(2) A valve whose head is worn down to the limit of "T" value must be replaced.

(3) Inspect the valve for localized wear at three places in particular, which are indicated in the illustration, and repair or replace the valve, as necessary. Make sure that the top end face and other surfaces of the stem as shown by arrows are smooth and that there are no dents nor groovy depressions on the stem.



Valve wear

Valve springs

(1) Cracked, worn or otherwise damaged springs must be replaced.

(2) A weakened valve spring, the weakness being evidenced by its reduced free length or spring rate, must be replaced.

(3) Check each spring for squareness. Never re-use distorted valve springs.

Rocker arms and rocker shaft

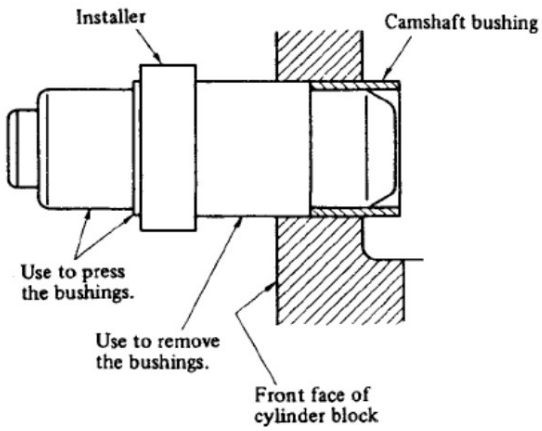
(1) Take diameter measurement on rocker arms and rocker shaft to determine the clearance between the two. Replace the arms if the clearance exceeds the service limit.

(2) A rocker arm whose end face for pushing down the valve stem is badly worn must be replaced. The same consideration is required for the adjusting screw, whose end face comes into contact with the top of the pushrod: if this face is found badly worn, replace the adjusting screw.

Cylinder block

(1) Visually inspect the cylinder block before and after washing it clean. If any crack or serious damage is noted, replace the cylinder block.

(2) Check the camshaft front journal bushing for wear. If the bushing is worn beyond the service limit or damaged beyond repair, remove it by using the special tool (installer) and replace it with new one.

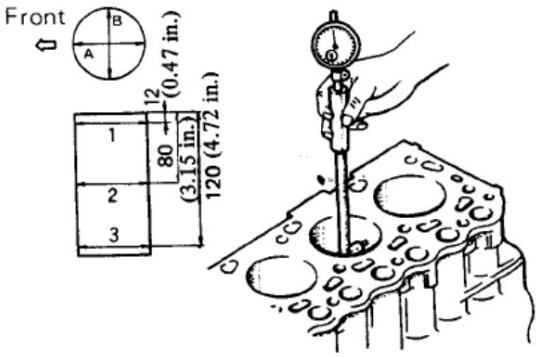


Removing camshaft bushing

(3) Clean the water jackets of the cylinder block, removing water scales and rust, if any.

(4) Check each cylinder bore for wear and inspect the bore wall for scoring, scuffing and other types of surface flaw, to determine whether repair by reboring or honing is necessary or not. To take micrometer readings for wear determination, be sure to measure at three levels, 1, 2 and 3, in two directions, A and B, as shown, thereby producing a total of six readings.

(5) If the piston rings are the only parts to be renewed, there being no need of reboring or honing the cylinder bores, check the amount of "ridge" formed of the top portion of the bore and, as necessary, remove the ridge by reaming. The bore should be honed after this reaming.

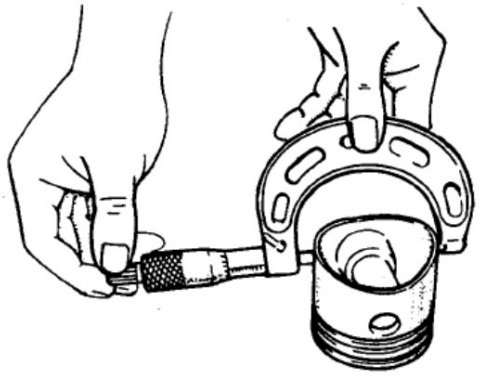


Measuring cylinder bore diameter

Pistons, piston pins and piston rings

(1) Burnt, grooved or badly scuffed pistons must be replaced.

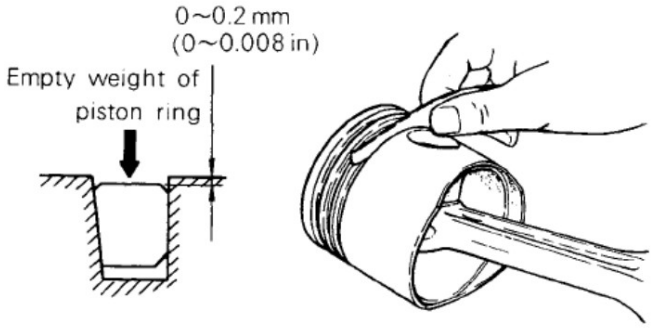
(2) Measure the piston diameter at its skirt in the direction perpendicular to the piston pin to determine its radial clearance in the cylinder. If the piston is found excessively worn, replace it.



Measuring the piston outside diameter

(3) Check the side clearance of each ring in the groove and, as necessary, replace the ring.

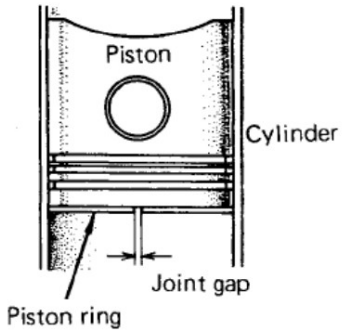
To measure the side clearance of No. 1 ring, which is taper, hold the ring face flush with the land face, and insert a feeler gauge between the piston and the bottom (flat) side of the ring.



Checking ring side clearance

(4) Piston rings whose joint gap is too large must be replaced. To check the gap, place the ring in the cylinder bore and push it down with the piston inserted upside down.

When the ring is located at the least worn part (lower section) of the cylinder, take out the piston and read the gap with a feeler gauge.

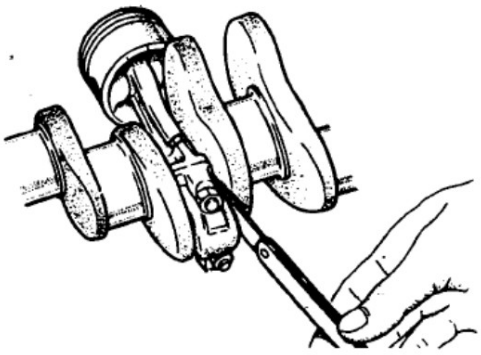


Checking rings for joint gap

Connecting rods

(1) To check each connecting rod for bend and twist, the connecting rod aligner must be used. Fit the connecting rod to the aligner and, if the rod is found to be excessively distorted, that is, bent or twisted, repair or replace it.

(2) Check the big end for thrust clearance by fitting the big end to the crankpin and by using a feeler gauge. If the clearance is noted excessively large, replace the connecting rod.



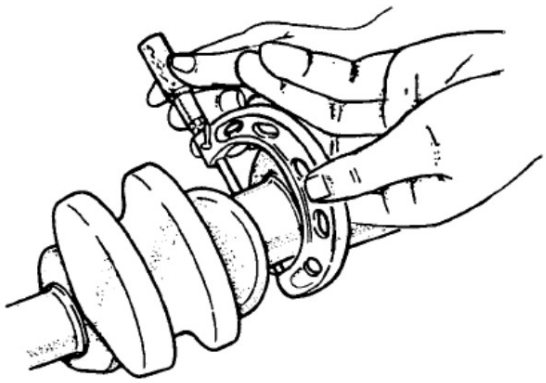
Checking connecting rod thrust clearance

Crankshaft

(1) A distorted crankshaft must be straightened or, if the distortion is too large to correct, be replaced. Distortion here refers to the bow, if any, of the crankshaft, which can be measured with a dial indicator in the usual manner.

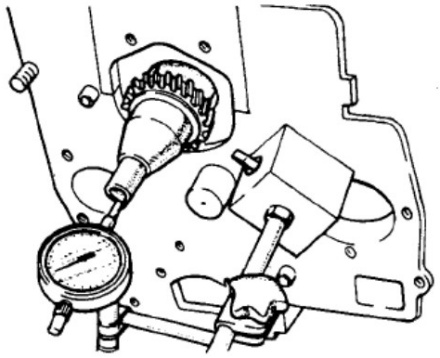
(2) Inspect the surfaces of journals and crankpins for burning and damage and, as necessary, repair these surfaces by grinding to the next undersize. Grinding to an undersize necessitates replacement of the existing bearings by the corresponding undersize ones.

When grinding the journals and crankpins, be sure to finish the corner radii to 2.5 mm (0.1 in.).



Measuring crankshaft outside diameter

(3) Check the crankshaft end play and, if the measured play is in excess of the specification, replace the No. 3 main bearing. End play measurement is valid only when the crankshaft is set in place in the normal condition, with its main bearings fitted correctly and its bearing cap bolts tightened to the prescribed torque value. Use a dial gauge in the illustrated manner to read the end play.

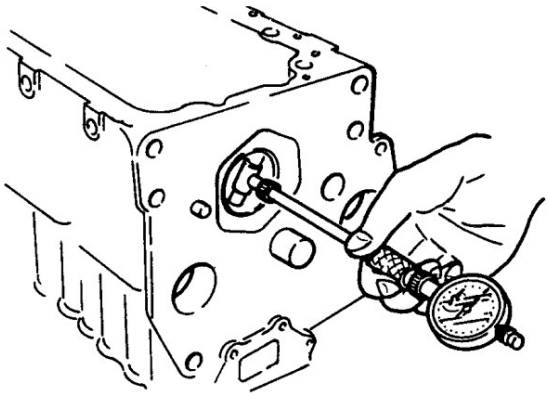


Reading crankshaft end play

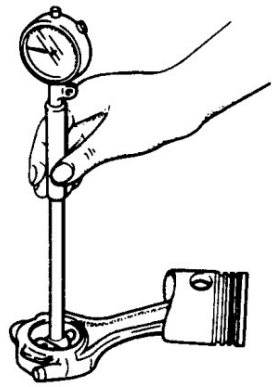
Main bearings and connecting-rod bearings

(1) Inspect the bearing shells, paying particular attention to the tri-metal surface for evidence of flaking. Burnt, pitted or wiped shells and shells showing bad contact pattern must be replaced.

(2) Mike the main bearings and connecting-rod bearings and also the crankshaft journals and crankpins to determine, on the basis of ID readings and OD readings, the amount of oil clearance available in each fit. (A press gauge can be used instead.)



Measuring main bearing ID



Measuring connecting rod (crankpin) bearing

When reading the bearing ID, whether it is a main bearing or a crankpin bearing, be sure that the bearings shells are tight in the usual manner, with the cap bolts torqued to the specification. If the clearance determined by computing with the ID and OD readings exceeds the limit, replace the bearings or, if mere bearing replacement does not produce the specified clearance, grind the crankshaft journals and crankpins to the next undersize and use the undersize bearings.

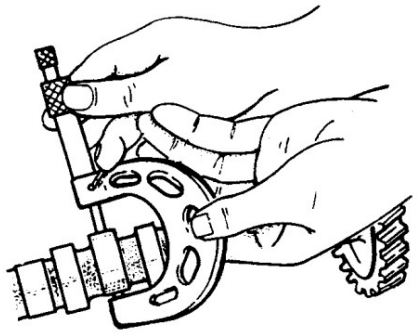
Timing gears and hydraulic pump gear

Inspect these gears for tooth contact pattern, tooth wear and damage and, as necessary, replace them. Inspect the Oldham coupling groove formed of the end of the pump gear; if this groove is disfigured or damaged, replace the gear.

Camshaft

(1) If the running clearance between the camshaft journal and its hole provided in the block is too large, then either the camshaft or the block must be replaced. This clearance is to be determined by measuring journal diameter and hole diameter.

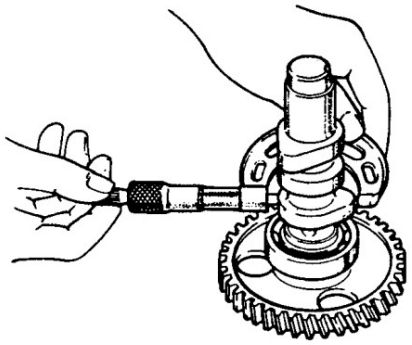
(2) Visually inspect the cam faces for damage, and check each cam for cam height by miking. Replace the camshaft if any of the cams is in bad condition in regard to cam height and face.



Measuring cam height on engine camshaft

Fuel-injection-pump camshaft

Inspect and check this camshaft as in the case of engine camshaft. Additionally, inspect the shaft end, which is shaped for Oldham coupling: the camshaft must be replaced if the coupling end is disfigured.

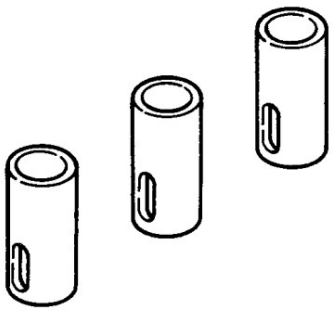


Measuring cam height on injection-pump camshaft

Tappets

(1) A tappet whose bottom face is flaked, grooved or cracked must be replaced.

(2) Check each tappet for radial clearance by miking its OD and hole ID. Be sure to replace the tappet if the clearance is found to exceed the limit.



Engine tappets

Pushrods

(1) A pushrod which is excessively worn at either end must be replaced.

(2) Check each pushrod for straightness by rolling it on a surface plate. If it is bowed or otherwise distorted, straighten it in the usual manner or replace it.

Speedometer driven unit

Inspect this unit for wear and damage at its gear and shaft. Be sure, at the time of installing this unit, that the "O" ring is in good condition.

REASSMBLY

Cylinder head

To reassemble, use reverse of disassembly procedure. Observe the following rules:

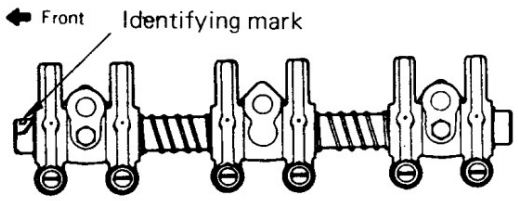
(1) Install valve guides, making sure that each guide protrudes out of the top of the head to the specified height. (The method of installing them is explained in "Inspection," above.)

(2) Fit the valve stem seal to each valve guide, making the seal settle snugly on the guide end.

(3) Oil valve stems, and insert them into the guides. Put on valve springs, retainers and locks, in that order.

(4) Build up the rocker mechanism by proceeding as follows: Hold the front stay with its mounting bolt hole coming on the right-hand (nozzle) side. Insert the rocker shaft into the stay so that the identifying mark (3-mm or 0.1-in. dia. hole) on the end of the shaft faces the right-front side (the in pump). Mount the outer front rocker an and secure it in place by fitting snap ring; mount the inner front rocker, thus completing the reassembly of the first group.

Reassemble the second and third groups similarly, ending with the fitting of the rear-most snap ring; set the whole mechanism on the cylinder head; and secure it to the head by bolting. Be sure to use seat washers on the bolts for front and rear stays.



Rocker arms and shaft

(5) Run the glow plugs into the head, and tighten them to the prescribed torque

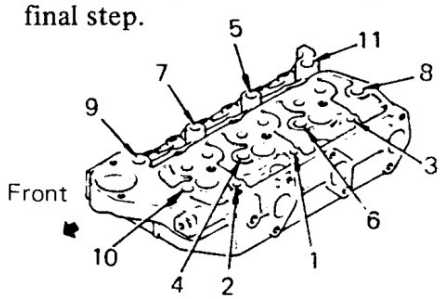
value. (Gaskets are not required because of the tapered seal feature.)

(6) Mount the nozzle holders. The mounting bolts must be tightened equally, and to the prescribed torque value. Use new gaskets on the holders.

(7) Connect lead wires to the glow plugs in place.

(8) Do not apply any sealant to the cylinder head gasket: the replacement gasket comes with its surfaces coated with sealant.

(9) When securing the cylinder head to the block, be sure to tighten its bolts sequentially to make sure that the pressure will be equalized. This is accomplished by running all bolts in till they become finger-tight, and then tightening them with a torque wrench gradually and in two or three steps, each time moving the wrench from one bolt to another in the sequential order indicated by the numbers and tightening to the prescribed torque limit in the final step.



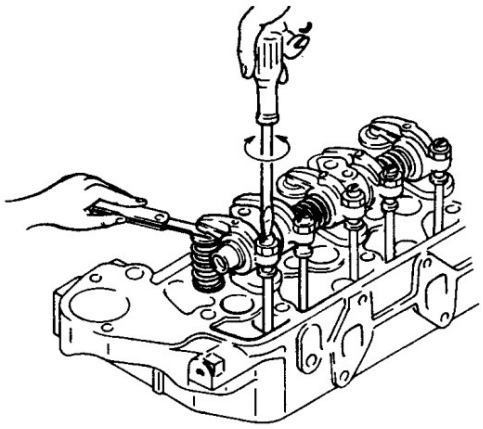
Cylinder head tightening order

(10) Several kinds of gaskets and packings are used on the cylinder head. Be sure to use new gaskets and packings in reassembly. Also, be sure to use the prescribed sealant at the places specifically designated.

(11) To adjust the valve clearance, proceed as follows:

(a) Valve clearance adjustment should be carried out with the piston in top dead center on compression stroke when the engine is cold.

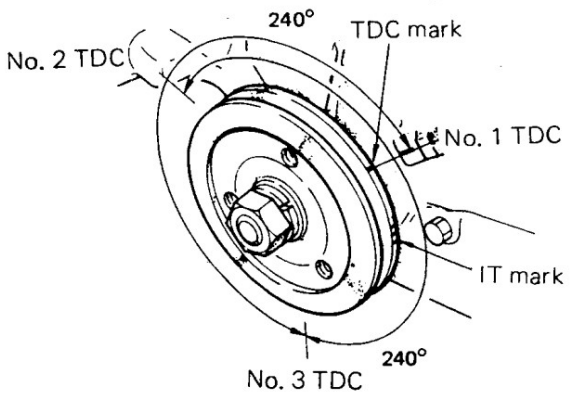
Be sure to tighten the cylinder head bolts to the specified torque before adjusting the valve clearance.



Adjusting valve clearance

(b) To bring the No. 1 cylinder piston to top dead center on compression stroke, align the timing (TDC) mark on the crank pulley with that on the gear case by turning the cranksahft in normal direction, as shown below. Now, the intake and exhaust valves of the No. 1 cylinder are ready to be checked. Check the clearance and, if it is incorrect, adjust it by turning the adjusting screw.

Be sure to align the timing marks perfectly or the valves are moved away from the correction position, making it impossible to obtain the correct valve clearance.



Timing marks

(c) Next turn the crankshaft 240 degrees in normal direction to bring the No. 3 cylinder piston to top dead center on compression stroke. Having made sure that the timing marks are perfectly aligned, check and adjust the valve clearance on this cylinder.

(d) Further turn the crankshaft 240 degrees, and similarly adjust the valve clearance of No. 2 cylinder valves.

Cylinder block

The procedure of building the cylinder block assembly is as follows:

NOTE

a) Clean all parts thoroughly. Make sure oil holes are clean and clear, sliding surfaces free of any foreign matters, and rotary parts capable of smooth rotary motion.

b) Before fitting a part, be sure to oil it lightly.

c) Do not re-use the gaskets, packings, "O" rings and the like that have been removed in disassembly. Use new sealing parts in reassembly.

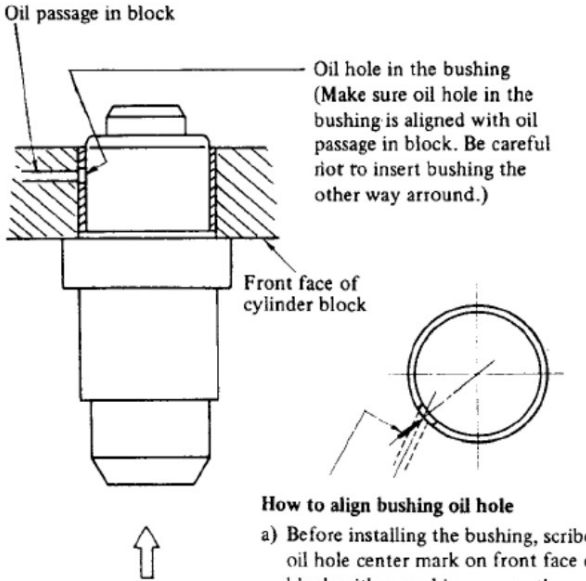
d) Use of sealant is specified for some joints and fits. Be sure to use the sealant where its use is prescribed.

e) Adhere to the standard practice of tightening bolts or nuts sequentially on a part secured by a plurality of bolts or nuts (in order to avoid distorting the part) and to use a torque wrench on bolts for which a torque limit is specified. Even those bolts or nuts for which no torque limit is specified must be tightened to a certain limit established for the type and size of the bolts or nuts. Undertightening or stripped screw threads are usually a result of ignoring the fact that a so-called "torque limit" is synonymous to required tightening torque.

f) Important clearances, end plays and thrust plays are specified to be within a certain range or to take a certain value. In the process of reassembly, be sure to check and double-check such a clearance or play.

The sequence of steps for reassembling the engine is exactly reverse of the disassembly. However, a large number of reassembling steps involve special techniques, treatments, checks for meeting specific requirements, and adjustments. Those steps will be described.

(1) When installing the camshaft front journal bushing into the cylinder block, use the installer and press in the bushing so that the oil holes in the bushing and cylinder block are aligned. It is advisable to put a mark indicating oil hole position on the front face of cylinder block with a soft pen before installing the bushing for the convenience of aligning the holes and also of checking after the installation of the bushing is completed



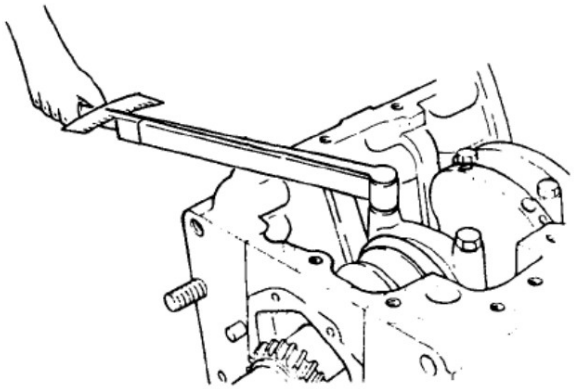
How to align bushing oil hole

a) Before installing the bushing, scribe oil hole center mark on front face of block with a marking pen or the like.

b) Set up the bushing on the tool and press it into bushing hole as guided by the mark scribed in step a).

Installing camshaft front journal bushing

(2) Fit the main bearing shells to the caps and to the half-bores formed of the block, making sure that each shell is correctly positioned.

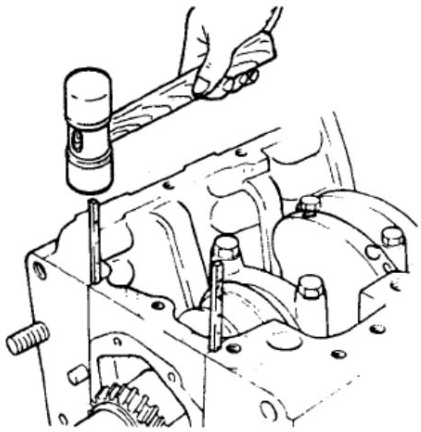


Securing main bearing caps

(3) Oil the crankshaft journals and crankpins, and set the crankshaft in place.

(4) Put on main bearing caps and secure them by tightening their bolts to the prescribed torque value.

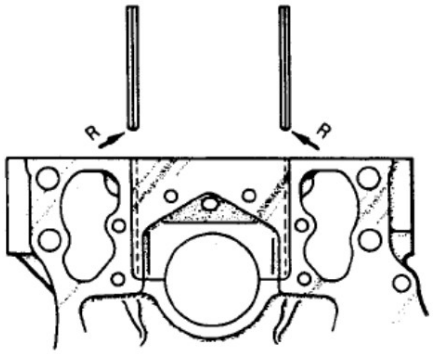
Each cap has an arrow mark and numeral cast out: refer to these marks and position the cap correctly. When installing Nos. 1 and 4 caps, be sure to apply sealant to their mating faces.



Fitting side seal of main bearing cap

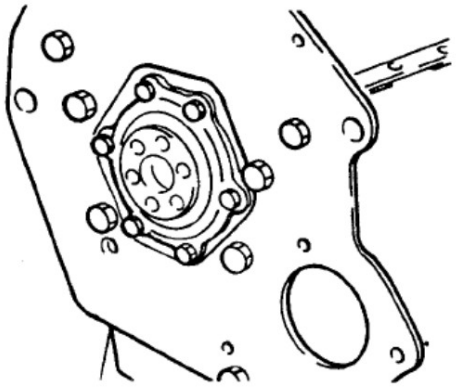
(5) Check the end play of crankshaft.

(6) Apply sealant to the periphery of the side seals, and push them into the front and rear caps. This completes the installation of the crankshaft.



Fitting directions of side seals

(7) To the rear oil seal case of crankshaft, fit the oil seal; and install the seal case with its gasket, securing the case fast to the cylinder block.



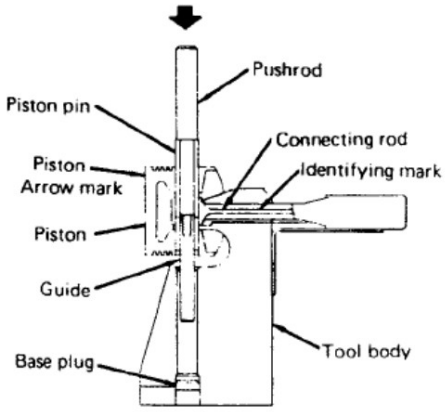
Installing oil seal case

(8) Using the piston pin setting tool (three-piece tool), combine piston with connecting rod in the following manner:

(a) Fit piston pin to the pushrod (tool), and run guide (tool) all the way into pushrod.

(b) Insert the combination of pushrod, pin and guide into the piston from the guide side, passing the pushrod through the small end of connecting rod, making sure that the front arrow mark (on piston crown) and the identifying mark on connecting rod come on the same side (top side).

Before inserting the pin, be sure to oil it as well as the small end.



Pressing in piston pin

(c) Rest the whole work (piston, pin and connecting rod with pushrod and guide) on the tool body, bringing the notch of the guide into register with the notch provided in the tool body; and turn the guide by 90°, making sure that the small end is snugly settled in the recess of the body. Again, check to be sure that the front mark on piston crown and the identifying mark of the rod are both on top side and pointing upward.

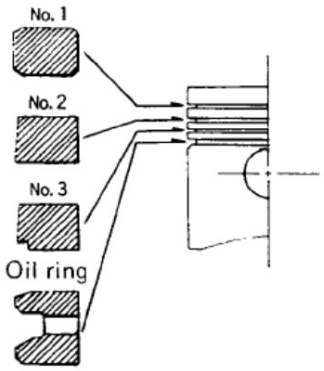
(d) Using a press and applying a force of anywhere between 500 and 1500 kg (1103 and 3308 lb), push the pin into the connecting rod. Should the pin go in with a push of less than 500 kg (1103 lb) or greater than 1500 kg (3308 lb), the connecting rod or pin and piston must be replaced. The guide (tool) serves to locate the pin in the prescribed position. After pressing the pin in, turn the push-rod by 90° and take off the combination from the tool body.

NOTE

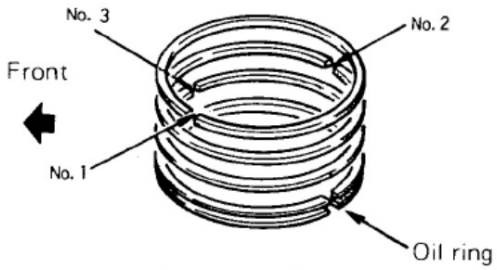
a) After combining piston with connecting rod, check to be sure that the pin is centered on the axis of connecting rod. If the pin is found displaced to one side, check the tool and, after correcting it as necessary, use it to push the pin back to the center position.

b) As stated previously, restore all parts to their original positions in reassembly. Remember, piston and pin constitute a set and must not be interchanged. Be sure, too, that the three pistons are of the same size (same mark).

(9) Fit the rings to the piston, discriminating the three compression rings, as shown, and distributing the gaps equiangularly. The side face of each ring with the maker and size marks comes on top side. When installing the oil ring with expander, be sure to position the expander tube opposite to the gap of the ring.



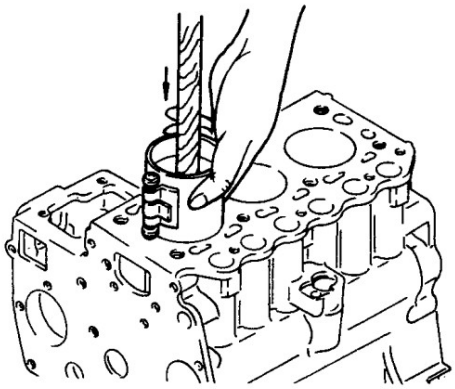
Piston rings



Gap distribution

(10) Insert the three combinations (piston and connecting rod) into the cylinders from the gasketed surface, using a ring band on each piston to embrace its rings. Make sure that the ring gaps are correctly distributed and that the arrow mark on piston crown points toward the front end of the engine. On the crankshaft side, connect the connecting rods to respective crankpins, with

the bearings fitted properly, and secure the caps by tightening their bolts to the prescribed torque value.



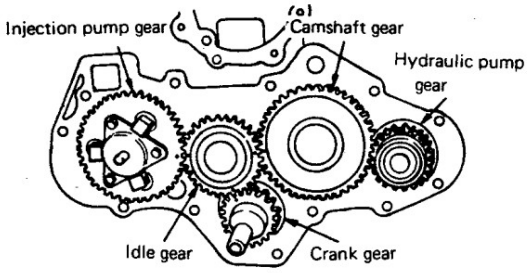
Inserting piston-connecting rod combination

(11) Install the front plate, with its gasket properly positioned and doweling the plate securely.

(12) Turn over the crankshaft to bring No. 1 piston to top dead center position.

(13) Fit the key into the keyway formed of crankshaft, and install the crankshaft gear.

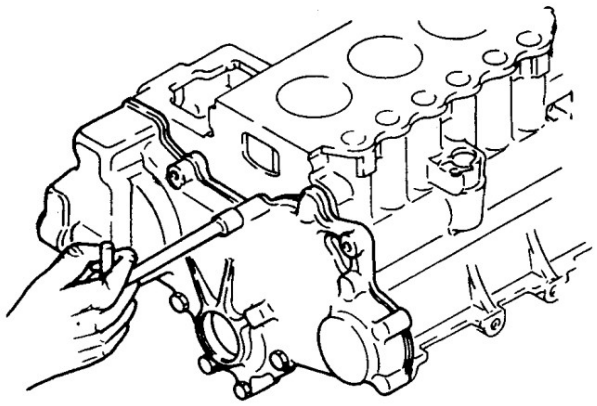
(14) Set idle gear in place, matching its "1" mark to the "1" mark on crankshaft gear. If the crankshaft front bearing is already in place, the latter "1" mark may be hard to see and, in such a case, reference should be made to the engraved line, instead of the "1" mark, that is provided on the side face of gear boss. Fit the guide seals coated with sealant to the front and rear main bearing caps at this time by pushing the seals in, and have the cap bolts tightened to the torque limit.
Insert the camshaft assembly into the cylinder block, positioning its gear in such a way as to bring its match mark "2" into register with the mark "2" on idler gear. Similarly install the injection-pump camshaft, making the match mark "3" of its gear to the mark "3" of idle gear. Finally, install the hydraulic pump drive shaft, meshing its gear with camshaft gear.



Timing gears

(15) Attach the governor weight assembly to the injection-pump camshaft gear.

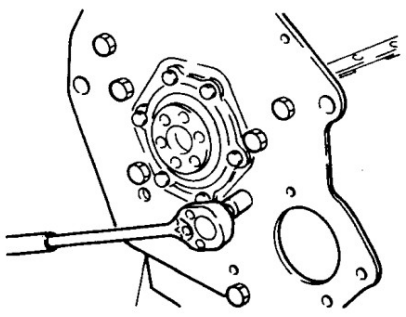
(16) After installing governor parts, install the gear case, with its gasket properly set, while inserting the tie rod and its stopper spring into the cylinder block.



Securing gear case to cylinder block

(17) Put on the crank pulley, followed by its washer and nut, and tighten the nut to the torque limit.

(18) Fit the gasket to the block, and install the rear plate.



Securing rear plate to cylinder block

(19) Attach the oil screen, and install the oil pan.

(20) Turn over the cylinder block. While slowly rotating the camshaft or the speedometer driven gear shaft, install the driven unit, making sure to fit its "O" ring correctly.

Apply sealant such as Three-Bond #2 to the periphery of the sleeve.

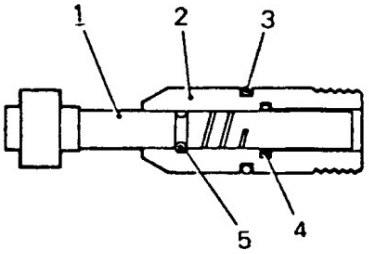
To reassemble the driven gear unit, proceed as follows:

(a) Fit "O" ring in the groove in the sleeve.

(b) Apply EP (extreme-pressure) type grease to the periphery of driven gear shaft, especially to its "O" ring surface, and insert the shaft.

(c) Secure the shaft to the sleeve by inserting the spring pin, being sure that the groove of the pin faces outward and that the tip of the pin is not protruded beyond the periphery of the sleeve.

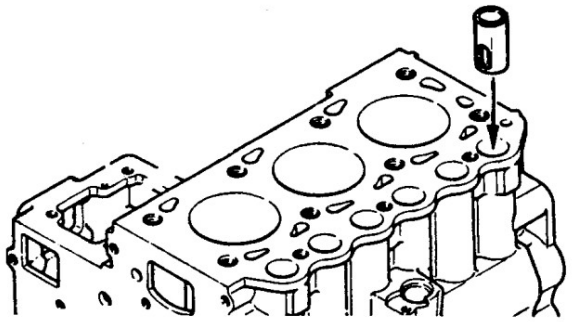
(d) Put "O" ring to the groove on the periphery of sleeve. After completing reassembly, check to be sure that the gear shaft rotates smoothly.



1-Driven gear shaft
2-Sleeve
3-"O" ring (large)
4-"O" ring (small)
5-Spring pin

Reassembling driven gear unit

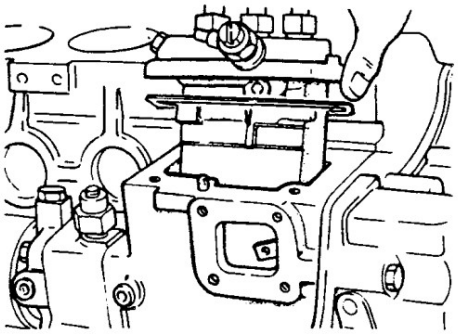
(21) Oil the tappets liberally, insert them into the holes, and follow them with pushrods, making sure each pushrod fits snugly.



Inserting tappets

(22) Install the cylinder head assembly on the block, as outlined in the preceding section.

(23) Install the injection pump assembly: refer to the section dealing with the fuel system.



Installing injection pump

(24) Install the oil pump and filter: refer to the section covering the lubrication system. Be sure to apply sealant to the screw threads of the oil pressure switch when installing this switch.

(25) Install the fuel filter.

(26) Install the water pump and cooling fan.

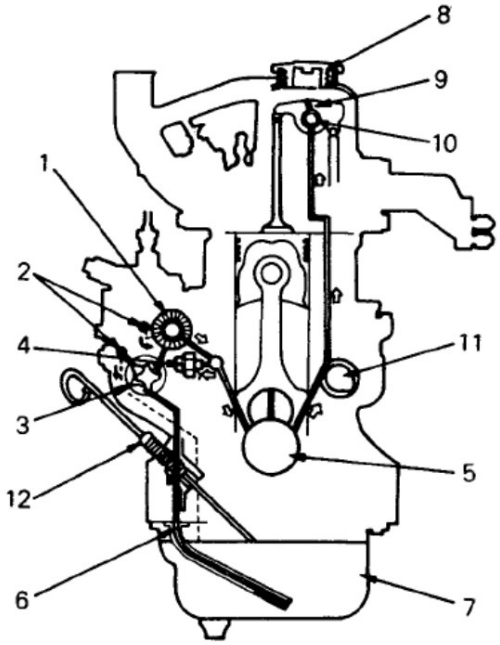
(27) Install the starter and alternator. For this installation work, refer to the section dealing with the electrical system.

LUBRICATION SYSTEM

DESCRIPTION

The oil pump is of trochoidal type; it is driven from the rear end of the injection-pump camshaft through an Oldham coupling. The discharge pressure is kept at a constant level by a check valve.

The oil filter is of full-flow type. Discharged oil is cleaned while flowing through the cartridge of this type oil filter before entering the cylinder block.



1-Oil filter	7-Oil pan
2-Check valves	8-Oil filler cap
3-Oil pump	9-Rocker arm
4-Oil pressure switch	10-Rokcer shaft
5-Crankshaft	11-Camshaft
6-Oil screen	12-Oil level gauge

Engine lubrication scheme

Engine oil information

For the present engine, the engine oil is prescribed to be of API classification of CC or above, whose viscosity rating is as follows:

Air temperature	Grade (SAE No.)	
	Single	Multi
Below –10°C (14°F)	5W	5W-20
–20°~ 0°C (–4°~ 32°F)	10W	10W-30
–10°~ 10°C (14°~ 50°F)	20W	
0°~ 20°C (32°~ 68°F)	20	
10°~ 35°C (50°~ 95°F)	30	
30°C (86°F) & above	40	20W-40

The oil in the oil pan should be changed every 100 hours of engine operation. The first oil change should be effected after 50 hours of initial operation.

Here's the method of changing the oil: When the engine is still hot after a substantial duty run, drain the oil pan completely, and add the fresh oil through the filler (whose cap is atop the rocker cover) until the oil surface comes up to the upper level mark on the level gauge. After filling up the oil pan, run the engine a minute or so and then re-check the level.

Oil filter

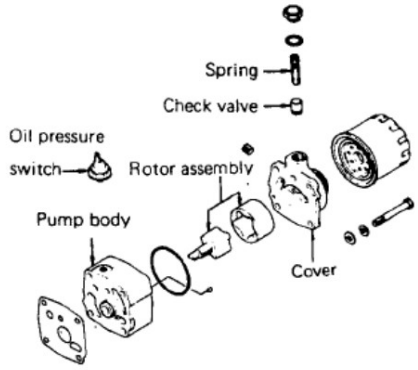
This cartridge-type filter is easier to handle because its body and filtering element are integral. It has a built-in check valve on the upstream side, which is arranged to respond to the differential pressure across the element When this pressure exceeds 1 kg/cm² (14.2 psi) (due, invariably, to a dirty element), the valve opens to allow the oil to bypass the element, causing an unfiltered oil to flow into the cylinder block in order to maintain an adequate supply of lube oil to the running parts of the engine. The filter element is prescribed to be replaced by a new one every 100 hours. The first replacement should be effected after 50 hours of initial operation.

Oil filter

Oil pump

The oil pump is of the trochoid type and is located at the right side of the cylinder block, behind the fuel injection pump. It has a build-in check valve; this valve limits the discharge pressure to 4 kg/cm² (57 psi).

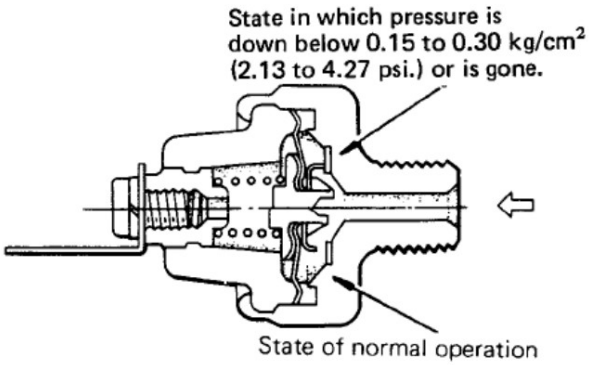
When the check valve operates to relieve the excess pressure, part of the discharged oil is bled out into a line leading to the oil pan. The running parts of the pump are two: inner rotor and outer rotor.



Oil pump – Exploded view

Oil pressure switch

This switch is located at the rear right-hand side of cylinder block, and senses the oil pressure by means of its diaphragm to close the circuit when the pressure falls to anywhere between 0.15 to 0.30 kg/cm² (2.13 to 4.27 psi.) As this switch operates, the warning lamp lights up to alert the operator. Whenever this lamp lights (except when the engine is started), the engine must be promptly shut down to search for the cause of low oil pressure condition.



Oil pressure switch

REMOVAL AND DISASSEMBLY

Oil filter

The filter can be loosened and removed with bare hands. If the filter is too tight to turn, use a filter wrench (available in the market).

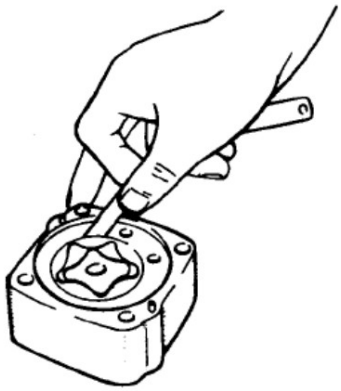
Oil pump

The oil filter must be removed to take down the oil pump. Separate the pump cover assembly from the body and take off the gasket.

INSPECTION

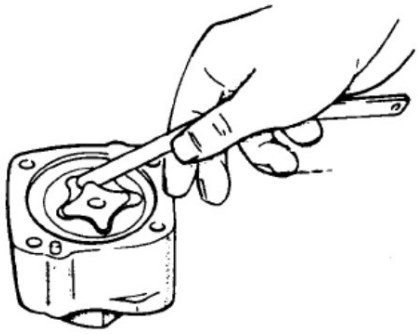
Oil pump

If the clearance of the outer rotor in the body is too large, replace the rotor assembly. To measure this clearance, use a feeler gauge, as shown.



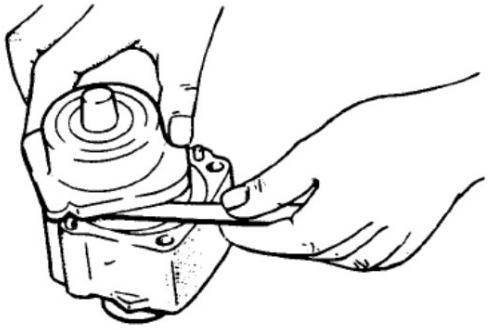
Checking outer-rotor clearance in the body

If inner rotor clearance in outer rotor (as measured in the manner shown with a feeler gauge) is too large, replace the rotor assembly.



Checking inner-rotor clearance in the outer rotor

Using a straightedge and feeler gauge, check the side clearance between the outer rotor and the pump cover. The body or rotors, or both, must be replaced if the clearance is found too large.

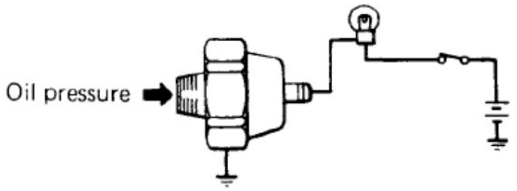


Checking rotor side clearance

Be sure to replace the "O" ring, which seals the joint between body and cover.

Oil pressure switch

Test the removed pressure switch in a test circuit arranged as shown, with variable oil pressure applied to its oil side, in order to see if the switch opens and closes its contact at the specified pressure values. If the switch does not close at a falling pressure between 0.15 to 0.30 kg/cm^2 (2.13 to 4.27 psi), replace it by a new one.



Oil pressure switch testing circuit

REASSEMBLY

Oil filter

The filter can be installed with bare hands to torque it in place. The required tightening torque is from 1.1 to 1.3 kg-cm (0.08 to 0.09 lb-ft). When fitting the filter, be sure that its "O" ring is snug in the groove. Oil the "O" ring when fitting it to the groove. After completing the whole installation work, observe the oil filter, when the engine is running, to be sure that no oil leaks from the filter.

Oil pump

Oil the inner and outer rotors; attach the gasket to the pump body; set the rotors in the body; fit "O" ring; put on the pump cover; and secure the pump by tightening its bolts.

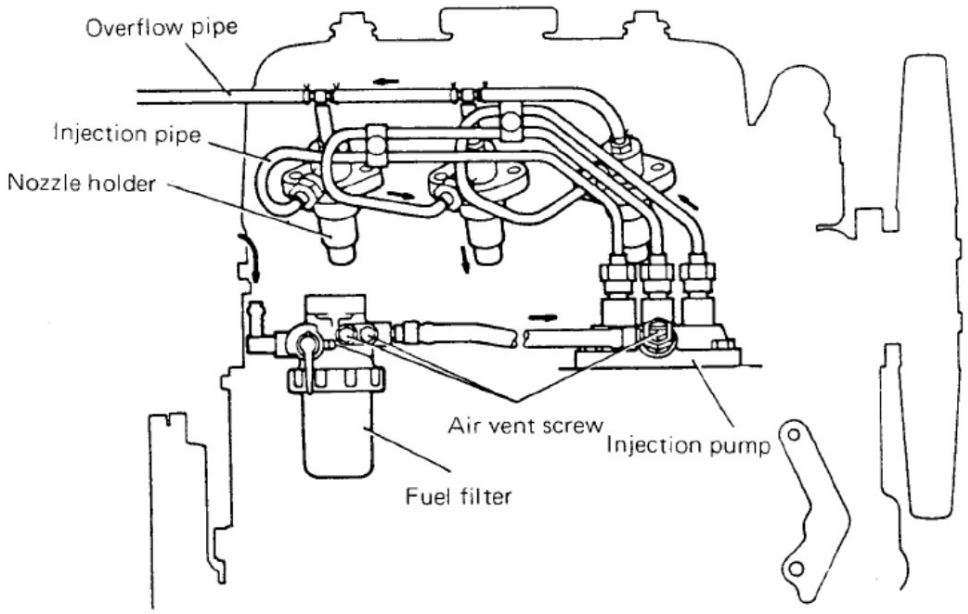
Oil pressure switch

Apply sealant to the screw threads of the switch body just before running it into the hole. Apply sealant sparingly so that the oil sensing hole of the switch will not be clogged.

FUEL SYSTEM

DESCRIPTION

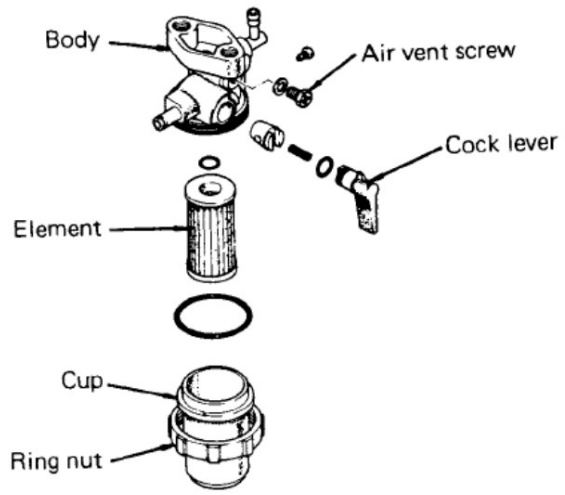
Fuel oil in the tank flows by gravity through the fuel filter to the injection pump, by which it is pumped to the three injection nozzles through injection pipes. The injection nozzle is in the holder, and has its spraying tip exposed to the combustion chamber. Some of the oil reaching the nozzle from the top of the nozzle holder is spilled into overflow pipe and returns to the fuel tank.



Fuel system components

Fuel filter

This filter is complete with a cock at its inlet and two air-vent screws. The filtering element is a pleated paper unit easy to install and remove and high in filtering performance.



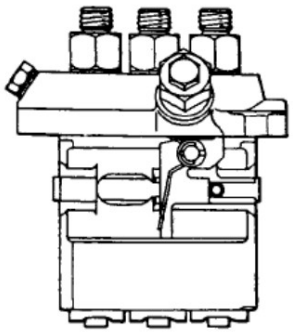
Fuel filter

Fuel injection pump

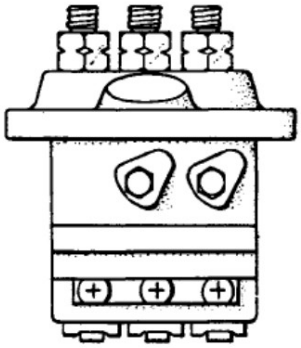
Each pumping element consists essentially of a barrel, plunger, spring, tappet, control pinion and delivery valve. Three such elements are contained in a single valve body to constitute an injection pump.

The injection pump is mounted on the right-hand side of the engine cylinder block, with its "smoke-set" device facing outward and its adjusting plates coming on the inboard side.

The three tappets ride on the three cams of the pump camshaft by their rollers and convert the rotary motion of the cams into a reciprocating motion for driving the plungers up and down in their barrels.



"Control rack" side of pump



Adjusting plate side of pump

- Injection quantity control

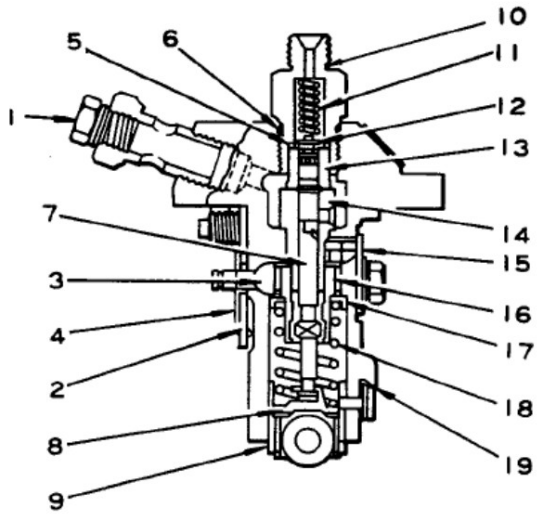
The three plungers move up and down by the same amount: the plunger stroke is constant. "Injection quantity" refers to the amount of fuel injected through the nozzle into the cylinder for each slug of fuel delivered under very high pressure by the pumping element. (For test and adjusting purposes, the value of injection quantity is specified for so many slugs or, to say the same thing, plunger strokes.)

Injection quantity is varied, not by varying the plunger stroke (which is fixed), but by angularly displacing the plungers in place. This angular displacement of three plungers in unison is accomplished by the control rack, whose teeth are meshed with three control pinions. The control rack moves straight; its linear movement causes all three pinions to turn, thereby causing the plungers to turn around their axes.

The pinion is mounted on the control sleeve surrounding the lower portion of the plunger. The plunger is capable of reciprocating in but angularly restrained by the sleeve.

The control force for actuating the control rack comes from two sources: the fuel control lever used by the operator and the governor operating in response to engine speed.

Injection quantity decreases when the rack moves to the right (towards STOP → mark) and it increases when the rack moves to the left.



1-Air vent screw	11-Spring
2-Stopper	12-Delivery valve
3-Control rack	13-Valve seat
4-Return spring	14-Plunger barrel
5-Gasket	15-Adjusting plate
6-"O" ring	16-Control pinion
7-Plunger	17-Upper seat
8-Lower seat	18-Plunger spring
9-Tappet	19-Pump body (housing)
10-Valve holder	

Injection pump – Cross section

- Smoke-set device

The smoke set unit restricts the maximum fuel injection rate from the injection pump and reduces the amount of exhaust smoke.

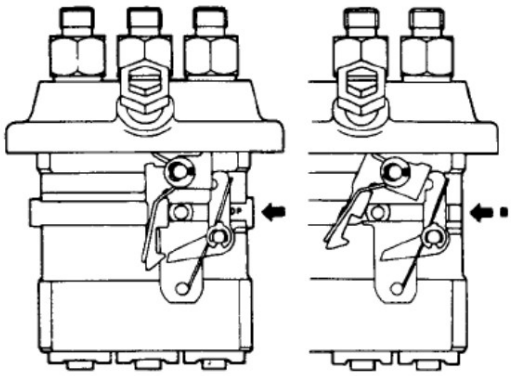
The stopper is held by a spring in the illustrated position. This position is the smoke set position. When starting the engine, pull the speed control lever fully toward the maximum speed, and the tie rod (with the stopper spring) moves the control rack, which overcomes the spring force and moves in the direction of the arrow, thus allowing over-injection for easy engine starting. On engines with an ungleich device described under the following item c, however, the operations described under item d are required.

Ungleich Device

When an overload is imposed on the engine during operation, the engine speed falls and the function of the governor moves the speed control rack in the direction that fuel injection is increased against the smoke set spring to provide larger torque. To ensure an optimum increase of the injection during operation, the ungleich set plate which controls the motion of the smoke set stopper is provided. This injection increase characteristic (ungleich effect "L") provides proper torque performance suitable for the work machine between the maximum output point and maximum torque point.

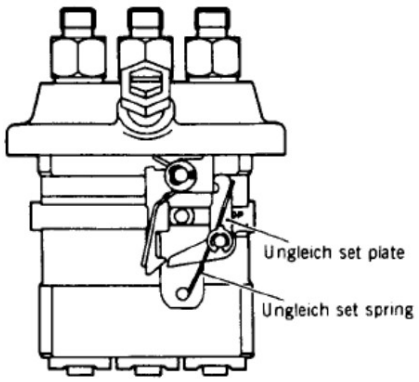
Resetting Ungleich Device and Starting Engine

To start the engine, push the speed control lever in all the way in the stop direction and then move it to the fully opened position, and the ungleich set plate will be reset and an excessive injection state created.

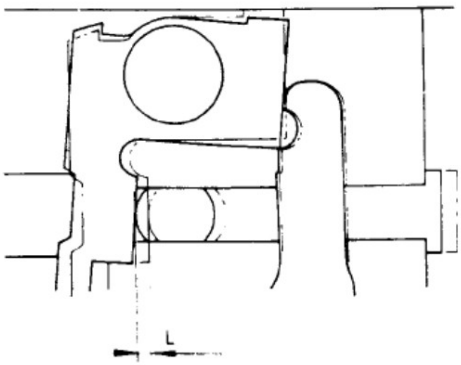


Smoke set position Over-injection

"Smoke-set" device



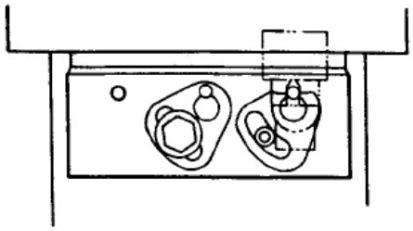
Ungleich Device



Ungleich Effect "L"

- Injection-quantity equalizing adjustment

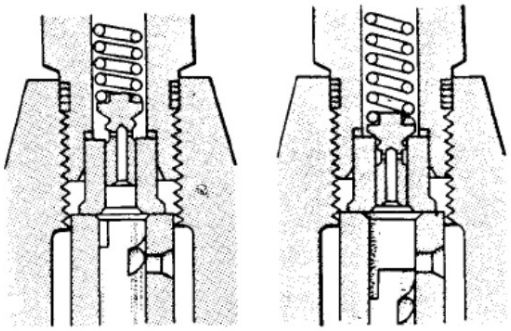
The three pumping elements are required to deliver the same quantity of fuel for each control rack position. The requirement is satisfied by allowing the two plunger barrels to be angularly repositioned while the third barrel is kept fixed in place. There are two adjusting plates, each functioning as a cam to angularly reposition the barrel.



Cam mechanism for equalizing injection quantities

- Delivery valve

This is a spring-loaded valve similar in construction to a relief valve. In operation, the valve opens when the plunger rises to develop a very high fuel pressure within the barrel. As the pressure falls, the valve snaps back to its closed position in such a way as to draw back a tiny amount of fuel from the injection pipe. By this retracting action, the nozzle is prevented from producing an after-injection dribble. In other words, each injection is sharply articulated.

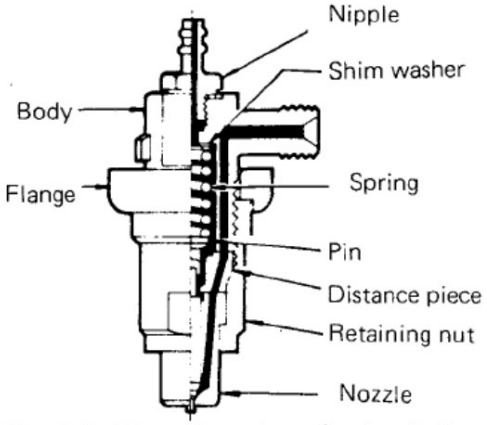


Injection in progress End of injection

Delivery valve action

Injection nozzles and nozzle holders

The nozzle holder and nozzle constitute a unit, as will be noted in this partial cutaway view.



Nozzle holder and nozzle — Sectional view

In operation, the highly pressurized shot of fuel admitted into the top part of the holder acts on the face, near the spray tip, of the needle valve and forces the needle valve upward against the force of the spring to burst into the combustion chamber through the spray orifices in the tip. The drop of fuel pressure to terminate the shot is so abrupt that the needle valve seats itself sharply. Fuel spilled from the nozzle returns through overflow pipe to the fuel tank.

DISASSEMBLY

NOTE

a) Do not remove the two adjusting plates (locking the two rotatable plunger barrels) if pump testing equipment is not available. It is on the equipment (pump tester) that the pump can be adjusted and set for proper injection quantity.

b) Internal moving parts, particularly plungers, barrels, delivery valves and the like, are high-precision parts and, upon pump disassembly, must be protected against rusting. Be sure to keep them immersed in a clean diesel fuel contained in a suitably sized pan or tray.

Fuel filter

Remove the retaining nut, pick out "O" ring, and take out the element.

Fuel injection pump

(1) Disconnect fuel injection pipes from delivery valve holders.

(2) Removing the pump mounting bolts allows the pump to be taken down. Just before lifting the pump off, have the tie rod disengaged from the control rack inside: to gain access to this rod, the side cover must be removed.

(3) Place the removed pump on the bench, and disassemble each pumping element in the following manner:

NOTE

During this disassembly, be sure to measure the thickness of the adjusting shims (indicated as (17) in the exploded view) and write down the reading and also the number of shims as reference data for reassembly.

(a) Remove delivery valve holder (1).

(b) Pick out delivery valve spring, valve (2) and "O" ring.

(c) Remove gasket and delivery valve seat.

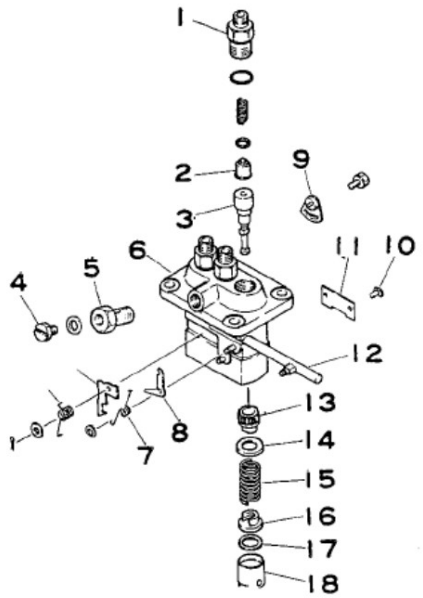
(d) Straighten the lock plate, which restrains the tappet guide pin; push in the tappet (18) just a little and pull off the guide pin with pincers. Take out the tappet (18). Shims (17) and lower seat (16) will come out.

(e) Pick out spring (15) and upper seat (14).

(f) Pull down and remove pinion (13).

(g) Draw out plunger and barrel (3) from the delivery valve side of pump housing.

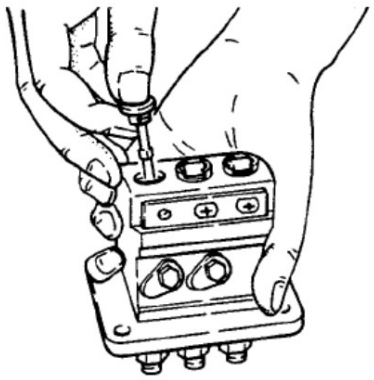
Be sure to group the delivery valve, plunger and barrel, so that these and related parts (pinion, spring, seats and shims) will be restored to the place to which they belong.



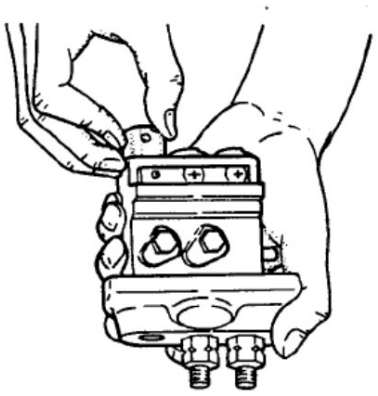
(1) Valve holder	(11) Plate
(2) Delivery valve	(12) Control rack
(3) Plunger and barrel	(13) Control pinion
(4) Air vent screw	(14) Upper seat
(5) Hollow screw	(15) Plunger spring
(6) Pump housing	(16) Lower seat
(7) Return spring	(17) Adjusting shim
(8) Stopper	(18) Tappet
(9) Adjusting plate	(19) Ungleich set plate
(1 0) Tappet guide pin	(20) Ungleich set spring

Fuel injection pump – Exploded view

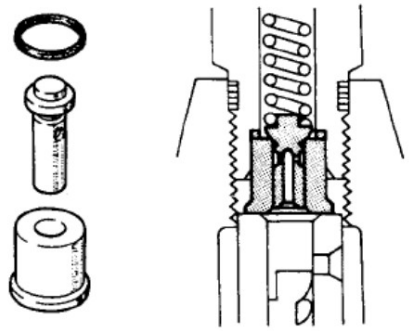
(h) Remove the smoke-set stopper by pulling off split pin and taking off washer and return spring. Draw out control rack (12).



Removing plunger



Removing tappet



Removed delivery valve

NOTE

Do not remove the injection-quantity adjusting plates since this removal makes it necessary to test the pump on a bench tester. If necessary to remove these plates, be sure to mark the plates and pump body to aid reassembly.

Nozzle holders

(1) From each nozzle holder, disconnect overflow pipe.

(2) Similarly disconnect injection pipe.

(3) Loosen nozzle holder securing bolts, and remove the holder assembly.

(4) Break apart the nozzle holder assembly in the following manner:

(a) Grip the holder body in the vise; put the wrench to the retaining nut and loosen the body. Use soft-metal pads (aluminum or copper) between vise jaws and holder body to protect the body when tightening the vise.

(b) Take out shim washer, pressure spring, flange, pressure pin and distance piece in that order.

(c) Take nozzle out of retaining nut. If the nozzle will not come easily, shake it loose by tapping on it lightly with a wooden mallet: be careful not to damage the needle valve part in the nozzle.

Disassembled nozzle holder

INSPECTION

Fuel filter

Visually examine the filtering element and, if it is found in clogged, deteriorated or damaged condition, replace it.

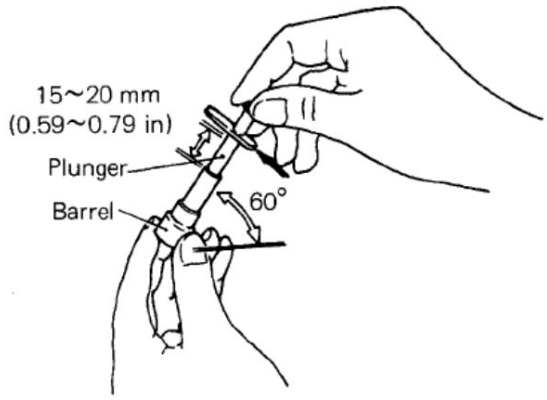
Fuel injection pump

- Delivery valve seat

If the seat is found with evidence of poor seating contact, replace it.

(1) In addition to the above requirement, each pumping element has to meet the following requirement as proof of a proper fit of the plunger in its barrel: Into the barrel removed upon injection pump disassembly, insert its plunger about 15 ~ 20 mm (0.59 ~ 0.79 in) of the way, leaving a third of its length outside the barrel, while holding the barrel horizontal; then angle up the barrel slowly by about 60°. This

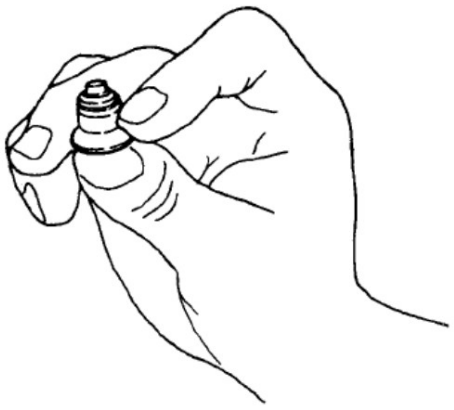
should cause the plunger to slide in all the way by its own weight to evidence a proper fit. If the plunger goes inward in a free-falling manner or becomes stuck on the way, then the pumping element must be replaced.



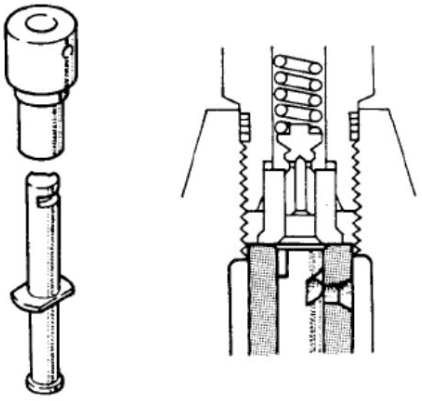
Delivery valve

- Plunger and barrel

(1) When the injection pump is in disassembled state, check the fit of the delivery valve piston in the bore by holding the valve with fingers as shown. First, let down the valve all the way into the bore, and give thumb pressure to the bore. This should raise the valve a little and release of thumb pressure should allow it to settle into seated condition; if the valve remains seated without responding to the thumb pressure, its fit in the bore is too loose.



(2) Upon disassembly, inspect plungers and barrels for signs of rusting, burning or any other malcondition, and repair or replace pumping elements as necessary. Each plunger inserted into its barrel should be capable of smooth sliding motion when pushed and pulled.



Plunger and barrel

- Control rack and pinions

Inspect the rack and pinions for tooth wear and damage. Badly worn or damaged rack and pinions must be replaced.

- Tappet

Inspect each tappet for wear at its sliding surface, roller and shaft. A damaged or excessively worn tappet must be replaced.

Injection nozzles

(1) Inspect each nozzle for damage, paying particular attention to its needle valve. If the needle valve is not seating tight, as evidenced by its contact pattern, or if any part of the nozzle is damaged, replace the whole nozzle assembly.

(2) Check to be sure that pressure springs are in good condition, free from any signs of weakening.

(3) Each nozzle assembly must be tested for spray pattern after its reassembly. The testing method will be explained in "Reassembly," below.

REASSEMBLY

Fuel filter

(1) When setting the element, be sure that the "O" ring fits snugly. With the element set properly and "O" ring in place, tighten the retaining nut fully.

(2) Secure the filter assembly to the support.

Fuel injection pump

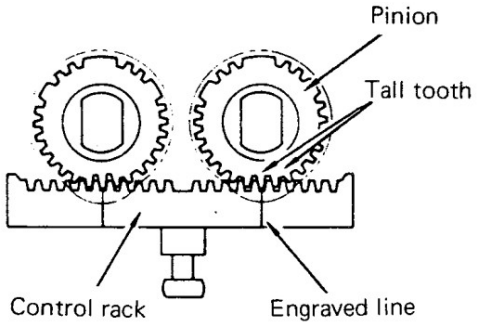
(1) Insert the barrel into the pump housing by aligning its notch with the dowel of adjusting plate.

(2) Fit "O" ring to valve holder.

(3) Insert spring seat, gasket and valve assembly into the valve holder, and run the holder into the pump housing. With the wrench, tighten the holder in place to compress the "O" ring fully.

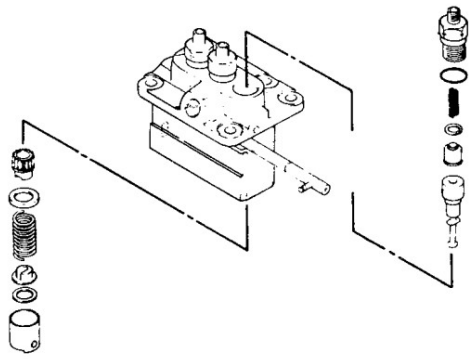
(4) Feed the control rack into the pump housing.

(5) Install pinions, positioning each pinion in such a way as to index its tall tooth (sided by deep valleys) to the engraved line on the rack.



Meshing the rack with pinions

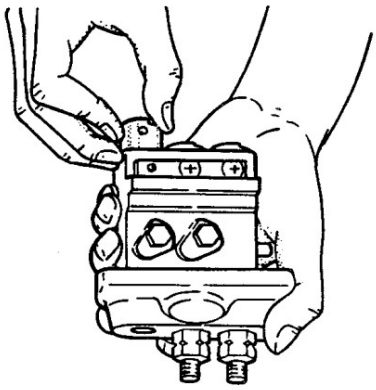
(6) Insert the upper seat and its spring into each pumping element.



Pumping element parts

(7) Combine plunger with lower spring seat, and insert the combination, bringing the "L" mark on plunger flange to control rack side.

(8) Insert the tappets, each tappet being complete with shim. Be sure that guide pin holes in tappet and pump housing are aligned. Attach lock plate and, through the plate, insert guide pin. After installing the guide pins, lock the pins by bending the plate sharply.

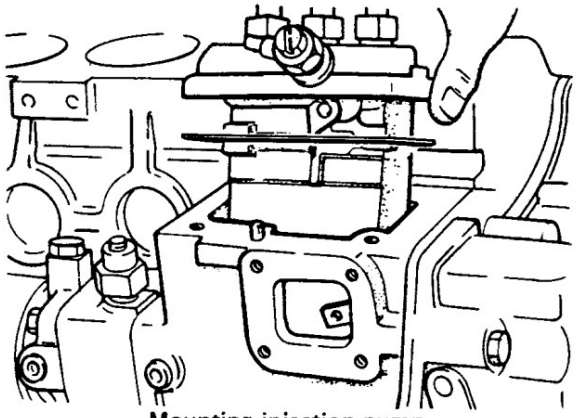


Installing tappet

(9) Install the smoke-set device, positioning its return spring and washer correctly, and lock it by inserting split pin.

(10) Adjust and set the reassembled injection pump in the following manner:

(a) A proper amount of shim must be used on the mounting seat when positioning the pump in place. Engage the tie rod (linked to the governor lever) with the control rack, and fit the tie rod spring. Shim stocks are available in nine thicknesses: 0.2 to 1.0 mm (0.01 to 0.04 in.), the thickness increment being 0.1 mm (0.004 in.).

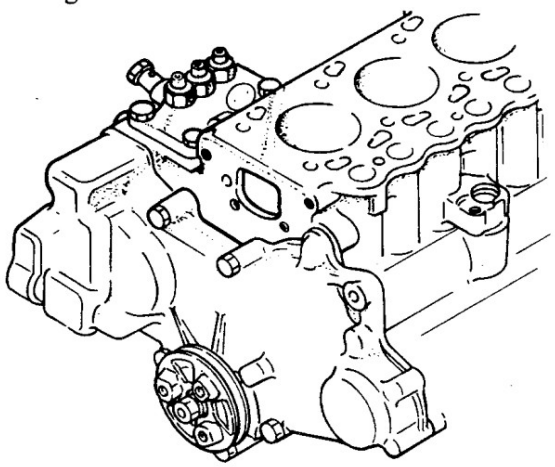


Mounting injection pump

(b) Reconnect the fuel feed line to the pump, admit fuel oil into the pump, and vent air out of this line by loosening the air vent screw.

(c) In the present engine, fuel injection is prescribed to begin at 19° before top dead center. In other words, each pumping element of the pump is required to start delivering a slug of fuel when the piston in its corresponding cylinder comes to a position of 19° (crank angle) B.T.D.C. on compression stroke. This start, that is, injection timing, can be checked in the following way:

- Take No. 1 cylinder as the reference. Remove the delivery valve holder, delivery valve and spring, and install the holder only, so that the fuel will continuously spill out from the holder.
- Slowly turn over engine crankshaft by hand until the fuel ceases to overflow from the holder and, right then at the crank pulley, observe the timing mark to see if the piston (in No. 1 cylinder) is at 19° B.T.D.C.; if not, increase or decrease the thickness of the shim on the mounting seat.

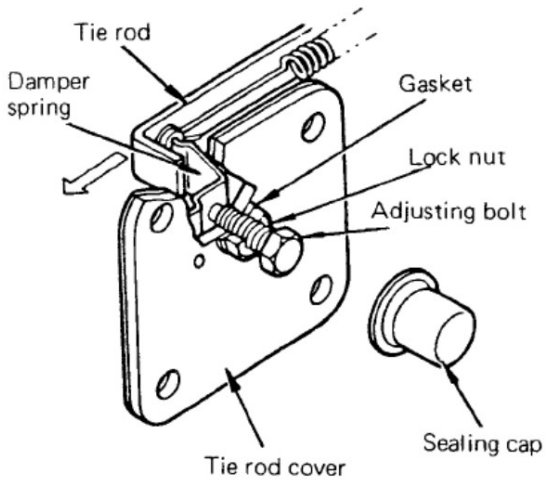


Checking injection timing

- The moment the fuel ceases to overflow corresponds to the start of injection. Increase the shim thickness to retard the timing and vice versa. Changing the thickness by 0.1 mm (0.04 in.) produces a change of about 1° in timing.
- The start of injection can be checked at the end of injection pipe, with

the delivery valve and spring in place and with the injection pipes properly installed: this is an alternate checking method. In this case, disconnect No. 1 pipe from its nozzle holder. Using a socket wrench at the crank pulley nut, gradually turn over engine crankshaft to let No. 1 pumping element force fuel out of the pipe. The moment the fuel starts swelling out of the pipe is the start of injection. This will occur approx. 1 deg. behind the standard injection timing.

(d) After making sure that the injection timing is correct, install the tie rod cover. When installing the cover equipped with damper spring, keep the tie rod pushed in the direction of increasing the speed.



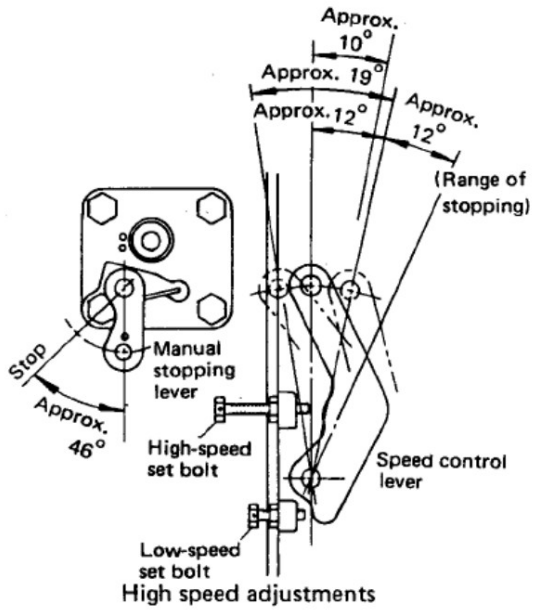
Installing tie rod cover

To set the high engine speed, proceed as follows:

① With the damper spring in free state (the adjusting bolt backed), set the engine speed to the "A" rpm by means of the high-speed set bolt. After setting, lock the set bolt with lock nut.

Specification

Model	"A" rpm
K3A-13MT	$2840\ ^{0}_{-40}$
K3C-13MT	$2840\ ^{0}_{-40}$

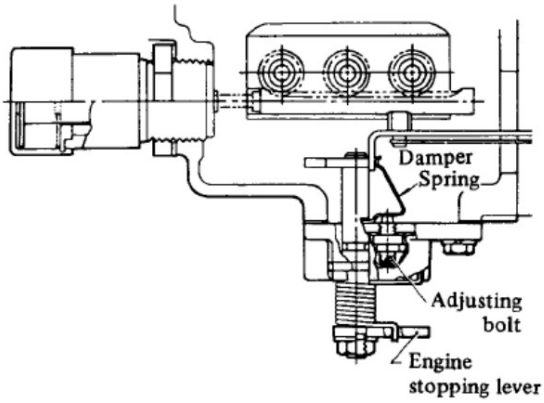


High speed adjustments

② Run in the damper spring adjusting bolt to set the engine speed to the "B" rpm, and lock the bolt with lock nut. (Apply Super Three-Bond #20 to the threads of the bolt before locking.)

Specification

Model	"B" rpm
K3A-13MT	$2850\ ^{+30}_{-25}$
K3C-13MT	$2850\ ^{+30}_{-25}$



Damper spring adjustment

③ Seal the adjusting bolt with sealing cap.

④ Seal the high-speed set bolt with wire and cachet.

Injection nozzles and nozzle holder assemblies

(1) Fit nozzle assembly, distance piece and pressure pin to retaining nut.

(2) Fit shim, spring and flange to body, and tighten the body and retaining nut together by torquing to the prescribed value.

NOTE

The body may be gripped in the vise, but not the retaining nut. This is because the nozzle might suffer distortion if the nut is clamped between the vise jaws.

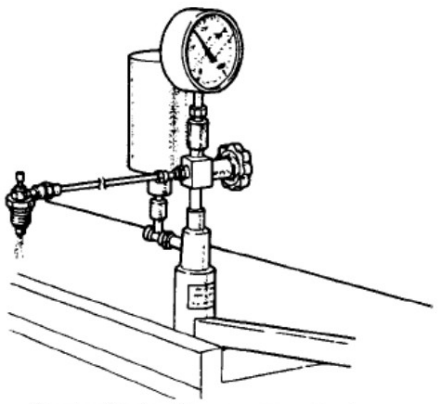
(3) Fit gasket and nipple to the body.

(4) When installing the nozzle holder assemblies, be sure to use new gaskets and tighten the securing bolts to the prescribed torque value.

(5) Prior to installing the overhauled nozzle holder assemblies, test each for "start-of-injection" pressure, spray pattern, "after-injection" dribbling and fuel atomization.

(a) Start-of-injection pressure test

A nozzle tester must be used to determine the pressure at which the nozzle starts spraying. If the pressure noted on the nozzle under test is at variance with the specification, increase or decrease the shim thickness. Changing the thickness by 0.1 mm (0.04 in.) changes the start-of-injection pressure by about 10 kg/cm² (142 psi).



Start-of-injection pressure test

(b) Spray pattern test

Operate the tester lever rather slowly to see if the nozzle shoots out fuel intermittently. A small amount of fuel is discharged in this test at such a pressure as will allow the needle valve to chatter and, therefore, spray intermittently with some low-tone sound. The test is often called "chattering test." A good spray is characterized by fine atomization and straightforward jetting.

Good Bad Bad

Spray patterns in chattering test

(c) After-injection dribbling test

See if the nozzle dribbles after each injection. A dribbling nozzle must be replaced. In the chattering test, fuel might ooze out to form a globule of fuel at the nozzle tip but, since this is due to the chattering action of the needle valve, such a globule need not be taken as a cause of nozzle replacement.

Good Bad Bad

Dribbling in test condition

(d) Atomization test

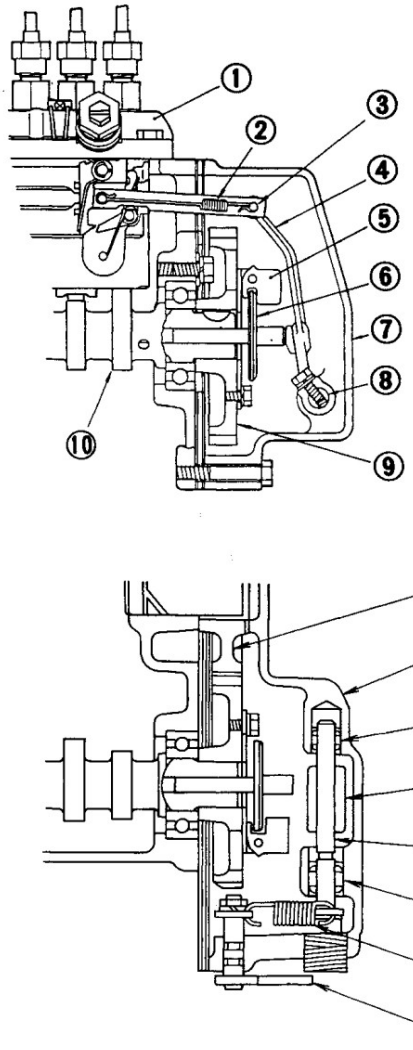
Operate the tester lever rapidly, at a rate of about 800 strokes per minute to make the nozzle spray out with full force. Visually observe the spray to see if it consists of uniformly fine particles of fuel, straight in direction and having no fissures.

GOVERNOR SYSTEM

DESCRIPTION

The principal device in the governor is three flyweights mounted on injection-pump gear to move its sliding shaft in linear direction. This shaft pushes the governor lever ahead, and the lever is connected to the control rack through the spring-loaded tie rod.

In operation, the flyweights spread apart and contract according as engine speed rises and falls. As the speed rises, the flyweights pushes its sliding shaft to pull out the control rack in the direction of decreasing injection quantity to reduce engine speed. In the steady-state condition, this push by flyweights is counterbalanced by the force of governor spring acting on the governor shaft.



1-Injection pump
2-Stopper spring
3-Tie rod
4-Governor lever
5-Governor weight
6-Sliding shaft
7-Gear case
8-Governor shaft
9-Pump gear
10-Camshaft
11-Idle gear
12-Needle bearing
13-Needle bearing
14-Governor spring
15-Speed control lever

Governor mechanism

DISASSEMBLY

(1) Remove fan belt. (Refer to the section dealing with the cooling system.)

(2) Remove crank pulley nut, and take off the pulley.

(3) Remove the fuel injection pump. (Refer to the section dealing with the disassembly of fuel injection pump.)

(4) Remove the gear case. (Refer to the removal method outlined in Cylinder block.)

(5) Take out governor spring, taking care not to disfigure the spring.

(6) Remove nut, washer and governor spring lever; and take out speed control lever from the gear case.

(7) Remove nut, washer and spring lever; loosen the bolt securing the governor lever; and remove the lever.

(8) Remove the governor weight assembly and sliding shaft from the pump camshaft.

(9) From the governor lever, take off the tie rod and spring.

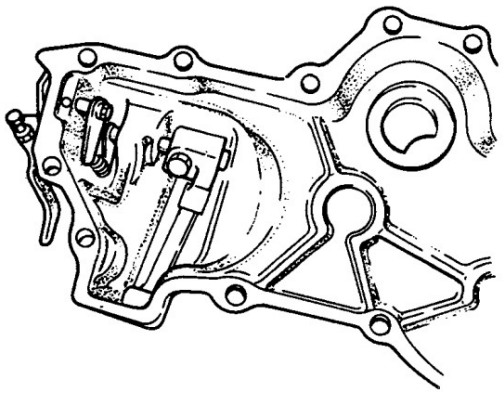
INSPECTION

Governor weights assembly

Inspect the sliding and rotating portions of the weight assembly, and replace the assembly if any part is excessively worn or damaged badly. Be sure that the sliding shaft is capable of smooth sliding motion.

Governor lever

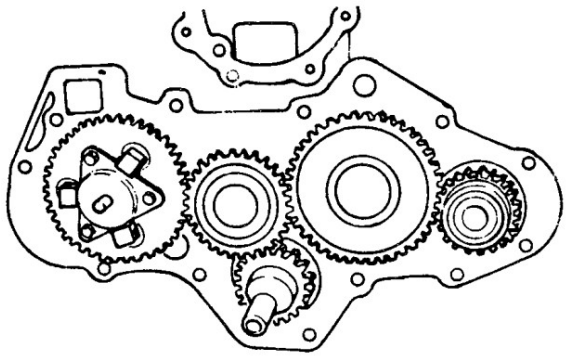
That part of the governor lever in contact with the sliding shaft must be inspected for wear. Similarly, the connection of the tie rod with the control rack must be inspected. Inspect the tie rod spring, too.



Governor lever

Governor spring

Check this spring for evidence of weakening, inspect it for breakage, and replace it if it is found in defective condition.



Governor weight assembly and sliding shaft

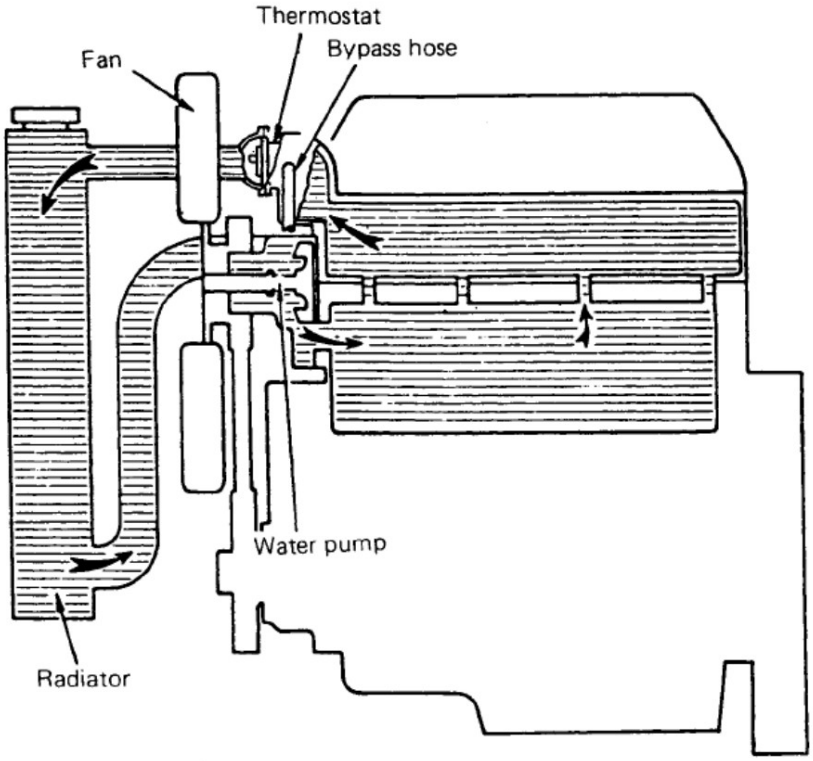
Needle bearings

Check to be sure that the needle bearings on the governor lever shaft which is held by the gear case, are in good condition, free from excessive wear.

REASSEMBLY

Reassemble the governor mechanism by reversing the sequence of disassembling steps. After reassembly, move the rotating and sliding parts by hand to be sure that they all move smoothly.

COOLING SYSTEM



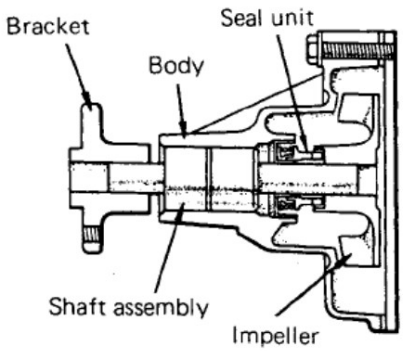
Schematic coolant circuit diagram

WATER PUMP

Construction

Engine coolant is set in recirculation by the water pump, a centrifugal pump mounted on the front end of cylinder block. The pump casing, shaped like a bracket, is bolted to the front end of cylinder block and, by its protruding end, holds the pump shaft through a double-row ball bearing. The inner portion of the shaft carries the pump impeller and the outer portion, outside of the casing, carries a bracket, to which the cooling fan hub and pulley are bolted.

The space between the two rows of balls, surrounded by the casing, is filled with grease: there is no need to give lubricating attention to this bearing. A seal unit is fitted to the shaft, right next to the bearing, to isolate the coolant space from the grease-filled space.



Water pump – Cross section

Removal

(1) Drain the coolant space of the engine by opening the drain cock, located on the left-hand side of the cylinder block.

(2) Disconnect water hoses from the pump.

(3) Remove fan belt.

(4) Remove cooling fan.

(5) Remove the mounting bolts and take down the pump.

Inspection

- **Water pump**

(1) Inspect the as-removed pump for crack in the casing, evidence of failure in the seal unit and damage to the impeller.

(2) Spin the impeller by hand to see if the shaft rotates rough and, if so, the pump should be replaced as a whole.

(3) Inspect the fan blades and hub for damage.

(4) Check the fan belt for permanent stretch. A stretched or otherwise deteriorated belt must be replaced. Cracks in the belt mean that the belt is aged too much to stand further use.

- **Bypass hose**

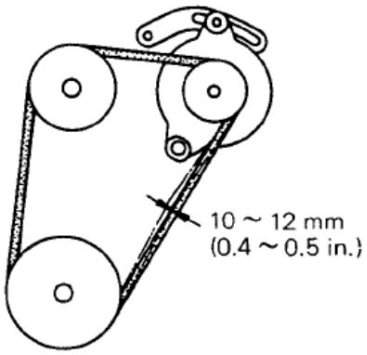
Check the hose for cracks, deterioration or other defects.

Installation

- **Water pump and fan belt**

Install the pump by reversing the sequence of removing steps and, after putting on the belt, adjust its tension as follows:

The belt is in properly tensioned condition if its middle part between alternator pulley and crank pulley deflects 10 to 12 mm (0.4 to 0.5 in.) when pushed with a fingertip. To adjust the tension, displace the alternator in place. After displacing the alternator to give a proper tension to the belt, tighten the support bolt and brace bolt good and hard.



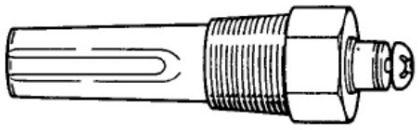
Adjusting fan belt tension

NOTE

Check to be sure that the bypass hose is installed away from the cooling fan.

THERMO SWITCH

This switch is installed on the cylinder head, on the front end face of its right-hand part. The actuating element, built in the switch body, responds to the change in coolant temperature and closes the switch contact at 108 ~ 114° C (226 to 237° F) of rising coolant temperature. As the switch closes, the warning lamp lights up to alert the operator, telling him to take a necessary step, namely, reducing the load, refill the cooling system as necessary or check the cooling-system components for the cause of abnormal temperature rise.



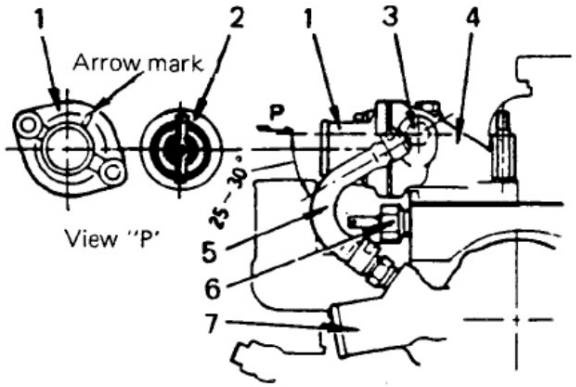
Thermo switch

THERMOSTAT

The thermostat, located in the path of returning coolant, has a wax-pellet expanding and contracting in response to the rise and fall of coolant temperature. By its expanding and contracting movements, the pellet actuates the valve to control the coolant flowrate in the return line to the radiator. When coolant temperature is low, a little coolant is admitted by the thermostat direct into the suction side of the pump, thereby reducing the flowrate through the radiator.

Installation

To install the thermostat, first secure the thermostat fitting by tightening its mounting bolts (2 pcs) good and hard, and place the thermostat in it, as shown. Then install the water outlet fitting with its arrow mark up after placing its gasket. Installing this fitting the other way round will cause damage to the thermostat. Be sure to apply Three-Bond #4 to the nipple when installing it to the thermostat fitting.



1-Water outlet fitting
2-Thermostat
3-Nipple
4-Thermostat fitting
5-Water bypass hose
6-Thermo switch
7-Water pump

Installing thermostat

Inspection

(1) The thermostat valve remains seated (closed) when coolant temperature is down. The temperature at which the valve starts unseating itself is specified; similarly, the temperature at which the valve reaches its full-open position is specified.

To test the thermostat to see if it meets these specifications, the thermostat must be taken down and placed in a pool of water, whose temperature can be raised and lowered. Remember, the thermostat is insensitive to the pressure of engine coolant.

A thermostat not meeting the specifications must be replaced.

(2) When tested as above, the thermostat valve should remain seated tight at the ambient temperature, that is, when the water is cold; if not, it means that the wax-type element is defective or has failed to require replacement of the thermostat as a whole.

Functional specifications

Item	Standard
Valve opening temperature	82°C (180°F)
Valve full-open temperature	95°C (203°F)

NOTE

The wax-pellet type thermostat will be stuck closed if its sensing part is damaged, causing the engine to overheat.

COOLANT CHANGE

Soft water should be used in the cooling system: hard water is likely to foul up the water side of the system in a relatively short time by forming scales and sludges – substances that interfere with smooth conduction of heat from metal to the coolant. Even soft water, if used too long, becomes high in the concentration of scale- and sludge-forming impurities.

Twice a year, or at least once a year, clean the whole cooling system by vigorous flushing and fill up the system with a fresh batch of coolant.

RUST INHIBITORS AND ANTIFREEZE ADDITIVES

It is recommendable that a rust inhibitor, which is commercially available in most of auto supply stores, should be added to the coolant in order to retard the formation of rust and sludges in the cooling system. In areas where the lowest temperature is anticipated to be below the freezing point, an antifreeze compound should be added to the coolant in an proportion appropriate for the lowest expected sub-zero temperature.

A typical antifreeze compound is effective to the extent and degrees illustrated. Its percent concentration in the coolant (cooling water) and the corresponding temperature level, down to which the coolant will not freeze, are as listed in this chart:

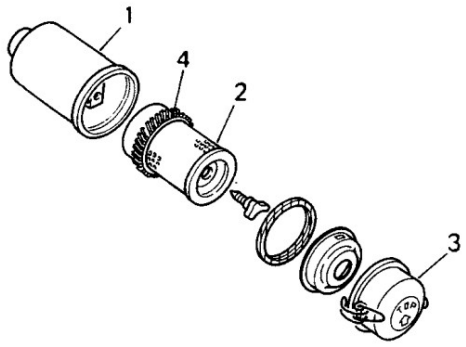
Antifreeze concentration (%)	13	23	30	35	45	50	60
Freezing temperature [°C (°F)]	−5 (23)	−10 (14)	−15 (5)	−20 (−4)	−30 (−22)	−40 (−40)	−50 (−58)

AIR CLEANER

DESCRIPTION

The air cleaner is composed of three stages of air cleaning: 1st stage is a wire-netting for keeping out larger dusts such as straw, weed, etc. 2nd stage is a cyclone-type centrifugal dust remover. 3rd stage is a paper-element cleaner. Incoming air entering the 2nd stage is set in swirling motion by cyclonic vanes, so that heavy dust particles are flung off the air stream. The air then enters the 3rd stage, in which it has to flow through microscopically small pores formed in the filtering paper and leaves fine dust particles on the outer surfaces of the pleated paper wall.

The heavy dust particles centrifugally separated from the air fall into a dust cup. The fine dust particles left on the paper element can be removed by air-blasting.



1-Body 3-Dust cap
2-Element 4-Vane

Partial cutaway view of air cleaner

AIR CLEANER SERVICES

After each 100 hours of operation, empty the dust cup, and clean the paper element, first with a blast of compressed air and, if this does not remove the deposited dust completely, then by washing with a non-sudsing water-detergent mixture.

If the machine is worked in a dusty area, the above-mentioned servicing interval of 100 hours should be shortened.

PERIODICAL MAINTENANCE SERVICE CHART

○... Check, adjust or replenish □ ... Clean ●... Replace △... Drain

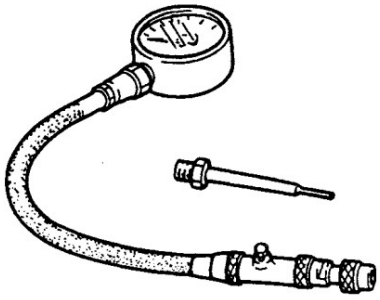
Check and service point \ Time to check or adjust	Before operation (on delivery)	After first 50 hours	Every 100 hours	Every 400 hours	Every 800 hours	Long-period storage	Remarks
Engine proper							
Loose, damaged and leaky points	○						
Exhaust fume, noise, and vibration	○						
Additional tightening of engine parts		○			○		
Valve clearance		○		○			
Engine idle speed		○	○				
Engine compression pressure					○		
Lubrication system							
Engine oil	○	●	●				
Oil filter		●	●				
Fuel system							
Fuel	○					△	
Fuel tank				□		□	
Fuel filter			□	●			Replace only the element for the type with cock
Injection pump					○		Adjustment of fuel injection rate
Nozzle				○			
Intake system							
Air cleaner (filter paper type)			□	●			
Cooling system							
Cooling water	○	●			●	△	Unless anti-freeze is mixed, drain after each operation
Fan belt	○						
Electrical system							
Check of each instrument (pilot lamp)	○						
Starter motor, alternator, regulator				○	○*		* Adjustment of voltage and current
Glow plug				○			

ENGINE MAINTENANCE GUIDE

When to overhaul

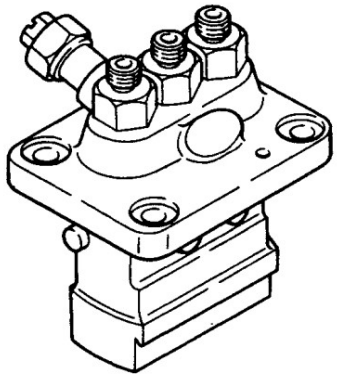
The object of engine overhauling is to reproduce, as closely as possible, the vitality and capability which the engine had when it was new. The symptoms that justify the decision to overhaul the engine are two: reduced power output and high consumption of fuel and lube oil, both being concurrent and attributable to internal deterioration inside the engine.

There is no method nor test that verifies the internal deterioration so accurately and quickly as compression test. With a special pressure gauge and its adaptor and fittings, one can readily measure the "compression" pressure on each cylinder of the engine and tell, from the readings taken, whether the engine should be overhauled or not.



Pressure gauge, adaptor and fittings for engine "compression" test

In a diesel engine, low power output could often be due to some malconditions in the injection system – damaged injection nozzles, mistimed injection, low injection pressure, etc. These malconditions, if present, call for overhauling of the injection system components or for re-timing of the injection.



Fuel injection pump

Suppose that the engine has ceased to develop full power, so that you have to decide whether the engine should be overhauled or not. The right approach begins with posing these questions to yourself:

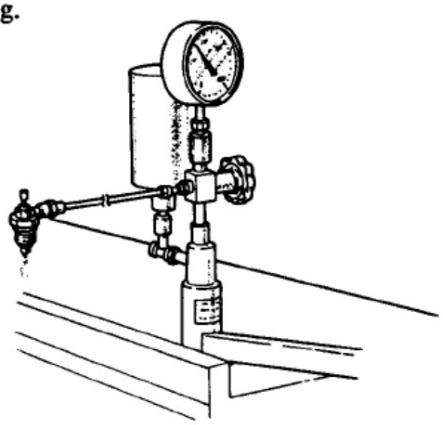
- Is fuel or oil consumption appreciably higher than before?
- Is it harder to start up the engine?
- Does the engine make more noise, coming from inside, than before?

If the answer is yes to all these questions, read "compression" pressures by the method to be described and, if the readings are too low (as compared with the specification), it means that the engine needs overhauling because it is internally deteriorated, that is, its internal running parts are excessively worn – cylinder bores, pistons, piston rings and valves.

If, however, the readings (compression pressure) are adequately high, then the injection system should be blamed for the low power output.

In conducting a "compression" pressure test, it should be borne in mind that the pressure rise occurring above the piston in the cylinder is affected by the speed with which the piston rises on compression stroke. It is for this reason that the specification (a certain pressure which

a brand-new engine should be capable of developing) is based on a specific speed of engine cranking.



Nozzle tester

Compression pressure test – how to measure compression pressure

(1) Remove the preheater plug of the cylinder to be checked.

(2) Run the pressure-gauge adaptor into the threaded hole just vacated by the plug, and tighten the adaptor good and hard. Tie the gauge line, complete with the compression pressure gauge, into the adaptor. The gauge is now rigged up.

(3) Start cranking the engine with the speed control lever fully pushed in so that no fuel oil will be injected and read the engine speed just when the cranking speed has reached a steady level. Read the pressure gauge indication: this reading is the "compression" pressure of that cylinder.

(4) Carry out the foregoing steps on the next cylinder to read its "compression" pressure.

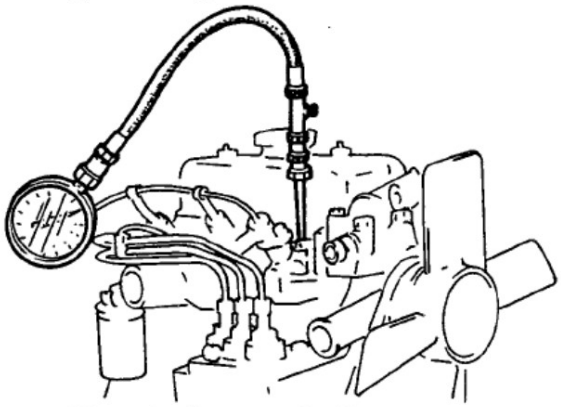
NOTE

Taking a reading only on one cylinder and assuming the other cylinders to produce the same pressure reading – this is a practice likely to result in an unwise decision. In the present engine, take three readings, one on each cylinder.

Engine diagnosis on the basis of compression pressure readings

(a) Compression pressure of a brand-new engine could be slightly increased as the piston rings, valve seats, etc. wear in. As the engine parts wear down after "run-in" period, compression pressure lowers gradually.

(b) If the readings are down to the limit (repair limit), the engine should be overhauled.



Measuring "compression" pressure

Engine diagnosis on the basis of oil consumption

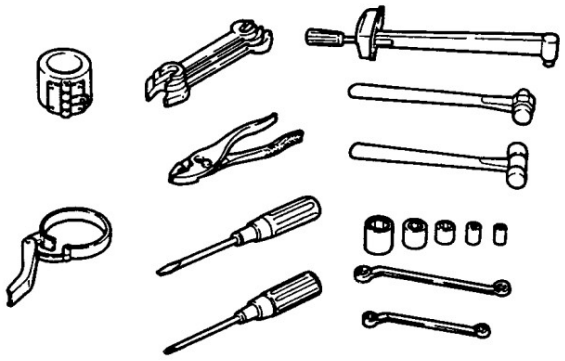
Another yardstick is oil consumption: if the current oil consumption is higher by more than 50% than the normal consumption, the engine is probably in need of overhauling.

General working rules on disassembling and reassembling steps

(a) Cleanliness is absolutely essential for successful work, with respect to the place of work, shop facilities such as benches and fixtures, the engine parts handled, the tools and materials.

(b) Use of right kinds of tools is another essential.

(c) Before disassembling the engine, drain water, lube oil and fuel completely. Check oil for contamination. Also check the qualities of the oil and fuel.



General hand tools

(d) Never try to economize sealing parts in rebuilding the engine. "O" rings, oil seals, gaskets and packings are "expendable" items in most cases.

(e) Read the instructions given in the manual, paying particular attention to the special notes, hints and warnings.

(f) Crank the engine by hand to be sure it will run smoothly before mounting it on the machine.

TROUBLESHOOTING

Starting difficulties

Symptoms and possible causes		Remedy
Starting run is slow	a) Lube oil is too high in viscosity	a) Replace by a low-viscosity lube oil.
	b) Battery has run down	b) Recharge.
	c) Aged battery	c) Replace.
	d) Defective connections of cable clamps with battery terminal posts	d) Clean battery terminals and cable clamps; correct loose clamps.
	e) Starter is defective	e) Overhaul, repair or replace.
	f) Defective drive parts in power train	f) Check the clutch for OFF.
Defective fuel injection system	a) Air is present in fuel	a) Carry out an air bleeding operation on fuel lines.
	b) Fuel filter is clogged	b) Clean or replace.
	c) Injection pressure is low	c) Adjust injection pressure.
	d) Poor spray pattern	d) Clean or replace nozzle.
	e) Unsatisfactory fuel delivery from injection pump	e) Overhaul or replace injection pump.
	f) A wrong kind of fuel is used	f) Replace by No. 2-D fuel oil or a lower-viscosity fuel oil in severe cold season.
	g) Fuel injection timing is too advanced	g) Adjust fuel injection timing.
Poor compression	a) Improper valve clearance	a) Adjust valve clearance.
	b) Defective valve seats	b) Repair by relapping.
	c) Seized valve stems	c) Replace valves and valve guides.
	d) Broken valve springs	d) Replace valve springs.
	e) A leaky cylinder head due to blown gasket	e) Replace gasket.
	f) Piston rings are seized in the grooves	f) Replace pistons and piston rings.
	g) Piston rings, pistons or cylinders are excessively worn	g) Overhaul engine.

Symptoms and possible causes		Remedy
Glow plugs	a) Glow plugs are burnt out b) Glow plugs do not become red hot	a) Replace glow plugs. b) Check and correct lead wire connections.
Governor	a) Governor control lever is set to a wrong position b) Governor spring is off	a) Reset it to the start position. b) Correct.

Not enough output power

Symptoms and possible causes		Remedy
Poor compression		Refer to a), poor compression "Starting difficulties," above.
Maladjusted fuel injection system	a) Improper fuel injection timing b) Injected fuel quantity is not enough c) Fuel injection pressure is too low	a) Adjust fuel injection timing. b) Overhaul or replace injection pump. c) Check injection nozzles and adjust pressure.
Fuel is not reaching injection pump	a) Air is trapped in fuel circuit b) Fuel filter is clogged c) Fuel tank is not clean	a) Check connectors and retighten. b) Clean filter or replace element. c) Clean fuel tank.
Insufficient intake air	Clogged air cleaner	Clean air cleaner and replace element.
Overheating	a) Cooling water shortage b) Loose fan V-belt c) Radiator is clogged or leaking d) Fuel injection is mis-timed e) Engine oil shortage	a) Add cooling water. b) Adjust or replace V-belt. c) Clean or replace radiator. d) Adjust fuel injection timing. e) Add engine oil.

Engine oil consumption rate is high

Symptoms and possible causes		Remedy
Oil leakage	a) Defective oil seals b) Blown gear case gasket c) Loose gear case mounting bolts d) Loose drain plug e) Loose oil pipe connectors f) Blown rocker cover gasket g) Loose rocker cover mounting bolts	a) Replace oil seals. b) Replace gasket. c) Retighten. d) Retighten. e) Retighten. f) Replace gasket. g) Retighten.

Symptoms and possible causes		Remedy
Pumping up of oil	a) Piston ring gaps are not positioned correctly	a) Correct.
	b) Bent or twisted connecting rods	b) Replace connecting rods.
	c) Worn piston rings	c) Replace piston rings.
	d) Worn pistons or cylinders	d) Replace pistons or re-bore the cylinders.
Oil down	a) Defective stem seals	a) Replace stem seals.
	b) Worn valves or valve guides	b) Replace valves or valve guides.

Abnormal sound or noises

Sumptoms and possible causes		Remedy
Crankshaft main bearings	a) Worn bearings	a) Replace bearings or grind the crankshaft.
	b) Worn crankshaft	b) Grind the crankshaft.
	c) Fused bearings	c) Replace bearings and check lubrication system.
Connecting rods and connecting rod bearings	a) Worn connecting rod big end bearings	a) Replace bearings.
	b) Worn crankshaft pins	b) Grind the crankshaft.
	c) Bent connecting rods	c) Correct bend or replace.
Pistons, piston pins and piston rings	a) Worn cylinders	a) Re-bore and grind cylinders to oversize and replace pistons.
	b) Worn piston pins	b) Replace pistons.
	c) Seized pistons	c) Replace pistons and grind cylinders.
	d) Seized pistons and worn or broken piston rings	d) Replace pistons and piston rings.
Camshaft and others	a) Worn camshaft	a) Replace camshaft.
	b) Excessive valve clearance	b) Adjust.
	c) Worn timing gear	c) Replace gear.
	d) Worn fan pulley bearing	d) Replace bearing.

Engine run is not smooth

Symptoms and possible causes		Remedy
Fuel injection pump	a) Injection quantity varies from one cylinder to another	a) Adjust fuel injection quantity or replace defective parts.
	b) Malfunctioning of control rack	b) Overhaul, check and repair the fuel injection pump.
	c) Worn delivery valves	c) Replace delivery valves.
	d) Poor atomization of fuel sprayed from nozzles	d) Replace nozzles.
Governor	a) Malfunctioning of governor	a) Check governor shaft and correct.
	b) Weakened governor spring	b) Replace spring.

SPECIFICATIONS AND MAINTENANCE STANDARDS

Engine proper

All values in mm (in.) unless otherwise indicated

Description	Type	Standard value	Repair limit	Service limit
Compression pressure		32 kg/cm^2 (455.2 psi)/280 rpm	26 kg/cm^2 (369.8 psi)	Approx. 22 kg/cm^2 (312.9 psi)
Pressure difference between cylinders (max)		2.5 kg/cm^2 (35.6 psi)		
Injection order		1–3–2		
Injection timing	K3A, K3C-13MT	21° ±1.5° B.T.D.C. (when started at smoke set position)	21° ±2°	
Cylinder head				
Bottom surface flatness (distortion)		0.05 (0.0020) max.	0.1(0.0039)	
Valve guide L.D. (both intake and exhaust valves)		6.6 (0.2598)		
Valve seat angle (both intake and exhaust valve)		45°		
Valve seat width (both intake and exhaust valves)		1.3 to 1.8 (0.0512 to 0.0709)	2.5 (0.0984)	
Valve seat sinkage				−1 (−0.0394)
Valve timing				
Intake valve opened		18° B.T.D.C.		
Intake valve closed		46° A.B.D.C.		
Exhaust valve opened		46° B.B.D.C.		
Exhaust valve closed		18° A.T.D.C.		
Valve clearance (both intake exhaust valves)		0.25 (0.0098) (when engine is cold)		
Valve				
Valve head diameter				
Intake valve		27.2 (1.079)		
Exhaust valve		25.2 (0.9921)		
Overall length		114.5 (4.5079)		
Stem O.D.		6.6 (0.2598)		
Clearance between stem and guide				
Intake valve				0.10(0.0039)
Exhaust valve				0.15(0.0059)
Valve face angle		45°		
Valve head thickness(margin)		1.0 (0.0039)		0.5(0.0197)
Valve spring				
Free length		43 (1.6929)		41.7(1.6417)
Installed load/Installed length		14.0 ± 0.7 kg (30.9 ± 1.5 lbs.)/36 (1.42)		−15%
Squareness		1.5°		3°

Description	Type	Standard value	Repair limit	Service limit
Rocker arm				
Rocker arm I.D.		18.9 (0.7441)		
Clearance between rocker arm and shaft				0.2(0.0079)
Cylinder block				
Camshaft hole I.D.				
Front		45 (1.7716)		
Center		44 (1.7323)		
Rear		34 (1.3386)		
Cylinder bore				
	K3A	65 (2.5591)	+0.2 (+0.0079)	+0.95 (+0.0374)
	K3C	70 (2.7559)	+0.2 (+0.0079)	+0.95 (+0.0374)
Oversize finish tolerance		0 to 0,03 (0 to 0.0012)		
Taper of cylinder		0.01 (0.0004) max.		
Top surface flatness (distortion)		0.05 (0.0020) max.	0.1 (0.0039)	
Piston				
	Solid type			
Material	Aluminum alloy			
O.D. (skirt end)	K3A	65 (2.5591)		
	K3C	70 (2.7559)		
Clearance between piston and cylinder				0.3(0.0118)
Oversize		0.25 (0.0098), 0.50 (0.0197) 0.75 (0.0295)		
Piston pin				
	Semi-floating type			
O.D		19 (0.7480)		
Clearance between piston pin and piston				0.08(0.0031)
Clearance between piston pin and connecting rod		Press-fitting load : 500 to 1,500 kg (1,102.3 to 3,306.9 lbs.)		
Piston ring				
Type and number of rings		3		
Compression ring				
No. 1	Barrel type			
No. 2	Tapered ring			
No. 3	Tapered ring			
Oil ring				

Description	Type	Standard value	Repair limit	Service limit
Ring width				
Compression ring				
No. 1 to No. 3		2.5 (0.0984)		
Oil ring		4.0 (0.1575)		
Ring side clearance				
Compression ring				
No. 1		0.06 to 0.12 (0.0024 to 0.0047)		0.3(0.0118)
No. 2		0.05 to 0.09 (0.0020 to 0.0035)		0.2(0.0079)
No. 3		0.04 to 0.08 (0.0016 to 0.0031)		0.2(0.0079)
Oil ring		0.03 to 0.07 (0.0012 to 0.0028)		0.2(0.0079)
Ring end gap		0.15 to 0.40 (0.0059 to 0.0157)		1.5(0.0590)
Connecting rod				
	Forged I-beam			
Bend and distortion		0.05 (0.0020) max.		
Big end thrust clearance		0.1 to 0.35 (0.0039 to 0.0138)		0.5(0.0197)
Connecting rod bearing				
	Kelmet metal with backing metal			
Oil clearance				0.15(0.0059)
Undersize		0.25 (0.0098), 0.50 (0.0197) 0.75 (0.0295)		
Crankshaft				
	Fully counterbalanced			
Bend		0.03 (0.0012) max.		
End play		0.06 to 0.3 (0.0024 to 0.0118)		0.5(0.0197)
Journal O.D.		52 (2.0472)	−0.15 (−0.0059)	−0.95 (−0.0374)
Pin O.D.		42 (1.6535)	−0.15 −0.0059)	−0.95 (−0.0374)
Undersize finish dimensions				
Journal				
	U.S. 0.25	51.735 to 51.750 (2.0368 to 2.0374)		
	U.S. 0.50	51.485 to 51.500 (2.0270 to 2.0276)		
	U.S. 0.75	51.235 to 51.250 (2,0171 to 2,0177)		
Crankshaft				
Pi n				
	U.S. 0.25	41.700 to 41.715 (1.6417 to 1.6423)		
	U.S. 0.50	41,450 to 41.465 (1.6319 to 1.6325)		
	U.S. 0.75	41.200 to 41.215 (1.6220 to 1.6226)		

Description	Type	Standard value	Repair limit	Service limit
Main bearing	Kelmet metal with backing metal (flanged metal for center bearing)			
Oil clearance				0.10(0.0039)
Undersize		0.25 (0.0098), 0.50 (0.0197) 0.75 (0.0295)		
Camshaft				
Driving system	Gear			
Clearance between journal and cylinder block hole or bushing (oil clearance)	Lead bronze alloy with backing metal			0.15(0.0059)
Cam lobe height (for intake and exhaust valves)		35.76 (1.4079)		−1.0(−0.0394)
Pump camshaft				
Driving system	Gear			
Bearing				
Front	Ball bearing			
Rear	Cylinder block			
Cam lobe height		44 (1.7323)		−1.0(−0.0394)
Tappet				
O.D.		23(0.9055)		
Clearance between tappet and cylinder block hole				0.15(0.0059)
Push rod				
Bend		0.3 (0.0118) max.		

Lubrication system

Description	Type	Standard value	Repair limit	Service limit
Engine oil				
Engine oil		Upper limit: 3.0 lit. (0.79 gal), Lower limit: 1.8 lit. (0.48 gal): 0.5 lit. (0.13 gal) in oil filter not included		
Oil specification				
API classification		Class CC or above		
Viscosity				
20°C(68°F) or higher		SAE 30 or 10W–30		
5 to 20°C(41 to 68°F)		SAE 20 or 10W–30		
5°C(41°F) or lower		SAE 10W–30		
Oil pump	Trochoid type			
Check valve opening pressure		4 kg/cm^2 (56.9 psi)		
Chearance between outer rotor and body		0.15 to 0.2 (0.0059 to 0.0079)		0.3(0.0118)
Clearance between outer rotor and inner rotor		0.05 to 0.12 (0.0020 to 0.0047)		0.25(0.0098)
Clearance between rotor and cover		0.03 to 0.07 (0.0012 to 0.0028)		0.2(0.0079)
Oil pressure switch				
Contact closing pressure		0.15 to 0.3 kg/cm^2 (2.1 to 4.3 psi)		

Fuel system

Description	Type	Standard value	Repair limit	Service limit
Fuel oil	ASTM grade	No.2-D diesel fuel (burn oils of low viscosities in the coldest season)		
Fuel filter	Filter paper type			
Fuel injection pump	ND-PFR3M			
Fuel injection				
At smoke set (SS)				
	K3A	1,300 rpm: 20.5 ± 1.00 mm^3 (0.00125 ± 0.00006 cu.in.)/st.		
	K3C	1,350 rpm: 22.5 ± 1.0 mm^3 (0.00137 ±0.00006 cu.in.)/st.		
AT start set (MS)				
	K3A	150 rpm: 30 ± 5mm^3 (0.00182 ± 0.00030 cu.in.)/st.		
	K3C	150 rpm: 35 ± 5 mm^3 (0.00214 ±0.00030 cu.in.)/st.		
Difference from reference cylinder		2 mm^3 (0.00012 cu.in.)/rev. cyl.max.		
Prestroke		2.2 0.1 (0.0866 0.0039)		
Nozzle	Throttle type ND-DN4SD24			
Injection starting pressure		120^{+10}_{-0} kg/cm ($1{,}706.97^{+142.25}_{-0}$ psi.)	$120^{\pm10}$ kg/cm^2 ($1{,}706.97 \pm 142.25$ psi.)	

Governor System

Description	Type	Standard value	Repair limit	Service limit
Governor	Centrifugal weight type			
Engine stopping solenoid	Electromagnetic pull-out type			
Rated voltage[20°C(68°F)]		12V		
Current [20°C(68°F)]		7A max.		
Stroke		13.5 ± 0.5 (0.53 ± 0.02)		

ENGINE

Cooling System

Description	Type	Standard value	Repair limit	Service limit
Cooling fan				
K3A, K3C	4-blade, irregular pitch suction type	φ290mm (φ11.42 in.)		
Fan belt	HM type	932 (36.69)		
Water pump	Centrifugal impeller type			
Thermostat	Wax pellet type			
Valve opening temperature		82 ± 1.5°C (180 ±2.7°F)		
Valve full-opening temperature		95°C (203°F)		
Valve lift		Approx. 8 (0.3)		
Thermoswitch				
Contact closing temperature		105 to 111° C(221 to 232° F)		

Electrical System

Description	Type	Standard value	Repair limit	Service limit
Starter (1.6 kW)	Electromagnetic push-in type M002T50381			
Output-voltage		1.6 kW–12V		
Rotating direction		Clockwise as viewed from pinion side		
No-load characteristics [20°C (68°F)]				
Terminal voltage		11.5V		
Current		100A or less		
Speed		3,000 rpm or more		
Brush length		17 (0.67)		11.5(0.45)
Spring pressure		1.5 kg (3.31 lbs.)		0.7 kg (1.54 lbs.)
Pinion gap		0.5 to 2.0(0.0197 to 0.0787)		
Thrust gap		0.5(0.0197) or less		
Alternator	AC type Model (AH2035M4)			
Output-voltage		12V – 35A		
Direction of rotation		Clockwise as viewed from pully side		
No load output Characteristics:[20°C (68°F)]				
Terminal voltage		14V		
Current (at cold)		8A		
Speed(Alternator)		1300 rpm or less		
Load characteristics: [20°C (68°F)]				
Terminal voltage		14V		
Current (at cold)		13A or more		
Speed (Alternator)		2500 rpm		

Description	Type	Standard value	Repair limit	Service limit
Regulator (180W, 420W)	Tirrill 2-element RQB 2220D4			
Regulating voltage		14.8 ± 0.3V		
Pilot lamp OFF voltage		4.2 to 5.2V		
Pilot lamp ON voltage		0.5 to 3.0V		
Glow plug	Sheathed type			
Voltage-current		10.5V–9.7		
Resistance value (s		0.16Ω		
(at cold)				
Glow plug indicator	Red-hot type			
Rated current		29A		
Terminal voltage (at 30A)		1.5 to 1.9V		

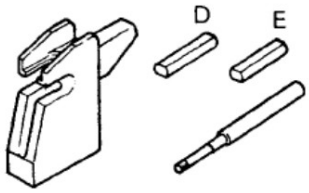
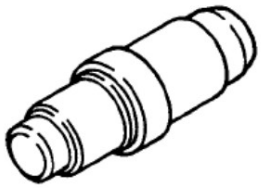
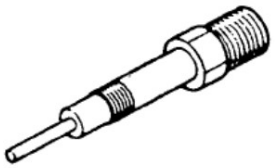
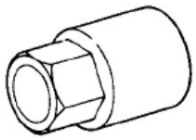
Tightening Torque Chart

Description	Tightening torque	
	kg-m	ft.lbs.
Cylinder head bolt M12 screws 8	11 to 12	79.5 to 86.8
M10 screws 3	7 to 8	50.6 to 57.8
Crank pulley nut	20 to 25	144.6 to 180.8
Main bearing cap bolt	5 to 5.5	36.2 to 39.8
Connecting rod cap nut	3.2 to 3.5	23.1 to 25.3
Flywheel mounting bolt (8T)	11.5 to 12.5	83.1 to 90.4
Oil pan drain plug	5 to 6	36.2 to 43.4
Oil filter	1.1 to 1.3	8.0 to 9.4
Fuel injection pump		
Delivery valve holder	4 to 5	28.9 to 36.2
Nozzle holder		
Holder mounting bolt	1.5 to 2	10.8 to 14.5
Holder body and retaining nut	6 to 8	43.4 to 57.8
Glow plug	1.5 to 2	10.8 to 14.5
General screws		
M6	0.7	5.1
M8	1.7	12.3
M10	3.5	25.3
M12	6.4	46.3

Sealant Chart

Parts requiring sealant application	Surfaces requiring sealant application (Where to mount sealant-coated parts)	Sealant
Taper screw 1/2"	Thread portion (Gear case)	HERMESEAL HI
Taper screw 1/4"	Thread portion (Cylinder block right side, pump cover)	HERMESEAL HI
Taper screw 1/8"	Thread portion (Rear of cylinder head)	HERMESEAL HI
Oil pressure switch	Thread portion (Cylinder block right side)	HERMESEAL HI
Thermoswitch	Thread portion (Cylinder head side)	HERMESEAL HI
Joint gauge unit	Thread portion (Cylinder head side)	HERMESEAL HI
Side seal	Outside periphery (Main bearing caps No.1 and No.4)	SUPER THREE-BOND 20
Bearing cap No. 1	Contact surface with cylinder block	SUPER THREE-BOND 20
Bearing cap No.4	Contact surface with cylinder block	SUPER THREE-BOND 20

Special Tools

Tool No.	Tool name	Sketch	Use
ST332301	Piston pin setting tools		Removal and installation of piston pin Guide D 92.5 mm(3.64 in.): for K3A Guide E 91 mm(3.58 in.): for K3C
ST332340	Camshaft bushing installer		Removal and installation of camshaft front bushing
ST332230	Compression gauge adaptor		Measurement of compression pressure
MD998054	Oil pressure switch socket wrench (26)		Removal and installation of oil pressure switch

REMARQUES

ISO

CHAPTER 3
CLUTCH SYSTEM

3

REMARQUES

TABLE OF CONTENTS

REMARQUES

DESCRIPTION

The clutch of the MITSUBISHI Tractors MT160/D, MT180/D and MT180H/HD is a dry single-plate clutch of diaphragm-spring type.

This clutch, instead of coil springs and release levers acting on the pressure plate in the conventional type clutch, uses the diaphragm spring, looking like a round disc, to perform the functions of coil springs and release levers.

The diaphragm, made of spring steel, has equally spaced slits extending radially inward. Because of these slits, what are called "tapering fingers" are formed: the tapering fingers correspond to the conventional release levers. In the normal engaged state of the clutch, the diaphragm loads upon the pressure plate to keep it pressed against flywheel. Clutch disengagement or releasing action is effected by pushing the tips of the fingers to lift the pressure plate away from the facings by the outer edges of the diaphragm. In other words, the diaphragm behaves as if it consists of a countless number of release levers.

The advantage of the diaphragm-spring clutch over the conventional coil spring clutch may be summarized as follows:

(1) A less force is required to release the clutch and, consequently, the clutch pedal "feels" light. This reduces the operator's fatigue.

(2) During the initial wear of clutch facings, the urging force of the diaphragm spring increases. It is when maximum urging force is attained that it begins to weaken in step with the progressive wear of facings. Thus, the diaphragm spring lasts longer than the coil springs.

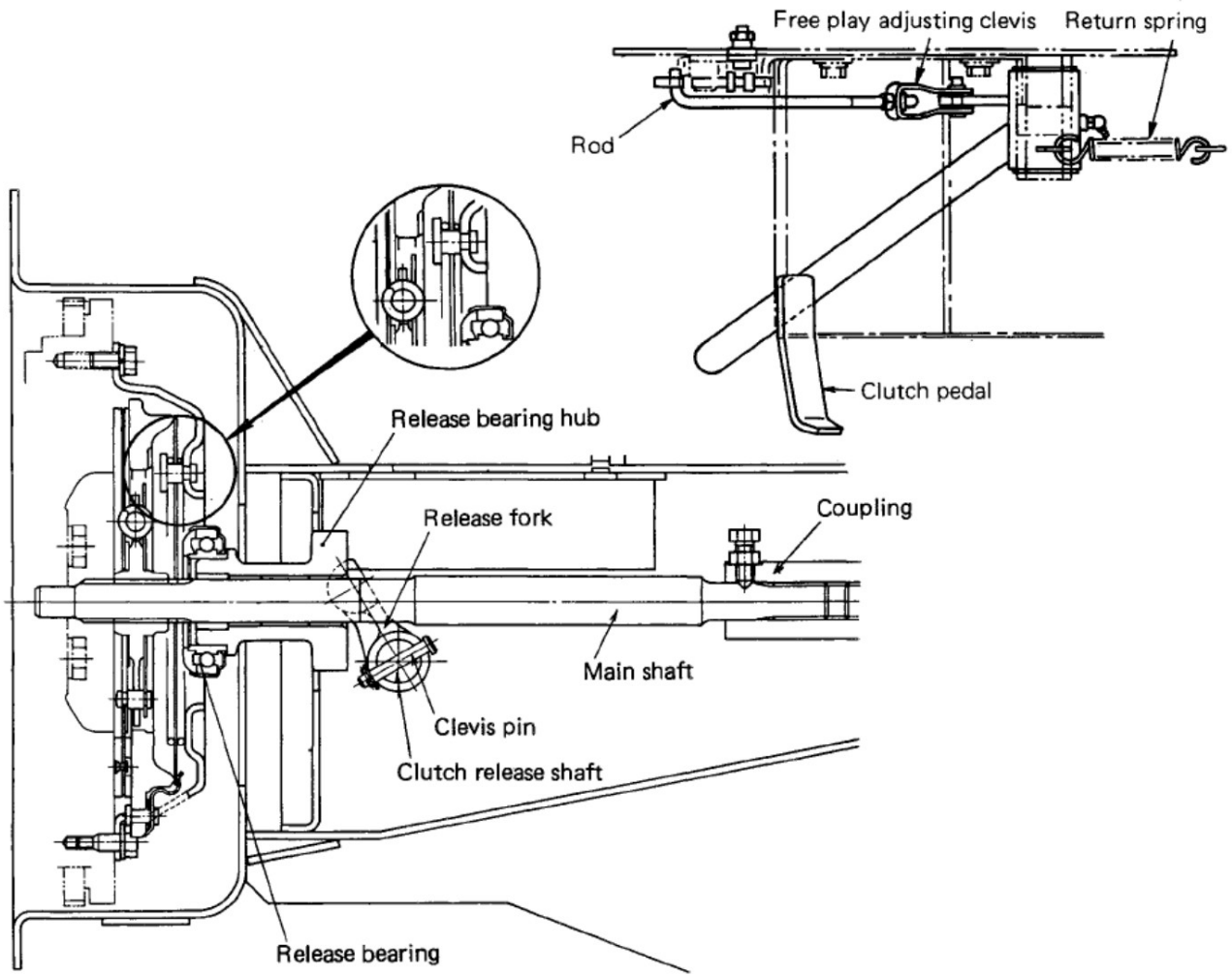
(3) In high speed condition, the diaphragm is less subject to centrifugal strain and assures more stable torque transmission.

(4) The clutch is built with a less number of parts, so that, because of its simpler construction, it is more trouble-free.

(5) Being a circular disc, the diaphragm spring exerts its spring force on the entire periphery of the pressure plate. This explains why the pressure plate as well as the diaphragm itself is not subject to distortion.

For the MT160/D, MT180/D and MT180H/HD tractors, the diaphragm-spring clutch is sized large enough in capacity for the maximum torque that it has to convey from engine to transmission, and is built sturdy to ensure its trouble-free service.

CONSTRUCTION



Clutch release mechanism

The release levers of a conventional coil spring clutch are not present in this release mechanism. Instead, a diaphragm spring whose center portion is radially slit to present a number of fingers is used. As far as the principles of clutch releasing action are concerned, there is no difference between this clutch release mechanism and the conventional one.

In the engaged condition of the clutch, there is a clearance between each "finger" tip and the release bearing. This clearance corresponds to the clearance between release levers and release bearing in the conventional clutch, and accounts for free play in the clutch pedal stroke.

Clutch cover assembly

This assembly consists of clutch cover, diaphragm spring, pressure plate and pivot rings.

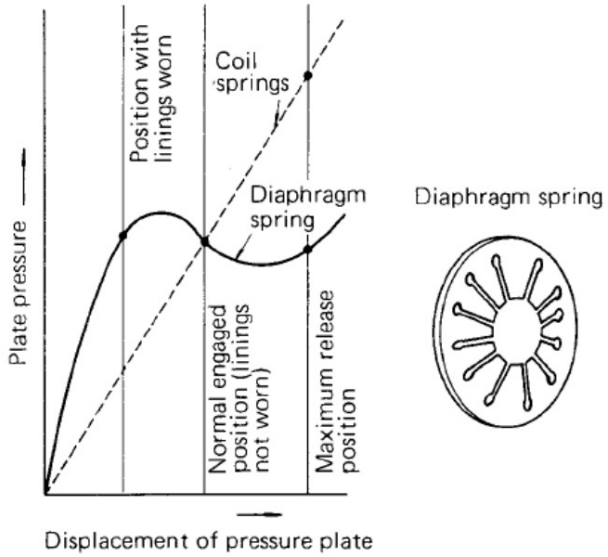
The cover has a plurality of rivet-like studs distributed in a circular pattern. These studs correspond to the adjusting bolts studded in the pressure plate of a conventional coil spring clutch. Each stud protrudes through the diaphragm spring, at the outer end of its slit, and two rings, called pivot rings, are fitted to the protruding portion of the stud, one ring on each side of the diaphragm. The term "pivot rings" is due to the fact that, in engaged state of the clutch, the diaphragm bears against those rings next to the cover; in released state of the clutch, the diaphragm bears against those rings on the other side.

The periphery of the diaphragm is held to the pressure plate by distributed clips: the diaphragm periphery pulls the pressure plate through these clips when the release bearing pushes the tips of "fingers," often referred to as tapering fingers because of their appearance.

A total of six bolts are used to secure the clutch cover to the flywheel. Of these bolts, two are reamer bolts.

Diaphragm spring

This spring is made by press-working a spring-steel plate and by heat-treating to provide a spring characteristic needed for its duty in the clutch. The obtained characteristic is illustrated in terms of plate pressure as a function of plate position. Note that the pressure available in initial condition is slightly below the maximum, which occurs when the plate displaces itself toward flywheel due to the initial wear of facings.

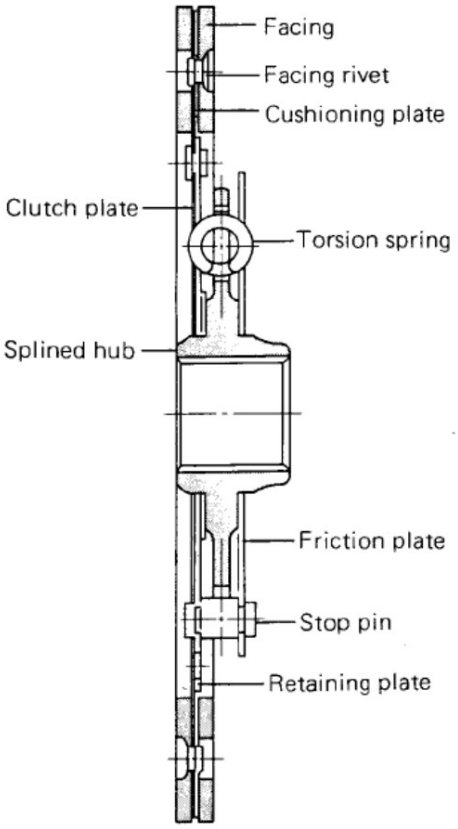


Clutch disc

The disc is splined to the transmission main shaft; it is normally pressed against flywheel by pressure plate (in the engaged condition of the clutch). It is constructed light in weight but sized large enough for the powerful torque the clutch has to conduct from the diesel engine. Lightweight or small inertia is what is needed for smooth gear change in the transmission.

Its facings are riveted to the cushioning plate, which is attached through six torsion springs and retaining plate to the clutch plate integral with the splined hub. For avoiding slippage in conveying torque, a special woven material containing wire is used for the facings. The torsion springs, through which drive flows from cushioning plate to clutch plate dampen torsional shocks and pulsations during a standing start and during operation on rough ground.

Radial grooves are provided in the face of the facing as a means of preventing abnormal temperature rise in the facing, thereby increasing its durability



OPERATING PRINCIPLES

The clutch is a means of providing a path of drive from engine flywheel to the input shaft (main shaft) of the transmission. In the clutch, its pressure plate is held through diaphragm spring by the clutch cover bolted to the flywheel, and the clutch disc, whose hub is splined to the main shaft, has its friction surfaces sandwiched between pressure plate and flywheel.

All of the above named parts revolve together with the flywheel, and drive the main shaft when the clutch is in engaged state, with the pressure plate being pressed by the diaphragm spring against flywheel. Under this condition, the path of drive flow is from flywheel to facings and to the main shaft through cushioning plate, clutch plate, stop pins, retaining plate, torsion springs and splined hub. Torsion springs are between clutch plate and retaining plate on the one side and the splined hub on the other, and serve as resilient members for conveying the torsional drive.

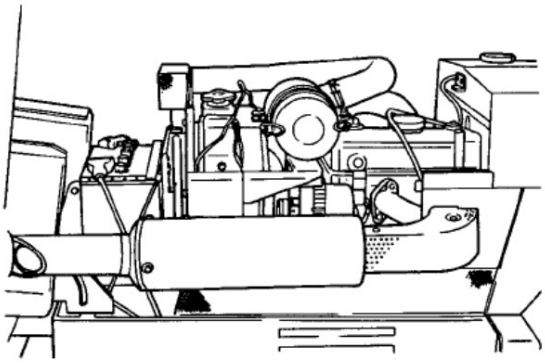
Depressing the clutch pedal to release the clutch, this pedal movement causes the release collar to displace itself toward flywheel, thereby pushing the release bearing against tapering fingers of the diaphragm spring. Now acting like a lever, the diaphragm spring deflects and, by its periphery, pulls the pressure plate away from flywheel side because this pheriphery is held to the plate by clips. With the pressure plate so pulled, the facings separate from the friction surface of flywheel, thereby interrupting the flow of drive.

REMOVAL

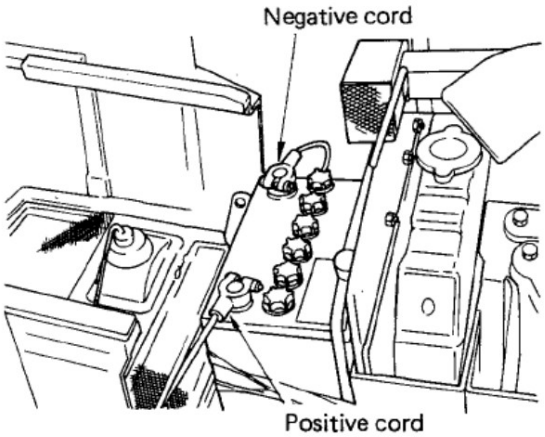
Removing the clutch

The clutch housing must be detached from the engine to permit clutch removal. If the engine need not be disassembled, the recommended practice is to take down the whole engine unit complete with front axle, chassis and radiator, and separate the clutch housing from the engine: this method results in time and labor saving.

(1) Unhook bonnet, and open bonnet. (To facilitate work, remove the bonnet.)



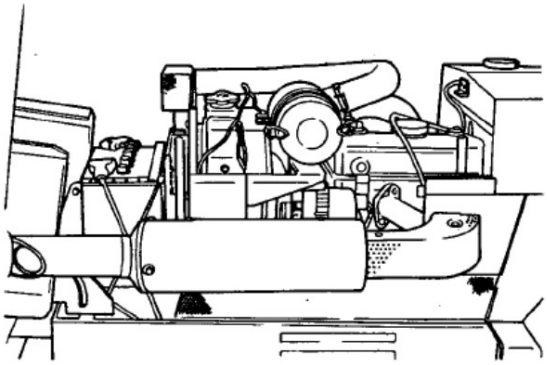
(2) Disconnect negative cord and positive cord from battery terminals in that order.



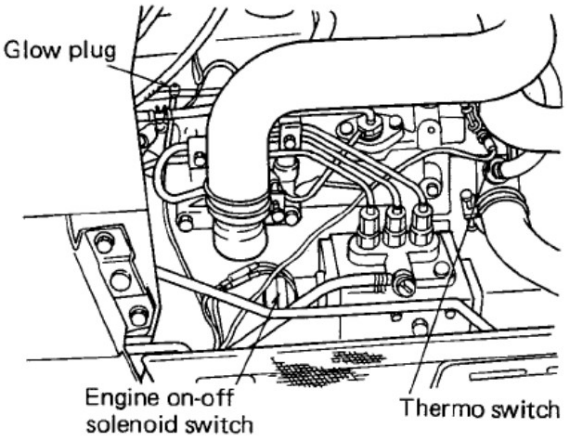
(3) Remove side covers, right and left.

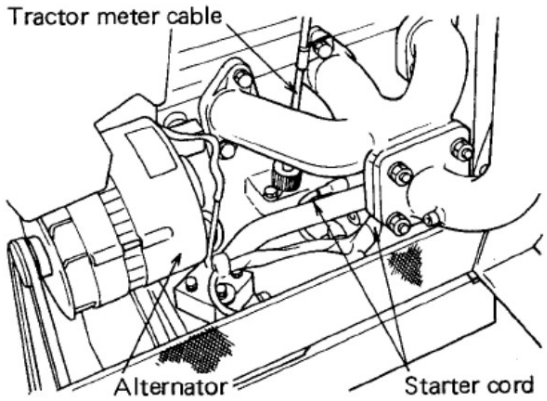
NOTE

Remove the muffler as necessary.



(4) Disconnect cords from respective terminals.



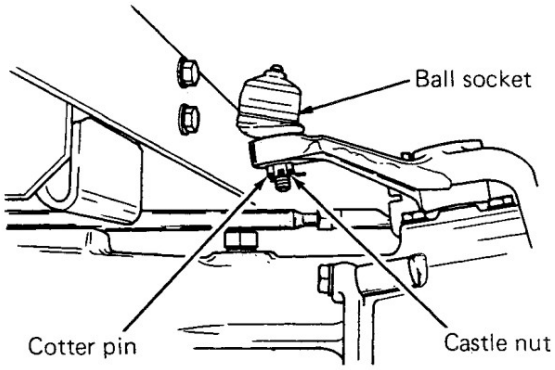


(5) Turn off fuel filter cock, and disconnect and remove piping between fuel filter and injection pump.

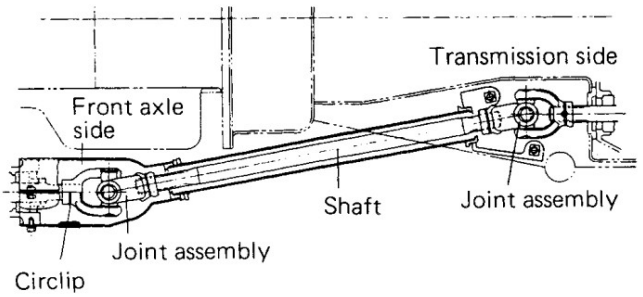
(6) Pull out snap pin on link pin by which governor lever is connected to engine control rod, and remove the control rod.

(7) Remove bolts securing hydraulic pipes to hydraulic pump. Pay attention to "O" rings. (Transmission need not be drained if the oil is up to but not above the prescribed level.) In case of MT180H/HD (with HST transmission), after removing the left-hand engine cover, remove the cooler outlet pipe by loosening the union nut of HST unit-side and the union bolt of oil cooler-side. And disconnect the return pipe from the cooler inlet pipe by loosening the union nut.

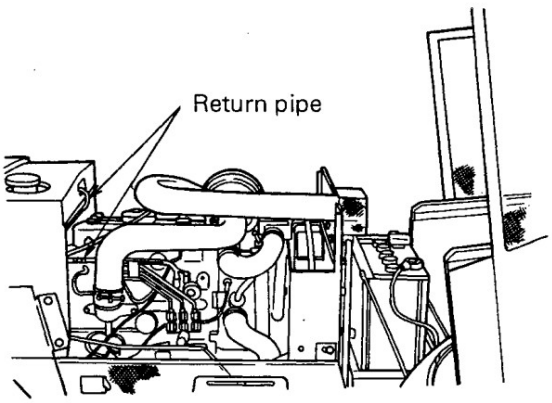
(8) Pull off cotter pin from the castle nut on the front end of drag link, loosen castle nut, and remove ball socket.



(9) <4-WHEEL DRIVE TRACTOR>
Remove joint covers, front and rear, take off circlips, draw out pins, and remove universal joints. (If the clutch housing is not to be removed, disconnect the front joint alone.)



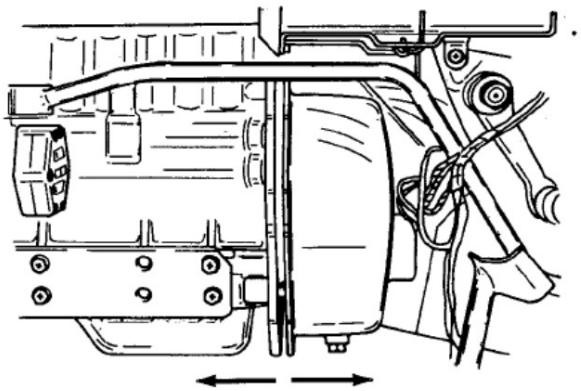
(10) Disconnect fuel return pipe from fuel tank. Loosen bolts on rear part of cylinder head cover.



(11) Place a jack right under the bottom of clutch housing. Hitch lifting slings to engine hanger bolts and, by operating a chain block, take up the weight of engine, being careful not to lift the front tires off the floor.

(12) Remove the foot cover, left and right, from clutch housing and both steps.

(13) Remove bolts securing clutch housing to engine, separate engine gently from clutch housing by inserting a screwdriver between clutch housing and engine rear plate. Pull out the engine toward the front in suspended state. (It is not necessary to remove bolts securing fuel tank bracket.)

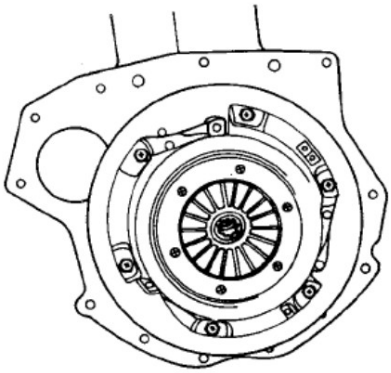


(13) Rest the engine, complete with chassis and front axle, on the work stand, keeping it in stable condition.

Removing the clutch

After removing the engine from the clutch housing, loosen the six bolts securing the main clutch to the flywheel, and remove the pressure plate assembly and clutch disc from the flywheel. The bolts must be loosened evenly.

When loosening the bolts, care should be taken so that no extremely heavy load is imposed on a bolt.

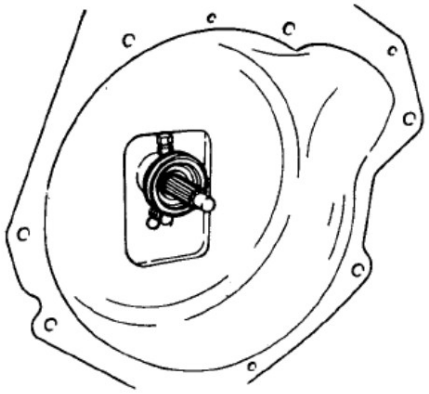


NOTE

The pressure plate assembly is not designed to be disassembled. If the pressure plate is worn more than the specified limit, the entire assembly must be replaced.

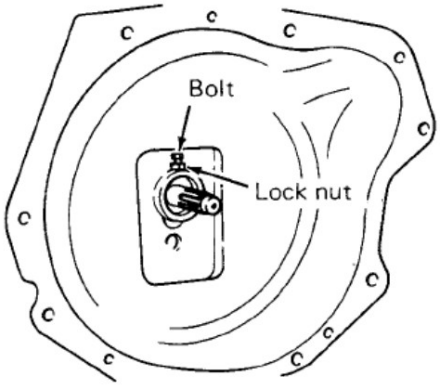
Removing the release bearing

Remove the release bearing together with the release bearing hub.



NOTE

Except when either the release bearing or the clutch hub is defective, don't attempt to disassemble them.



DISASSEMBLY

Disassembling the clutch release shaft

Two steps must be taken to permit removal of clutch release shaft. First step is removal of engine and second, removal of clutch housing from transmission case. Remove the clutch housing as follows:

If the clutch housing is to be replaced with a new one, be sure to remove brake pedals, brake cross shaft, clutch pedal and steering gearbox from the clutch housing immediately after removing the engine.

(1) The engine having been removed, place a jack under transmission case.

(2) Remove two steps, right and left.

(3) Remove clamp on the hydraulic pipe to the left of clutch housing.

(4) Disconnect brake rods from brake cams.

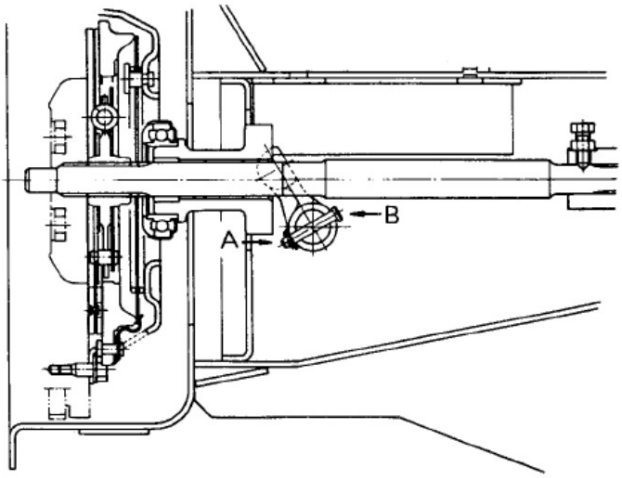
(5) Check to be sure that there is nothing that will interfere with removal of clutch housing from transmission case. Remove bolts securing the housing to transmission case, and remove the former from the latter carefully.

NOTE

Clutch housing can be removed with the steering gearbox installed thereto. This housing is heavy and must be handled carefully.

(6) Remove clutch pedal rod.

(7) Pull of the cotter pin from "A" side, and remove the clevis pin from "B" side.



(8) Remove release fork while drawing clutch release shaft.

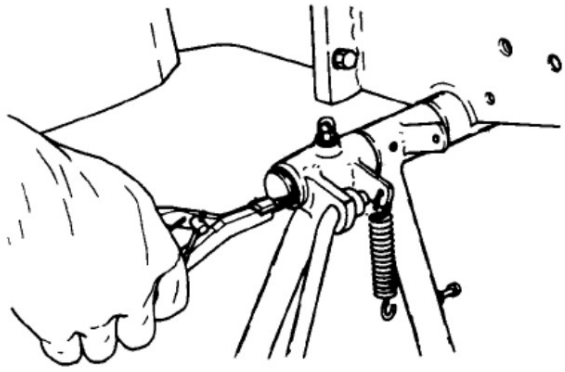
Disassembling the clutch pedal

The clutch pedal can be replaced, there being no need to remove clutch housing, transmission case and engine. The procedure of replacement is as follows:

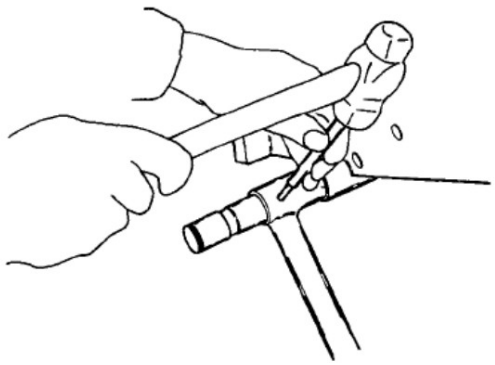
(1) Remove two steps, right and left.

(2) Pull off cotter pin from the pin connecting brake rod to brake cam arm, draw out the pin and remove brake rod.

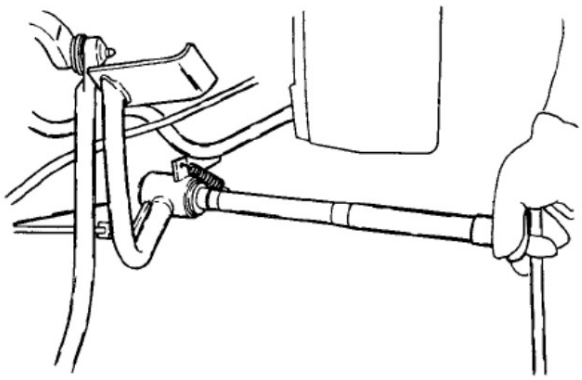
(3) Remove circlip on the right-hand end of brake cross shaft, and remove brake pedal on the right.



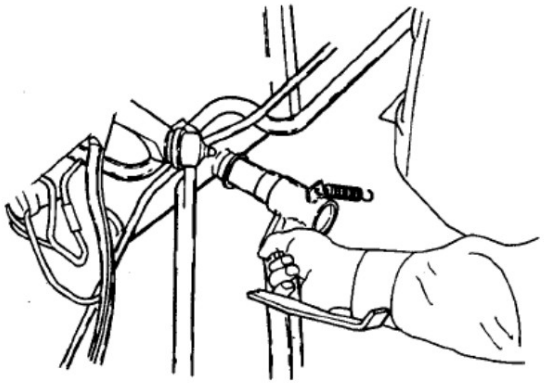
(4) Draw out spring pin on left brake pedal, and remove the pedal.



(5) Be sure that brake rod on the left is off, and remove brake cross shaft by pulling it toward the left.



(6) After removing clutch pedal rod, remove circlip and take off clutch pedal.



INSPECTION AND MAINTENANCE

Inspection	Maintenance	Service limit
Contact of clutch disc with matching parts, seizure, and cracks	Smooth out if within the service limit. If exceed service limit, replace.	If the distance between rivet head and facing is 0.3 mm (0.012 in.) or less, replace.
Oily or greasy clutch disc	Eliminate the cause. If oil or grease is little, wipe it off with cloth damped with gasoline and allow it to dry.	If oil or grease is too much, replace.
Hardened surface of clutch disc	Smooth out hardened surface.	If the distance between rivet top and facing is 0.3 mm (0.012 in.) or less, replace.
Wear on clutch disc	Measure gap between rivet top and facing.	
Deflection of clutch disc	Rotate the clutch disc, and measure deflection at its outer edge.	If deflects 1 mm (0.03 in.) or more, replace.
Loose rivet		Replace, even if facing thickness is within the allowable limit.
Scratches or burning on pressure plate	Smooth out. Readjust clutch pedal free play properly.	25 ~ 30 mm (1 ~ 1-3/16 in.)
Flatness of pressure plate	If impossible to correct by smoothing out the surface, replace.	
Release bearing	Washing is not allowed.	Rotate it by hand. If abnormal noise is heard, or it turns irregularly, replace.

REASSEMBLY

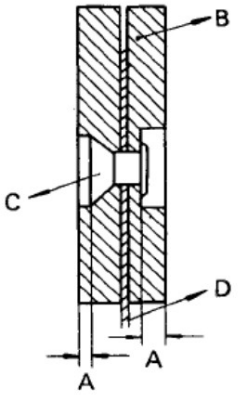
Reassembling the clutch

NOTE

a) Thoroughly wipe off the oil or grease on the flywheel or on the contact surface of the pressure plate assembly.

b) If the facings are worn out excessively so that the recession of the rivet heads from the facing is less than 0.3 mm (0.012 in.), discard the disc and install a new one.

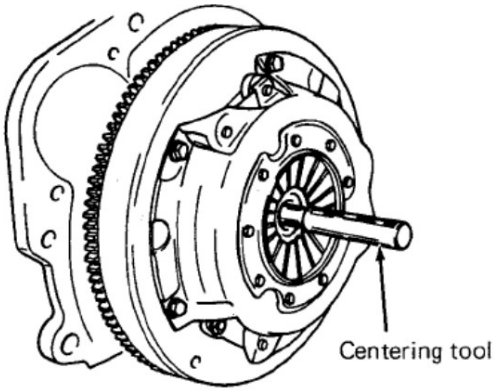
c) When a new disc is to be installed, make sure that the recession is 1.2 ~ 2.0 mm (0.05 ~ 0.08 in.).

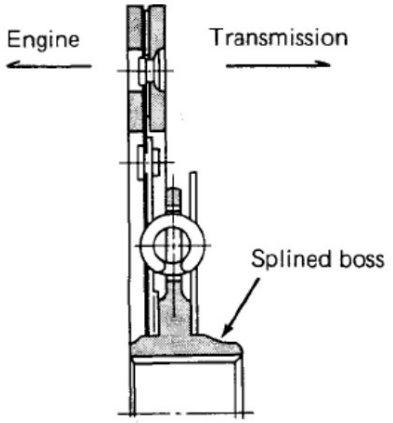


A-Service limit: 0.3 mm (0.012 in.)
(Top of rivet head to facing)
New disc: 1.2 ~ 2.0 mm (0.05 ~ 0.08 in.)
B-Clutch lining
C-Rivet
D-Cushion plate

(1) Apply a thin coat of grease to the flywheel pilot bearing.

(2) Place the clutch disc with the longer clutch disc splined boss on the transmission side, and center the clutch disc using the clutch disc centering tool, and install the pressure plate to the flywheel.





(3) Install the clutch cover to the flywheel. Insert the two reamer bolts into correct positions and tighten the six bolts evenly.

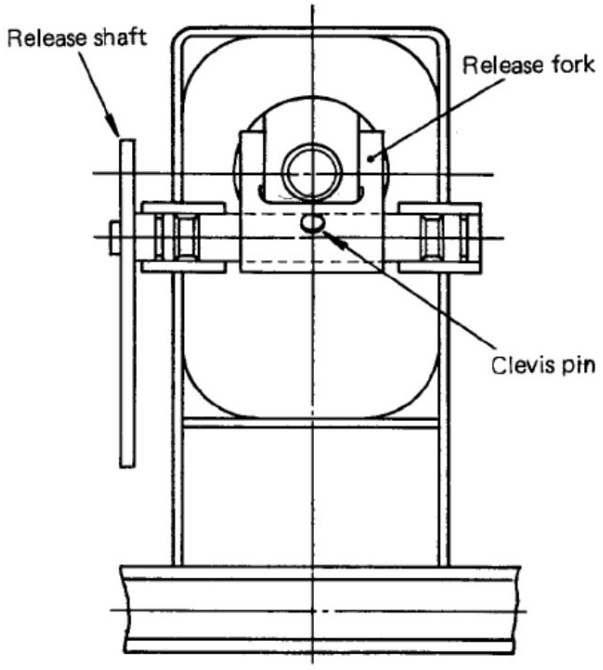
Tightening torque	2.5 ~ 3.0 kg-m (18 ~ 22 ft-lb)

Reassembling the release bearing

1) When reinstalling the release bearing to the main shaft, apply grease to the bushings and inside of release bearing hub.

2) Install the release bearing to the main shaft and make sure that the release bearing hub is directed to the release fork.

Reassembling the clutch shifter



(1) Apply grease to the O-rings on the release shaft.

(2) Pack the machined area of release shaft with grease.

(3) In stall the release shaft and release fork to the clutch housing carefully.

(4) Insert the clevis pin into the release fork, and lock it with the cotter pin.

Reassembling the clutch housing

(1) Check to be sure that coupling set bolts are properly tightened on both sides, that is, drive shaft side and main shaft side, and are securely locked.

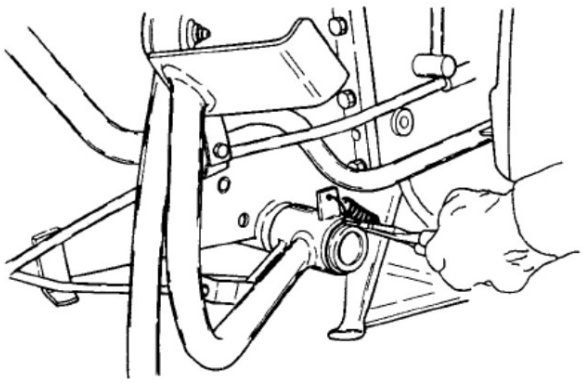
(2) Place 4-wheel drive shifter shaft in neutral position.

(3) Apply sealer to the clutch housing mounting face of transmission case, bolt the housing to the case: and tighten the bolts to this torque value:

Tightening torque	5.0 ~ 6.0 kg-m (36 ~ 43 ft-lb)

Reassembling the clutch pedal

(1) Liberally grease clutch pedal shaft, insert the shaft into the pedal, and retain it in place by installing circlips.



(2) Install clutch pedal rod.

(3) After installing brake cross shaft, install pedal steps, and attach clutch pedal spring.

NOTE

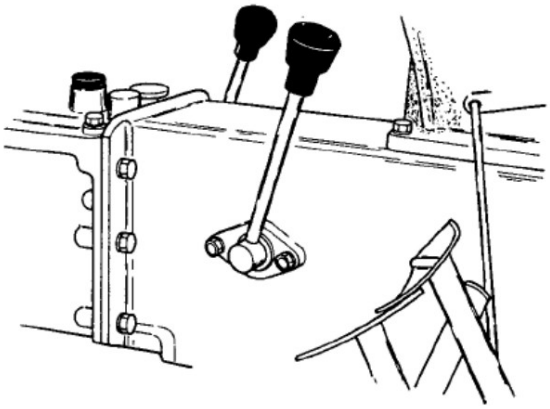
a) Install brake cross shaft and brake pedals steps by using reverse of removal procedure.

b) If steering gear box, fuel tank bracket, fuel tank, battery, instrument panel, etc., were removed, install them by using reverse of removal procedure.

Reassembling the 4-wheel drive shift lever
(Only for MT160/D and MT180/D)

It is not necessary to remove the 4-wheel drive shift lever for clutch removal. This lever, however, should be removed when the clutch housing is reassembled.

(1) Coat shifter bracket with sealer, and install the bracket with the shifter shaft pin admitted into the groove provided in shifter. Tighten bracket mounting bolts to this torque value:



Tightening torque	2.5 ~ 3.0 kg-m (18 ~ 22 ft-lb)

(2) Check to be sure that 4-wheel drive gear can be shifted properly.

ADJUSTMENT

Adjusting the clutch pedal

Clutch pedal free play is very important and it must be always maintained to be correct. If there is no free play, the clutch disc will wear quickly, while too much free play will cause clutch to drag even if the pedal is fully depressed, resulting in hard gear shift.

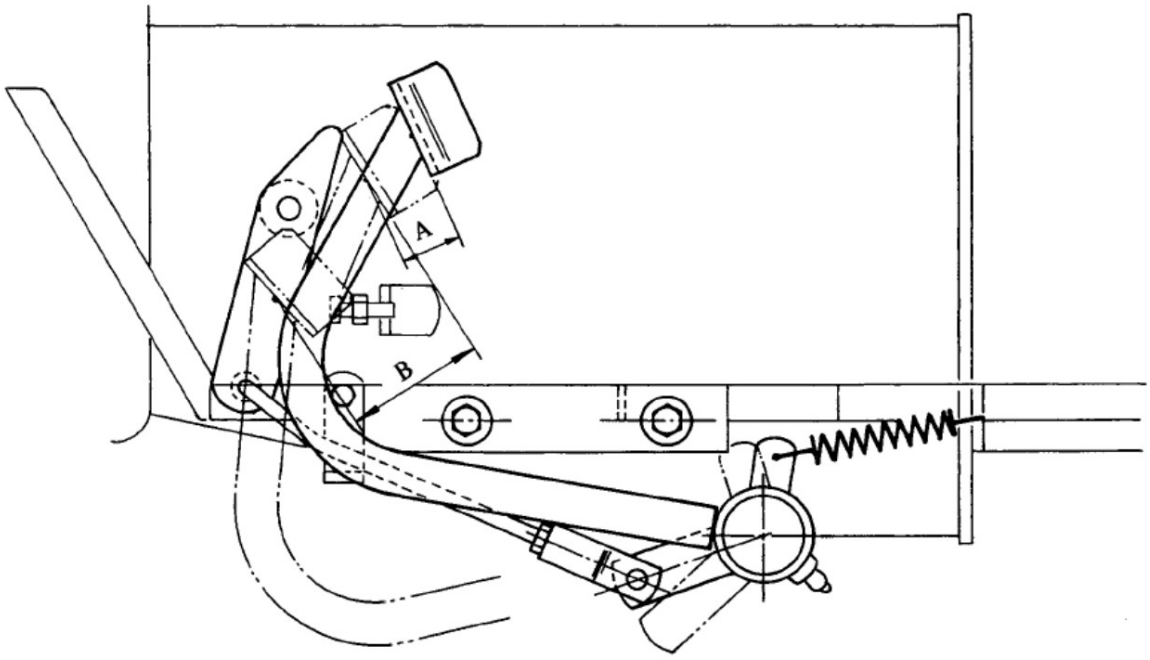
- **Free play**

The free play (A) in the clutch pedal should be between 20 and 30 mm (0.79 and 1.18 in.) and effective stroke (B) is 60~ 75 mm (2.36 ~ 2.95 in.).

After loosening the clevis lock nut, pull the split pin out of the setting pin for the clutch pedal and joint, remove the pin and adjust the clutch pedal free play to be 20~ 30mm (0.79 ~ 1.18 in.) by turning the joint. After proper adjustment, set the cotter pin and lock the clevis securely with lock nut.

NOTE

This adjustment is important for maintaining the clearance between the release lever and the release bearing to obtain a smooth gear shift and transfer all the driving power to the transmission.



ENGINE INSTALLATION

Mounting the engine

Assuming that the engine is ready for mounting, coat the mating face of clutch housing with sealer, and give a thin coat of grease to the main shaft splines. Bring in the engine in suspended state, level and steady it with clutch disc boss aimed squarely to the main shaft, and move the engine toward the clutch housing while admitting the splined end of main shaft smoothly into the boss. Make up the joint between clutch housing and engine by tightening the bolts to this torque value:

Tightening torque	8.5 ~ 9.5 kg-m (61 ~ 69 ft-lb)	for M12
	2.5 ~ 3.0 kg-m (18 ~ 22 ft-lb)	for M8

Those parts removed for allowing the engine to be taken down must be restored to their positions in the sequential order that is reverse of removing sequence: they are 4-wheel drive universal joints and others. Installing a part the other way around, leaving out washers needed for bolts and similar mistakes could occur unless usual servicing precautions are exercised: this holds particularly true for wiring.

TROUBLESHOOTING

Clutch slippage

Slipping of clutch while it is engaged is very hard on the clutch facings. The relative movement between the clutch disc, pressure plate and flywheel causes heat to develop as well as loss of power developed by the engine. It also increases fuel consumption.

Possible cause	Remedy
No pedal free play	Adjust to 20 ~ 30 mm (0.79 ~ 1.18 in.)
Oil or grease getting on facings	After correcting its causes, replace clutch disc.
Worn clutch disc	If disc is worn too badly so that rivet head recession from top face of facings is less than 0.3 mm (0.01 in.), replace clutch disc.
Too little a pedal play due to wear on facings	Discard old disc and install a new one when rivet head recession is less than 0.3 mm (0.01 in.) Adjust pedal free play to 20~30mm (0.79 ~ 1.18 in.)
Excessive wobbling of disc	Replace if wobbling exceeds 1 mm (0.03 in.).
Corroded disc splines due to neglected lubrication	Remove rust and coat it with grease.

Shuddering when starting

Possible cause	Remedy
Hardened disc surface	Grind it with sandpaper or replace clutch disc.
Excessive pulsations of clutch disc	Replace clutch disc.
Rust in disc spline groove	Correct and apply grease.
Weakened or damaged torsion springs	Replace clutch disc

Overheating

Possible cause	Remedy
No pedal free play	Adjust to 20 ~ 30 mm (0.79~ 1.18in.).
Oil or grease getting on facings	After correcting its causes, replace clutch disc.
Worn clutch disc	If disc is worn too badly so that rivet head recession from top face of facings is less than 0.3 mm (0.01 in.), replace clutch disc.
Too little a pedal play due to wear on facings	Discard old disc and install a new one when rivet head recession is less than 0.3 mm (0.01 in.). Adjust pedal free play to 20~30mm (0.79 ~ 1.18 in.).

Possible cause	Remedy
Excessive wobbling of disc	Replace if wobbling exceeds 1 mm (0.03 in.).
Corroded disc splines due to neglected lubrication	Remove rust and coat it with grease.
Burnt release bearing	Replace bearing.
Too little play in release bearing	Adjust.

SPECIFICATIONS

Type	Dry single disc plate diaphragm spring type
Facing material	Wire-reinforced special woven fabric
Dimension of clutch disc (OD X ID X thickness)	184 X 127 X 7.8 mm (7.2 X 5.0 X 0.3 in.)
Static transmission torque	11.0 kg-m (79.7 ft-lb)
Release bearing	Non-lubrication type
Operation	Foot operating system
Clutch disc depressing pressure	195 ± 20 kg (430 ± 44 lb)
Diaphragm spring max. operating length	7 mm (0.28 in.) max.
Tapering finger height (when new)	31.0 ± 1 mm (1.22 ± 0.04 in.)
Clutch pedal free play	20 ~ 30 mm (0.79~ 1.18 in.).

REMARQUES

CHAPTER 4

FRONT AXLE AND STEERING LINKAGE SYSTEM

REMARQUES

TABLE OF CONTENTS

REMARQUES

4-WHEEL DRIVE

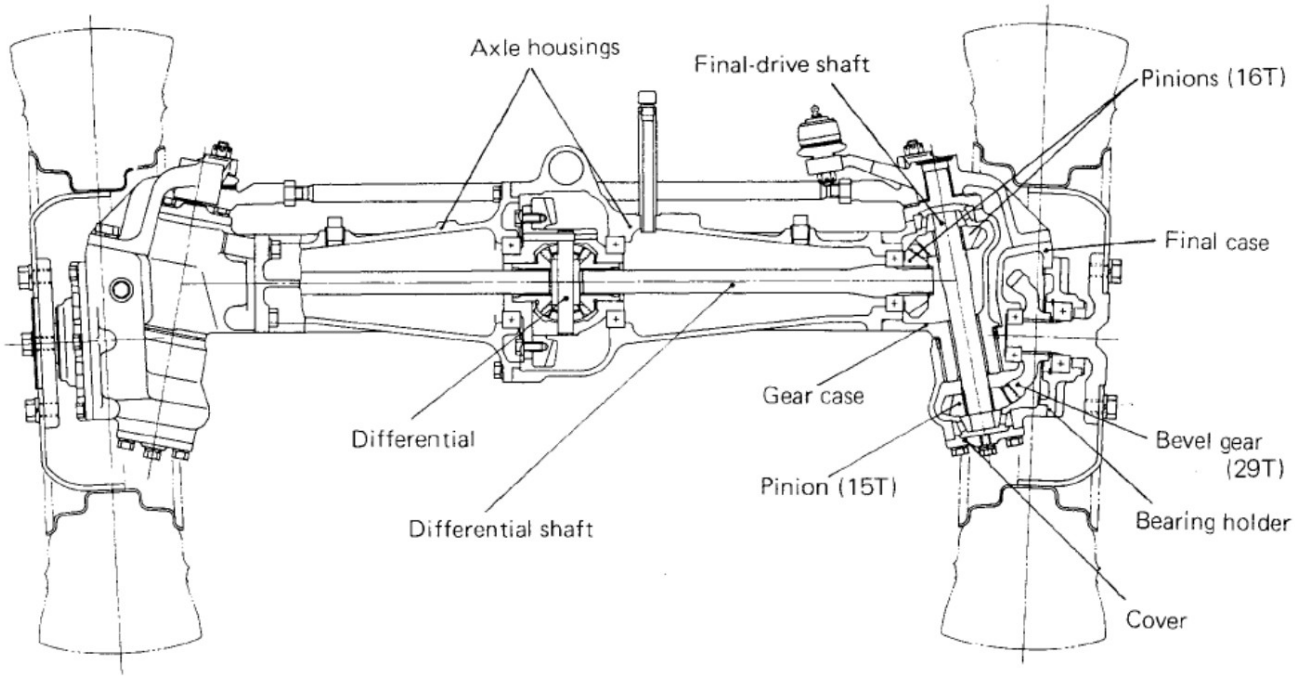
DESCRIPTION

A 4-WD tractor is capable of easily operating and moving around in places such as marshy land, slippery fields, hilly areas, etc., where an ordinary 2-WD tractor would have difficulty. In the case of a 4-WD tractor, the force applied to the treads of the wheels is more widely distributed than with a 2-WD tractor since all the tires of the tractor work as traction wheels. Consequently the traction of the tractor is considerably increased due to less slippage. The efficiency of the tractor, especially during traction operations, will be fairly improved since the capacity of the engine can be effectively converted into traction. Also, the climbing capacity of its front axle is designed to be heavier than that of a 2-WD tractor; therefore, the tractor is capable of stably operating in sloping arears.

CONSTRUCTION

The mid-PTO is located at the front end of the transmission case. The front propeller shaft and universal joints convey power from the mid-PTO to the front axle, which, like the rear axle, consists of a dead axle (axle housings) and a live axle (differential shafts, right and left).

In the axle housing are provided a bevel gear-and-pinion assembly and a differential gearing. Each differential shaft drives the front wheel, not directly but through bevel pinions and a final-drive shaft looking like a kingpin. These pinions and shaft are housed in what is termed "gear case." A knuckle arm is bolted to the final case.



Front axle and wheels

Mid-PTO

The mid-PTO is actually a clutch mechanism, by which the mid-PTO shaft (connected to a universal joint outside of the mid-PTO case) is coupled to and uncoupled from the transmission countershaft, depending on the position of its control lever.

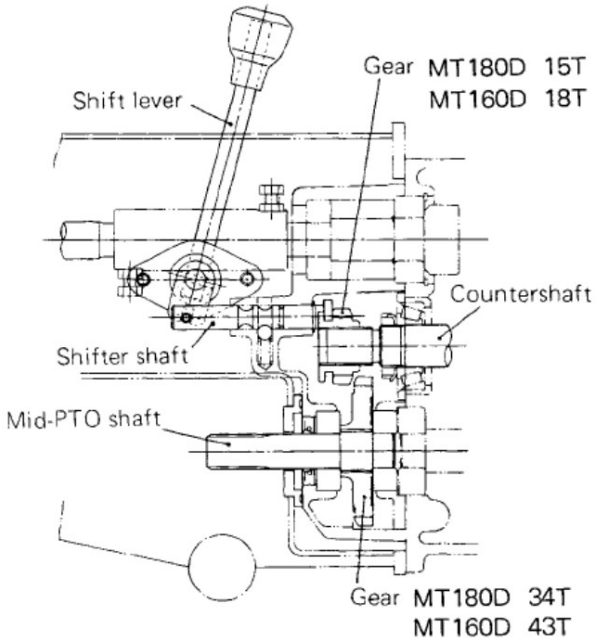
I) In case of MT160D and MT180D

Referring to the mid-PTO cross section, gear 15T(MT180D) or 18T(MT160D) is splined to the forward end of counter-shift and is capable of sliding axially. When pushed in by the control (shift) lever through the shifter shaft, this gear meshes into gear 34T(MT180D) or 43T(MT160D) rigidly mounted on the mid-PTO shaft, thereby coupling the two shafts.

II) In case of MT180HD

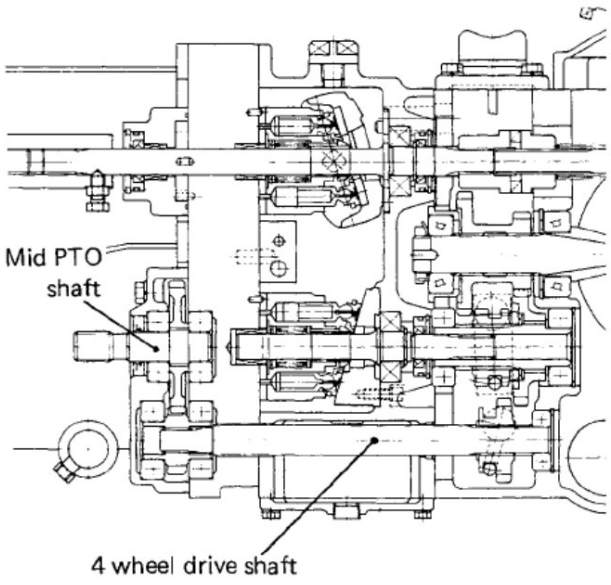
Gear 20T is splined to the end of 4-wheel drive shaft which is connected with mid PTO shaft by means of gears, and is capable of silding axially. When pushed in by the control (shift) lever, this gear meshes into gear 29T rigidly mounted on the mid-PTO shaft, thereby coupling the two shafts.

I) In case of MT160D and MT180D



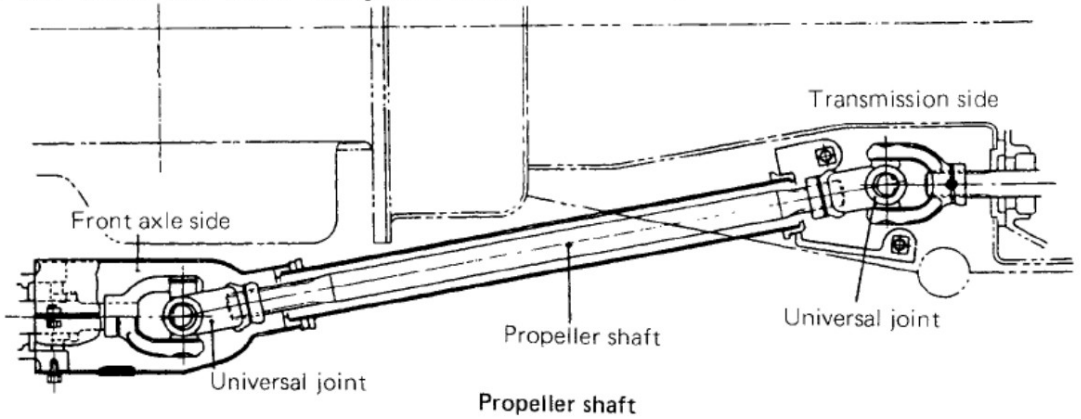
Mid-PTO

II) In case of MT180HD



Propeller shaft

A yoke-type universal joint is fitted to each end of this shaft. The shaft and joints rotate smoothly and transmit power to the front axle. The shaft and each universal joint are enclosed to keep out foreign matters.



Propeller shaft

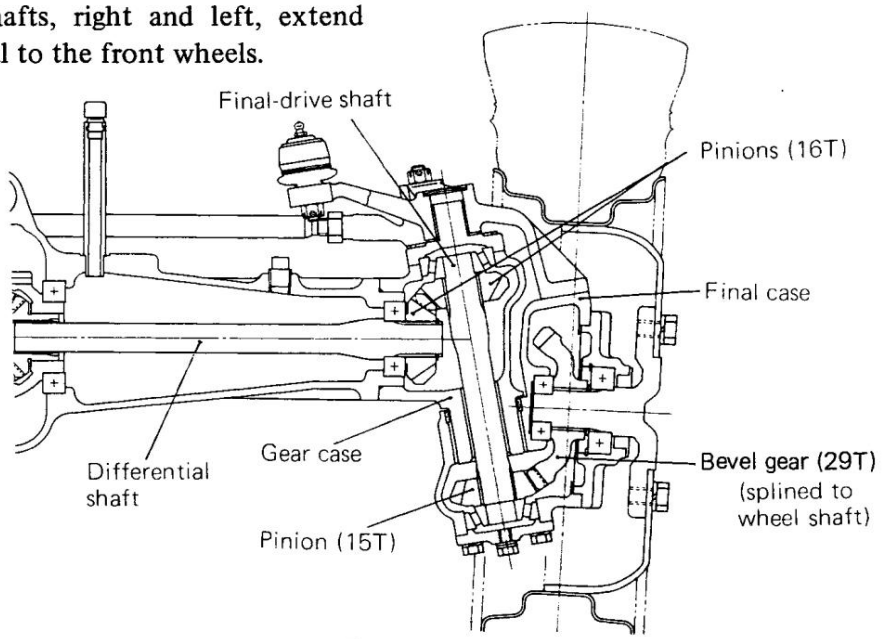
Front axle

The dead axle (housings) takes up ground shocks and supports the weight while the live axle (differential shafts) merely transmits drive to front wheels. All running parts are hermetically enclosed.

At the middle section of the front axle, drive flows in from propeller shaft to the spiral bevel pinion, ring gear and the differential. The differential shafts, right and left, extend from the differential to the front wheels.

At the end of the axle housing on each side, the gear case is rigidly attached to the housing. On this gear case, the final case (carrying the final reduction gearing and the wheel) is rotatably mounted.

Drive to the front wheel is from differential shaft to bevel gear splined to the wheel shaft, through the final-drive shaft (having two bevel pinions) held in the gear case.



Front axle

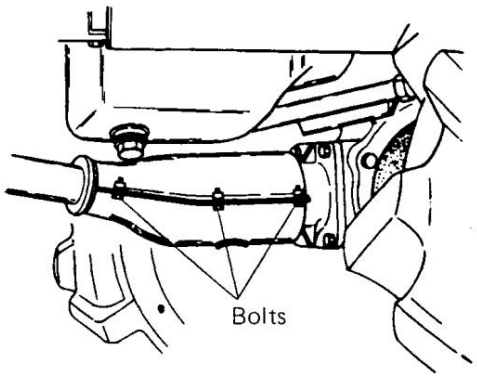
DISASSEMBLY

A good program of diagnosing is the key to economy for the customer. Ask the operator; operate the machine if possible; check the machine; picture the possible causes; and examine them until you can pin-point the trouble before attempting to disassemble the front axle.

Removing the universal joints

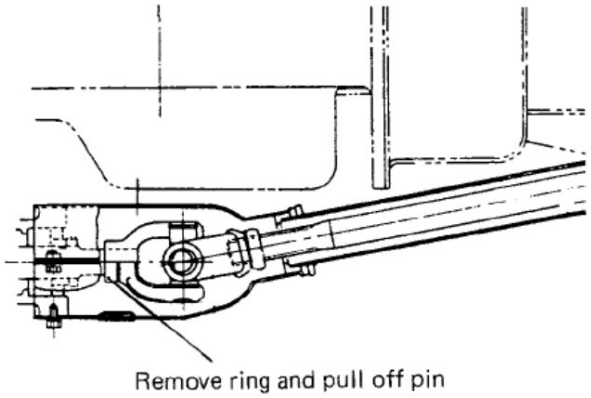
To disconnect the propeller shaft from the front axle, remove the front universal joint, as follows:

(1) Remove bolts securing the upper and lower covers, and take down these covers to expose the universal joint.



(2) At the front end, remove the snap rings and pull off pin from yoke. Push the joint backward, making its yoke slide off the pinion shaft extending out from the axle housing, and disconnect the joint from the shaft. Push the joint forward and

remove the joint from the propeller shaft. (The rear joint can be similarly removed.)



NOTE

When removing the snap ring, be careful not to spread it out any more than is necessary to make it come off.

Disassembling the yokes

Do not disassemble the yokes without valid reason. If it is necessary to disassemble them, remove circlips and carefully push the spider out of the yokes with a press.

To reassemble the yokes, use reverse of the disassembly procedure.

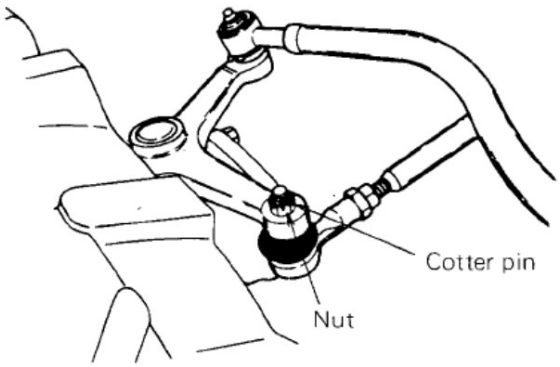
Disassembling the front axle

The two gear cases, right and left, are rigidly secured to the axle housing. These cases can be removed from the housing without requiring the whole front axle to be taken down.

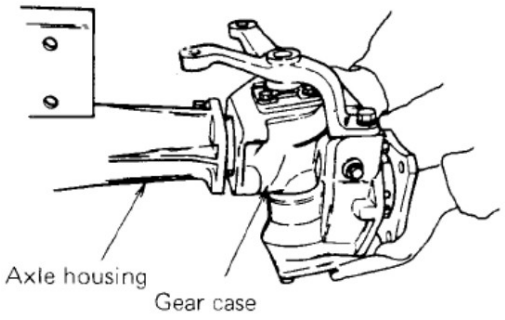
The first step of front axle disassembly is to disconnect the propeller shaft in the manner already explained. After this step, proceed as follows:

(1) Remove front tires in the usual manner. To raise the front end, push up the clutch housing with a jack.

(2) On each side, remove tie rod and drag link by undoing respective ball socket joints. Each joint breaks apart when its cotter pin is pulled off lock nut and the nut is then loosened and removed.



(3) Remove bolts securing the gear case to the axle housing, and pull the gear case complete with the final case.

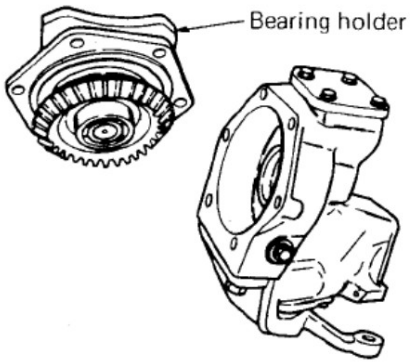


NOTE

Of the bolts securing the gear case, two on the bottom side are reamer bolts.

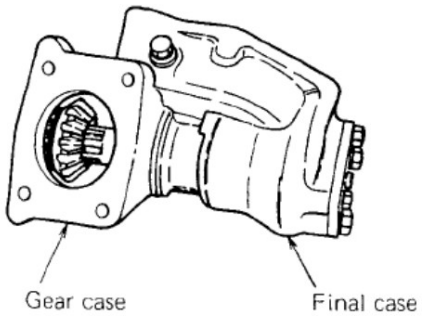
Disassembling the final case

(1) Remove bearing holder from the case. The holder will come out together with the wheel shaft.



(2) Pull knuckle arm or tie rod arm off each final case. Be sure to recover the thrust liner.

(3) Remove the bolts securing the holder to gear case, and take off the holder to expose the top end of final-drive shaft. Drive lightly on the exposed shaft end so that the final case will slide off the gear case.



(4) Remove the bottom cover from final case to expose the botton end of the shaft. Draw the shaft off and take out the bevel pinion (15T).

Disassembling the wheel shaft

(1) Using the gear puller, draw the bevel gear and ball bearing off the shaft.

(2) Remove the shaft from bearing holder by lightly tapping on the shaft.

(3) Remove circlip from the holder, and remove the bearing outer race out together with oil seal.

Disassembling the axle housings

The two axle housings connected together are heavy for handling. Exercise caution to avoid personal injury.

(1) Place jacks under the axle to take up the weight of the two housings. Loosen center pin securing bolts, thus severing the front axle from chassis, and transfer the whole axle to the work bench.

NOTE

Be sure to recover the shim between center pin and chassis.

(2) Remove bolts securing the pinion case to the axle housing (A), take off the case.

(3) Separate axle housing (B) by removing bolts.

(4) Pull out differential shaft from housing (B).

(5) Remove differential gear assembly from axle housing (A).

(6) Pull out differential shaft from housing (A).

Disassembling the pinion case

(1) Straighten tap washer and remove sleeve nut after removing pinion case from axle housing (A).

(2) Force pinion shaft out of the case by tapping lightly on shaft end.

(3) Remove oil seal and bearings, as necessary.

Disassembling the differential

This differential is identical to the one located in the transmission. The procedures of disassembly and reassembly set forth for that differential apply to this differential.

Disassembling the mid-PTO

Since this PTO is inside the clutch housing, its disassembly involves separation of clutch housing from transmission case. The procedure is outlined in the section for transmission.

INSPECTION

Clean the disassembled parts by washing. Inspect gears and pinions to be sure their teeth are in good condition. Check to be sure that each bearing is capable of smooth rotation. Examine each enclosure part (housing, case and the like) for evidence of cracking and repair or replace cracked parts, if any.

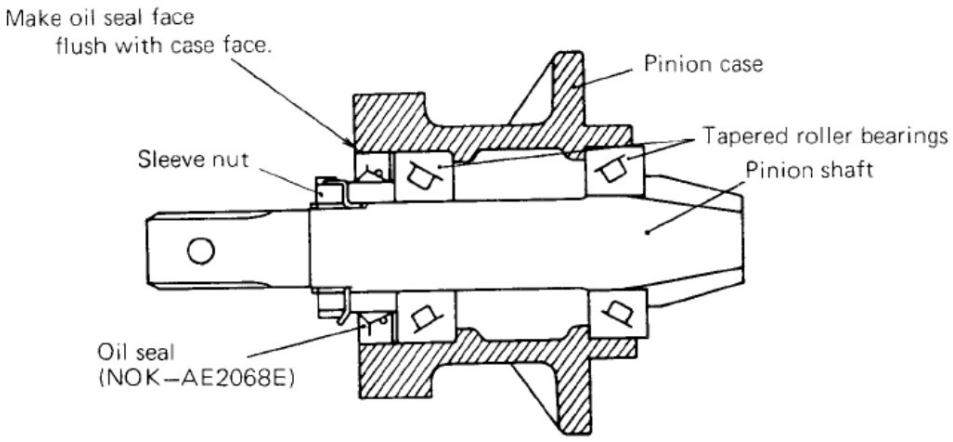
REASSEMBLY

Before commencing reassembly, be sure that necessary replacements and repair jobs have all been effected and that each part meets the dimensional and other specifications, if any. Fitting or installing rotating or sliding parts in dry condition is a bad practice: be sure to oil or grease their surfaces. Greasing is particularly needed for oil seals and "O" rings being fitted.

Reassembling the pinion shaft

(1) Fit the two outer races of tapered roller bearings into the pinion case, positioning each race as shown.

(2) Fit the inner race of tapered roller beairng to gear side of pinion shaft, pushing it all the way against the pinion shoulder.



(3) Insert pinion shaft into the case. Fit the other inner race to the shaft, and install oil seal bushing. Pinion shaft is now securely positioned inside the case.

(4) Grease the oil seal, and force it into between case and bushing, making its outer end face flush with the mating face of pinion case.

(5) Put on tab washer and run down sleeve nut. Tighten this nut to give the specified preload to the bearings.

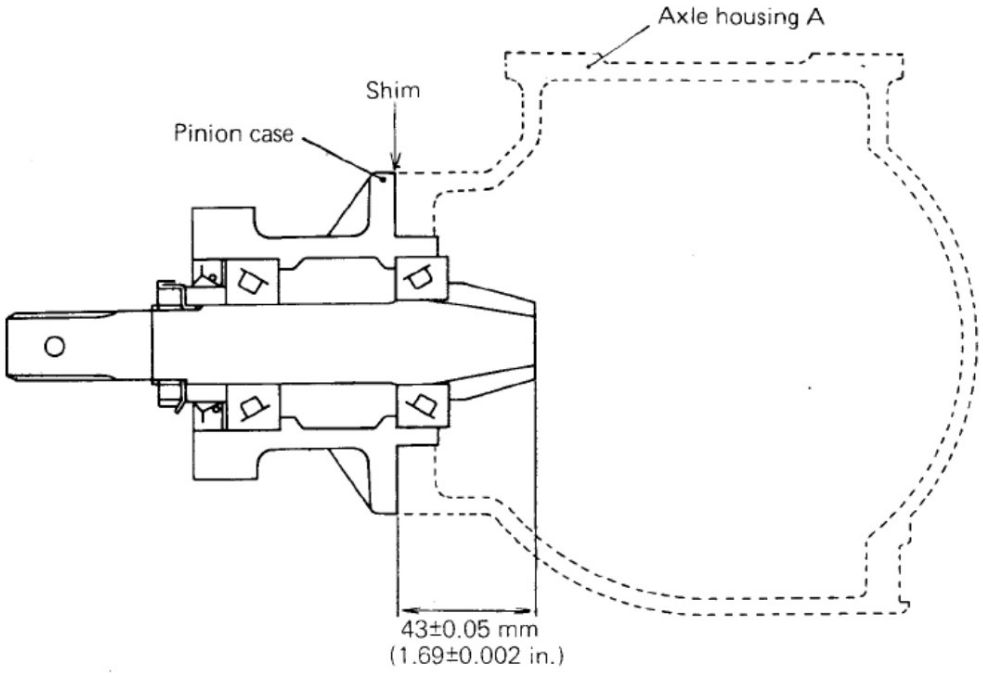
Pinion shaft bearing preload	0.04 ~ 0.06 kg-m (0.29 ~ 0.43 ft-lb)

NOTE

Be sure that the pinion shaft in place has no end play when checking its bearing preload.

(6) After obtaining the specified preload, lock the sleeve nut by sharply bending tab washer.

Adjusting the pinion shaft cone center



Cone center specification	43 ± 0.05 mm (1.69 ± 0.002 in.)

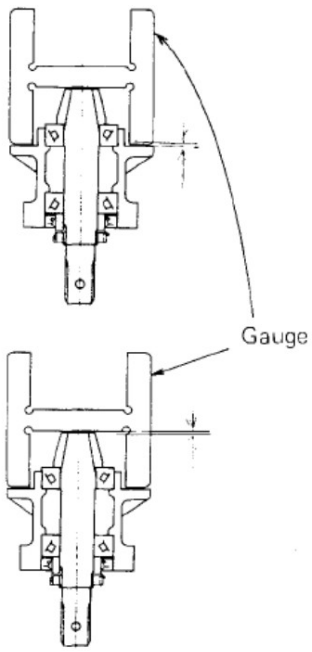
"Cone center" is the distance from the mating face of axle housing to the end face of pinion, and can be increased or decreased by decreasing or increasing the shim.

Shim stock for this adjustment is available in the following thicknesses:

Thickness	Part No.
Shim set	1019 0622 000
0.1 mm (0.004 in.)	1007 0605 000
0.2 mm (0.008 in.)	1007 0605 100
0.4 mm (0.016 in.)	1007 0605 200

Using the gauge for cone center adjustment, determine the required thickness of the shim by proceeding as follows:

(1) Put the gauge alternately on the pinion shaft, and select the shim of such a total thickness that, with the short gauge, a clearance will occur between the gauge end and the case face but, with the long gauge, a similar clearance will occur between the gauge and the pinion's end face.



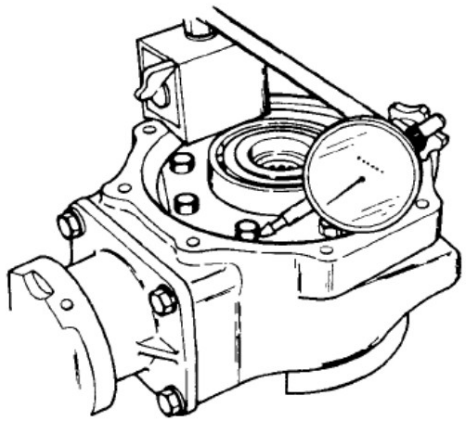
(2) Fit "O" ring (greased) to the mating face of pinion case, attach it to axle housing (A) and secure the case by tightening the bolts to this torque value:

Tightening torque	2.5 ~ 3.0 kg-m (18 ~ 22 ft-lb)

Reassembling the differential

Refer to the section for transmission, wherein the method of reassembly is set forth. After reassembling, install the differential in the axle housing (A) by the same method.

Adjusting the backlash



Backlash specification	0.25 ~ 0.35 mm (0.010 ~ 0.014 in.)

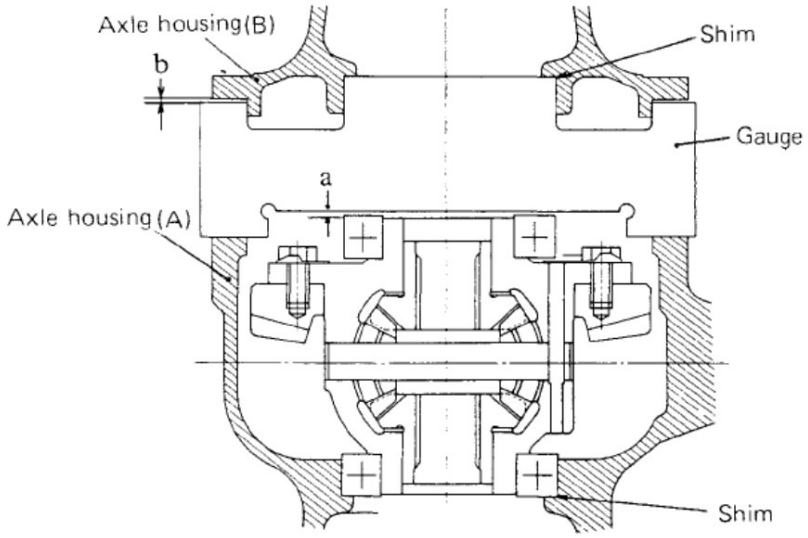
Adjust the shim thickness (between bearing housing of axle housing (A) and bearing) to produce the specified backlash. Shim stock for this adjustment is available in these thicknesses:

Thickness	Part No.
Shim set	1019 0623 000
0.1 mm (0.004 in.)	1007 0618 000
0.2 mm (0.008 in.)	1007 0618 100
0.4 mm (0.016 in.)	1007 0618 200

Shim between differential and axle housing B

After obtaining the specified backlash, determine the amount of shims needed, as follows:

(1) Place the gauge on axle housing (A) and read the clearance (a) between ball bearing and gauge.



(2) Place the other side of the gauge in the bearing housing of axle housing (B) and read the clearance (b) between housing flange and gauge.

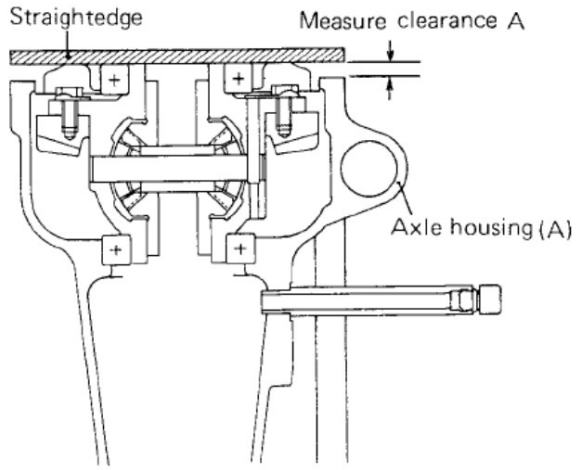
(3) Select from the shim stock mentioned above for backlash adjustment such an amount as will reduce the difference between the two readings (a – b) to anywhere between 0 and 0.1 mm (0.004 in.).

$$a - b = 0 \sim 0.1 \text{ mm } (0 \sim 0.004 \text{ in.})$$

If the gauge is not available, use a straightedge and proceed as follows:

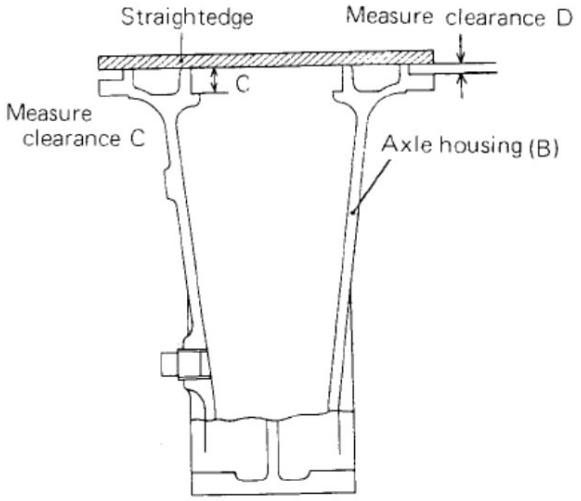
(1) After making sure that the backlash is correct, place the straightedge flat on the ball bearing.

(2) Read the clearance A between axle housing (A) and straightedge.



(3) Place the straightedge on axle housing (B) and read the clearances C and D. Subtract D from C, and call the difference B.

(4) Select from the shim stock (mentioned above for backlash adjustment) such an amount as to obtain A - B = 0 to 0.1 mm (0 to 0.004 in.).



C – D = B

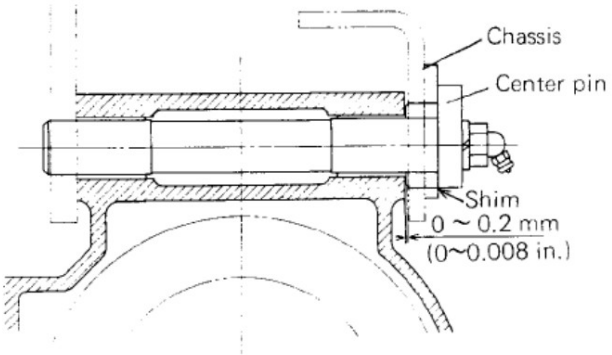
Reassembling the axle housing

(1) Coat the mating faces of two housings (A) and (B) with the sealant, and attach the selected shim to the face of housing (B). Put the two housing together and fasten them by tightening the bolts to this torque value:

Tightening torque	2.5 ~ 3.0 kg-m (18 ~ 22 ft-lb)

(2) Attach the axle housing to the chassis and insert the center pin to complete the axle-to-chassis connection. Be sure to apply the grease in the grease chamber.

(3) Select such a shim as will produce 0 to 0.2 mm (0 to 0.008 in.) clearance between the axle housing and center pin. Insert the shim into between the chassis and center pin and tighten the bolts.



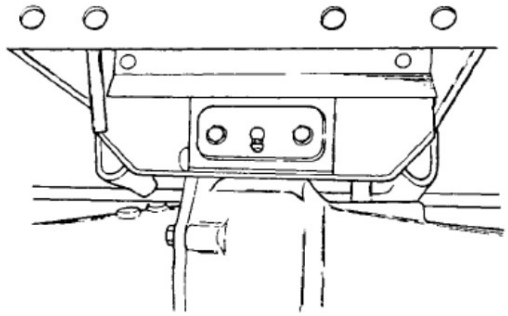
Thickness	Part No.
Shim set	1019 0621 000
0.2 mm (0.008 in.)	1119 0605 000
0.6 mm (0.024 in.)	1119 0605 100
1.0 mm (0.04 in.)	1119 0605 200

Tightening torque	5.0 ~ 6.0 kg-m (36 ~ 43 ft-lb)

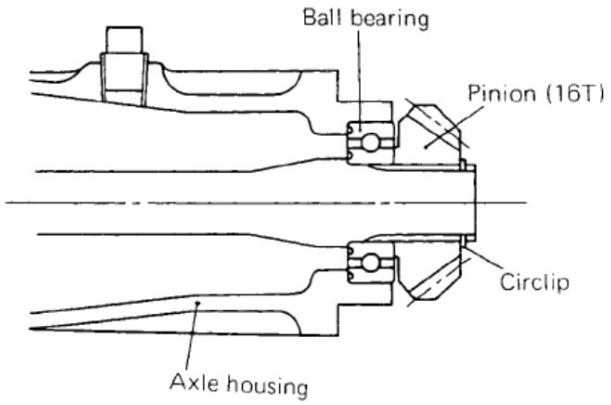
(4) Be sure that the axle housing as connected to the chassis is capable of smooth rocking motion.

NOTE

Apply THREAD LOCK to the grease fitting, and run it into the center pin part, pointing it downward. Tighten the fitting good and hard.



(5) Fit ball bearing to the outer end of each differential shaft, mount pinion (16T), and retain the pinion by installing circlip. The ball bearing has a groove cut in the end faces of its inner and outer races: be sure to position the bearing so that its grooved end comes on inner side, as shown.



(6) The two differential shafts are now complete with bearings and pinions. Insert each into the axle housing.

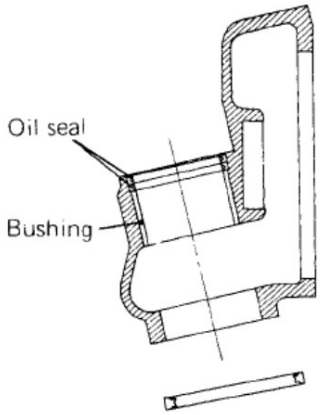
Reassembling the gear case and final case

(1) Insert bushing into final case.

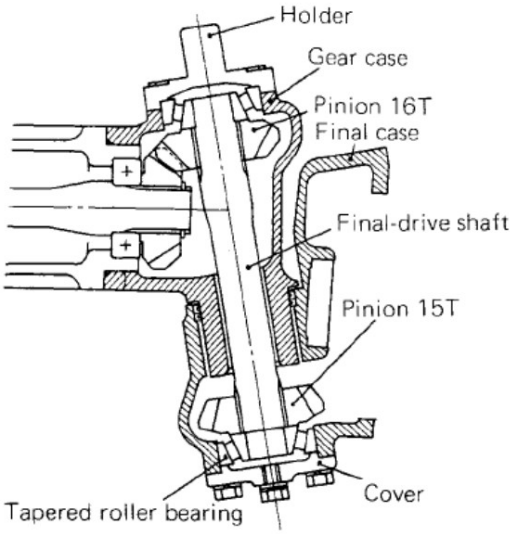
(2) Grease oil seal and fit it carefully to final case, making sure that the seal is trued up in place.

NOTE

The steel part of this oil seal is so thin that the seal itself is prone to distort at the time of its installation. Apply a push evenly when fitting it.



(3) Insert the final-drive shaft into gear case, bringing its large-diameter end to top side and fitting pinion (16T) onto the splined end. Install inner race of upper tapered roller bearing, as shown.



(4) Fit the bearing outer race into gear case. Apply the sealant to the mating face of the holder and secure it to case by tightening its bolts to this torque value:

Tightening torque	2.5 ~ 3.0 kg-m (18 ~ 22 ft-lb)

NOTE

Be sure to wrap each bolt with sealing tape before running it in.

(5) Attach final case to gear case while fitting pinion (15T) onto the splined end of the shaft.

(6) Install tapered roller bearing. Apply the sealant to the mating face of the cover, and secure the cover to final case, tightening its bolts to this torque value:

Tightening torque	2.5 ~ 3.0 kg-m (18 ~ 22 ft-lb)

(7) Wrap the drain plug with sealing tape, and run it into the bottom cover. Tighten the plug good and hard.

(8) Turn the final case around the gear case by hand to be sure the former is capable of smooth rotation.

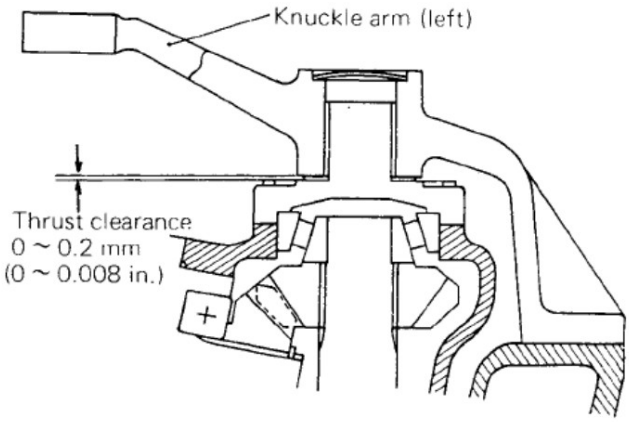
Installing the knuckle arm (or tie rod arm)

(1) Insert bushing into knuckle arm carefully.

(2) Position knuckle arm over the holder, fitting it to final case, and secure it tight to the case by bolting.

(3) Check the thrust clearance, which is prescribed to be anywhere between 0 and 0.2 mm (0.008 in.); if not, reduce the clearance to the specification by shimming. The shim stock for this adjustment is available in the following thicknesses:

Thickness	Part No.
Shim set	1019 0624 000
0.8 mm (0.03 in.)	1438 1305 100
1.2 mm (0.05 in.)	1438 1305 000
1.4 mm (0.055 in.)	1438 1304 000



(4) After preparing the needed shim, take off knuckle arm. Apply lithium grease (heat- and water-resistant grease) to the OD part of the holder, put on knuckle arm with shim and secure it to final case by tightening the reamer bolts to this torque value:

Tightening torque	8.5 ~ 9.5 kg-m (61 ~ 69 ft-lb)

(5) Apply a bonding compound to the plug, and fit it into the pivot bore of knuckle arm, thereby sealing off the top end of the holder.

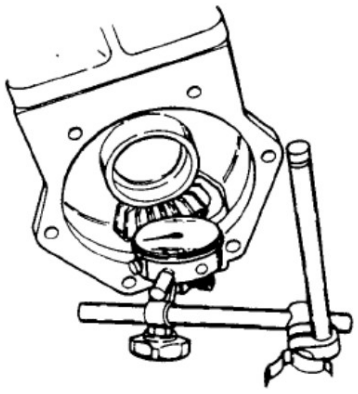
Installing the gear case assembly to axle housing

The gear cases, right and left, are now each complete with the final case and contains the final-drive shaft.

(1) In order to check the backlash between the two pinions (16T) (one on final-drive shaft and one on differential shaft), tentatively fit the gear case to the axle housing and tighten two bolts diametrically opposite.

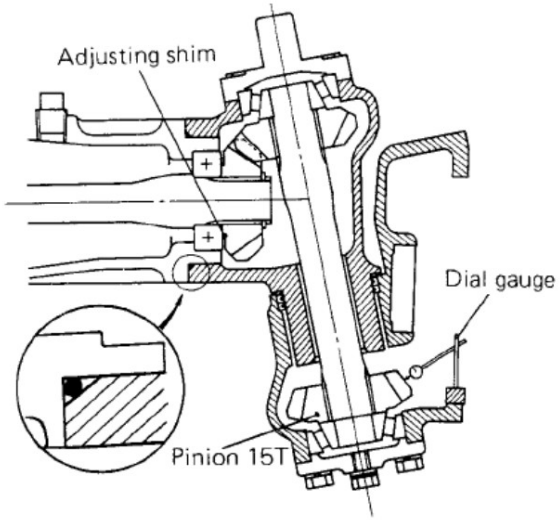
(2) Rig up a dial gauge on final case, putting the gauge spindle to a teeth of pinion (15T) (the pinion on the bottom end of final-drive shaft). Take a backlash reading. This backlash is prescribed to be within this range:

Pinion (16T) backlash	0.2 ~ 0.4 mm (0.008 ~ 0.016 in.)



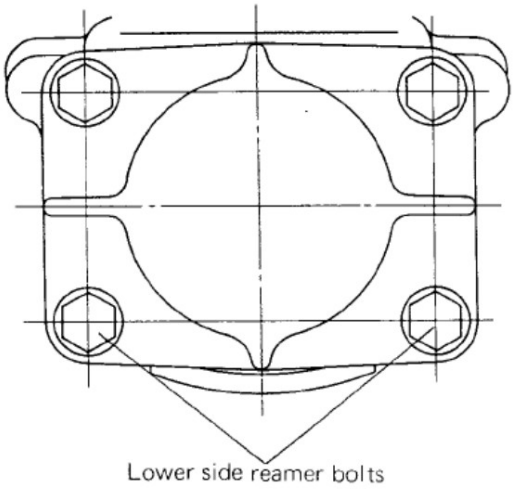
(3) If the reading is off the specified range, take off the gear case and adjust the shim between the pinion (16T) on differential shaft and the ball bearing. The shim stock for this adjustment comes in these thicknesses:

Thickness	Part No.
Shim set	1019 0626 000
0.1 mm (0.004 in.)	1135 3016 000
0.2 mm (0.008 in.)	0731 0002 502
0.4 mm (0.016 in.)	0731 0002 504



(4) Having ascertained a proper pinion (16T) backlash, grease "O" ring and fit it to the mating face of axle housing. Secure the gear case to the housing by tightening the bolts to this torque value:

Tightening torque	5.0 ~ 6.0 kg-m (36 ~ 43 ft-lb)



Reassembling the wheel shaft

(1) Grease oil seal and fit it to the bearing holder.

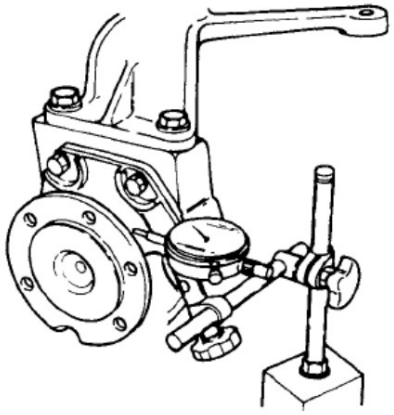
(2) Insert the shaft into the holder, install ball bearing and retain the bearing by setting circlip.

(3) Mount bevel gear (29T) on the splined end of the shaft.

(4) Fit the bearing holder (complete with the shaft and bevel gear) to final case and tentatively secure it by bolting. Leave the bolts snug-tight.

NOTE

The inner ball bearing is left out at this time.

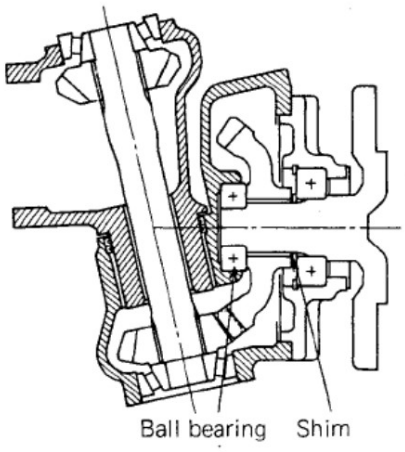


(5) Check the backlash between bevel gear (29T) and pinion (15T). This is accomplished by putting the dial gauge to the tip of wheel shaft. Adjust the shim between bevel gear (29T) and ball bearing if the reading is off the specification, which is:

Bevel gear (29T) backlash	0.2 ~ 0.4 mm (0.008 ~ 0.016 in.)

The shim stock for this adjustment comes in these thicknesses:

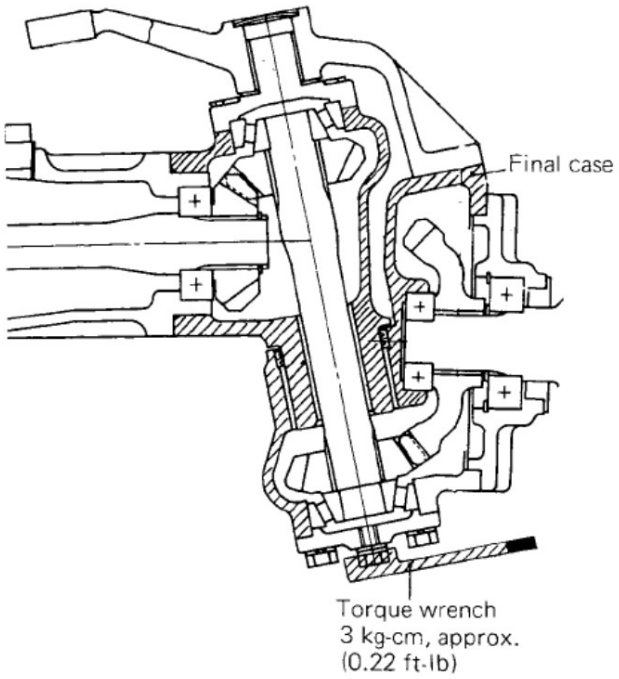
Thickness	Part No.
0.1 mm (0.004 in.)	0731 0003 001
0.2 mm (0.008 in.)	0731 0003 002
0.4 mm (0.016 in.)	0731 0003 004



(6) Having obtained a proper backlash, remove the bearing holder, install the inner ball bearing on the shaft. Apply the sealant to the mating face of final case and attach the holder, tightening the bolts to this torque value:

Tightening torque	2.5 ~ 3.0 kg-m (18 ~ 22 ft-lb)

(7) Check the final case for torque needed to turn it around the gear case and be sure that no more torque than 0.03 kg-m (0.22 lb-ft) is required. For this checking, use a torque wrench as shown.



Installing the tie rod and drag link

(1) Clean the tapered portions of knuckle arm and tie rod arm, apply grease to the cleaned portions, and make connections, locking each nut by inserting cotter pin.

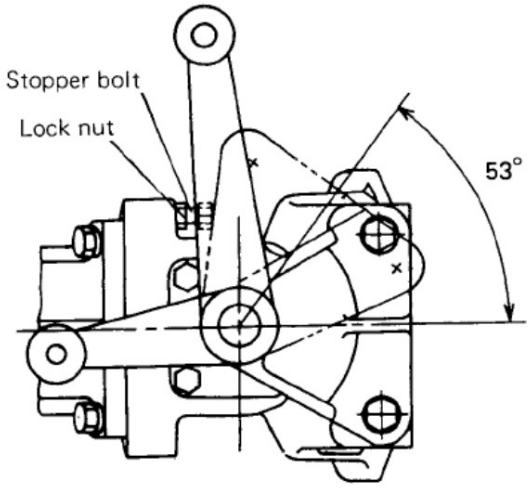
(2) After installing the tie rod and drag link, mount front tires on wheel shafts, securing their hub bolts to:

Tightening torque	8.5 ~ 9.5 kg-m (61 ~ 69 ft-lb)

Adjust the tie rod to obtain the specified "toe-in," which is:

Toe-in specification	6 ± 2 mm (1/4 ± 3/32 in.)

(3) With the toe-in set properly, adjust the inner-wheel steering angle (A) to 55° (for MT160, MT180 and MT180H) or 53° (for MT160D, MT180D and MT180HD) on both sides, right and left, and secure each stopper bolt by tightening its lock nut.



Installing the universal joints

Install the universal joints by reversing the order of removal.

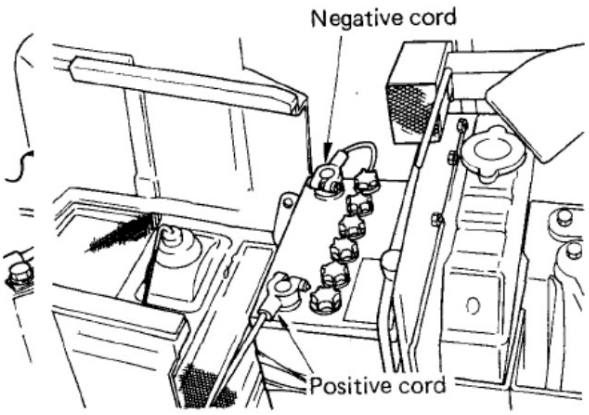
STEERING GEARBOX

The gearbox is of ball screw type offering but a very small resistance to turning effort.

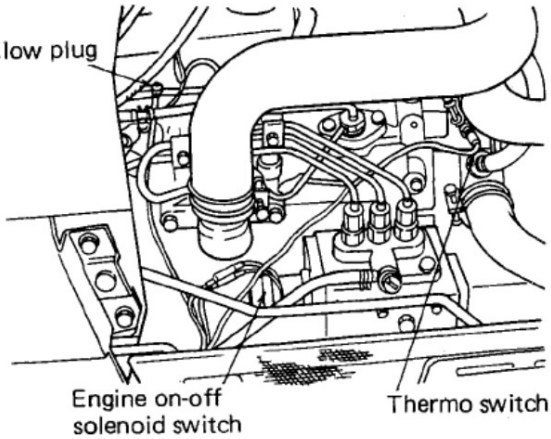
Removing the steering gearbox

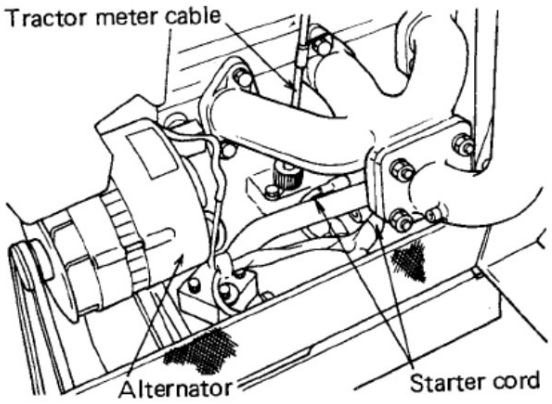
(1) Open bonnet to gain access to the battery.

(2) Disconnect cables from the battery, and take it out.



(3) From respective terminals, disconnect wires of glow plugs, oil pressure switch, water temperature switch, starting motor and alternator.





(4) Disconnect the tractor meter cable.

(5) Remove the cap on steering handwheel, loosen the nut and take off the handwheel.

(6) Check to be sure, for safety's sake, that all electrical wires have been disconnected. From steering column, remove panel and panel cover together.

(7) From clutch housing and steering gear box, remove fuel tank bracket with fuel tank.

(8) Undo the ball socket joint between pitman arm and drag link. The gearbox is now accessible for its removal.

Disassembling the steering gearbox

Except when the gearbox need to be replaced, it is not necessary to take it down for it can be disassembled and reassembled in place.

(1) Remove the gearbox from clutch housing.

(2) Remove pitman arm from sector shaft.

(3) Loosen bolts securing the holder to the right-hand side of gearbox, turn adjusting screw clockwise, and take the holder off.

(4) Reposition the sector shaft gear to the shape of gearbox. Drive lightly on the pitman arm-side end face of sector shaft to force it out.

(5) From the sector shaft removed, separate adjusting screw and shim.

NOTE

If sector shaft is not to be replaced, preserve the shim for re-use. Keep the removed shim separate from others.

(6) Loosen bolts securing the steering column, remove the column, and remove the ball nut sub-assembly from the gearbox.

Reassembling the steering gearbox

Have all disassembled parts cleaned by washing. Be sure to oil moving parts before using them in reassembly.

(1) Press bearing outer races into the bottom of the gearbox and the column flange.

(2) Fill the gearbox with 0.3 liter (0.63 pint) of gear oil.

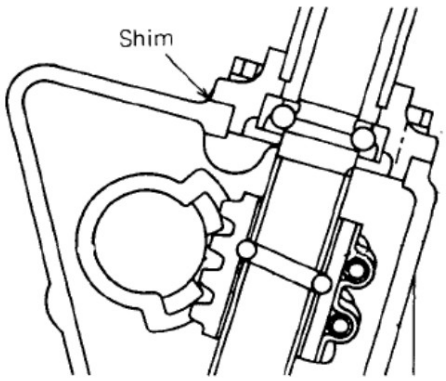
(3) Fit bearing inner race to the ball nut sub-assembly, and set this sub-assembly in place inside the gearbox.

(4) Attach steering column to the gearbox tentatively, making the bolts snug-tight.

(5) Adjust the thickness of the shim (whose location is shown) in such a way as to give a bearing preload of 0.025 ~ 0.055 kg-m (0.18 ~ 0.4 ft-lb) to the worm shaft in place. The shim stock for this adjustment is available in these thicknesses:

Shim set parts No. 67453-00115

Thickness	Q'ty
0.05 mm (0.002 in.)	2
0.07 mm (0.0028 in.)	2
0.08 mm (0.003 in.)	2
0.10 mm (0.004 in.)	2
0.20 mm (0.008 in.)	2



NOTE

This preload refers only to the worm shaft. This is the reason why the column is tentatively attached without its bushing.

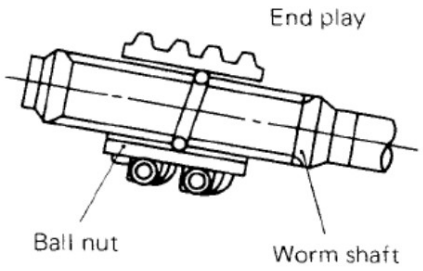
(6) Remove the column. Grease "O" ring and fit it to steering column, and attach it to gearbox by tightening to this torque value:

Tightening torque	2.5 ~ 3.0 kg-m (18 ~ 22 ft-lb)

NOTE

The end play for ball nut is prescribed to be from 0 to 0.03 mm (0.0012 in.). If this play is noted to be 0.1 mm or more, the ball nut sub-assembly must be replaced.

End play	0 ~ 0.03 mm (0.0012 in.)

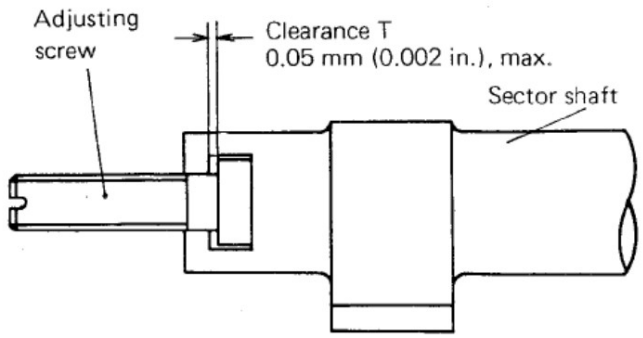


Reassembling the sector shaft

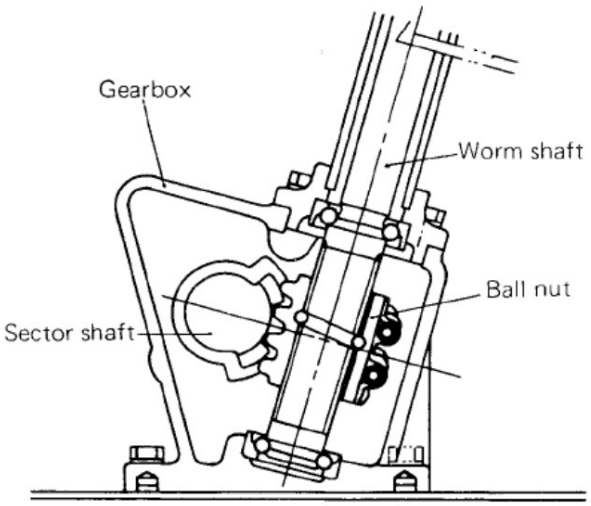
(1) Make a shim adjustment to produce a clearance (T) of less than 0.05 mm (0.002 in.) between sector shaft and adjusting screw, using the shim stock available in the following thicknesses:

Adjust screw shim set parts No. 67453-00114

Thickness	Q'ty
$1.5\ ^{+0.035}_{+0.015}$ mm ($0.059\ ^{+0.0014}_{+0.0006}$ in.)	1
$1.5\ ^{+0.065}_{+0.045}$ mm ($0.059\ ^{+0.0026}_{+0.0018}$ in.)	1
$1.5\ ^{+0.095}_{+0.075}$ mm ($0.059\ ^{+0.0037}_{+0.0030}$ in.)	1
$1.5\ ^{+0.125}_{+0.105}$ mm ($0.59\ ^{+0.0049}_{+0.0041}$ in.)	1
$1.5\ ^{+0.155}_{+0.135}$ mm ($0.59\ ^{+0.0061}_{+0.0053}$ in.)	1



(2) Install adjusting screw in sector shaft, together with the selected shim. Center ball screw and sector shaft in the gearbox, as shown, and secure the shaft in place.



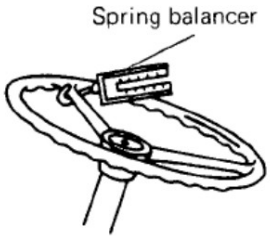
(3) Coat the face of the gearbox with the sealant. Secure the holder to gearbox, tightening its bolts to this value:

Tightening torque	2.5 ~ 3.0 kg-m (18 ~ 22 ft-lb)

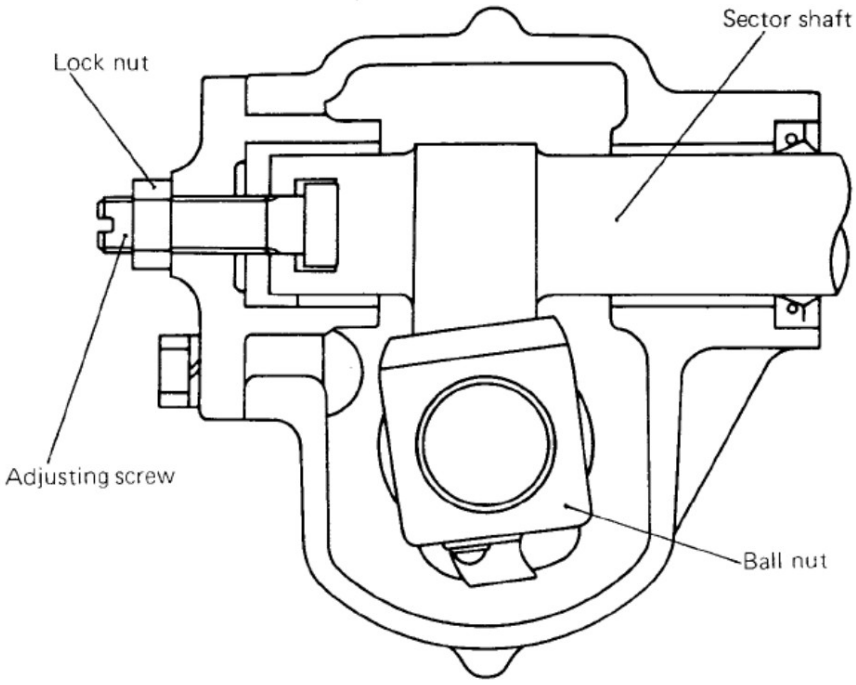
(4) Grease oil seal, and fit the seal to gearbox. The following specifications are to be met:

Worm shaft preload	0.13 kg-m (0.94 ft-lb)

Steering handwheel starting torque (as checked at the rim)	0.61 kg (1.34 lb)



(5) Position adjusting screw in such a way that the backlash between ball nut and sector shaft will be anywhere between 0 and 10 mm (0.4 in.) as measured at the wheel rim. This much backlash corresponds to an angular play of 0° to 3° of sector shaft.



(6) Having produced a proper backlash between sector shaft and nut, lock the adjusting screw by tightening its lock nut.

(7) Match marks are punched on sector shaft and pitman arm. Fit the arm to the shaft, matching these marks, and secure the arm to the shaft by tightening its nut: be sure to use spring washer under this nut.

Installing the steering gearbox

(1) Position gearbox on clutch housing as dictated by dowel, and secure it to the housing by tightening its bolts to this value:

Tightening torque	2.5 ~ 3.0 kg-m (18 ~ 22 ft-lb)

(2) Install all removed parts (such as fuel tank bracket, fuel tank, panel, panel cover etc.), and reconnect all electrical wires and cables, in the sequential order which is reverse of disassembling and removing order.

2-WHEEL DRIVE

DESCRIPTION

The MT160, 180, 180H steering system is the type that is most widely used for the farm tractors.

The front axle is a center pivot type and provided with a full swinging angle, permitting full-face contact even with a rough ground. Kingpin is the Lemoine type which allows greater ground clearance and stable steering.

The steering gear is a ball screw type which offers a very small resistance to turning effort.

CONSTRUCTION

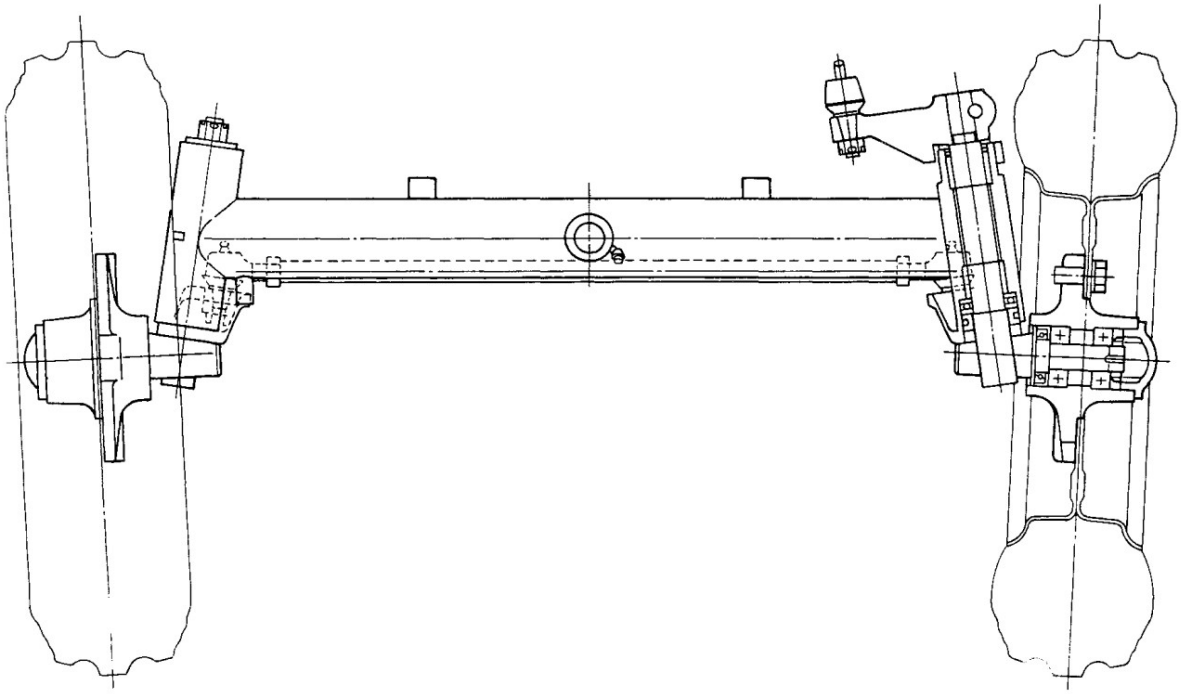
The Ackerman Jant steering linkage is employed so that the front wheels can be swung concentrically.

The torque applied to the steering wheel is carried to the sector shaft integrated with the ball nut and then to the sector gear integrated with the sector shaft, thus causing the front wheels to turn to right or left.

The pitman arm is connected to the end of the sector shaft, and as the sector shaft turns, the end of the pitman arm moves describing an arc.

The drag link attached to the end of the pitman arm moves back and forth with the movements of the pitman arm, and the knuckle arm turns the kingpin. This causes the front wheels to swing, thus steering the tractor.

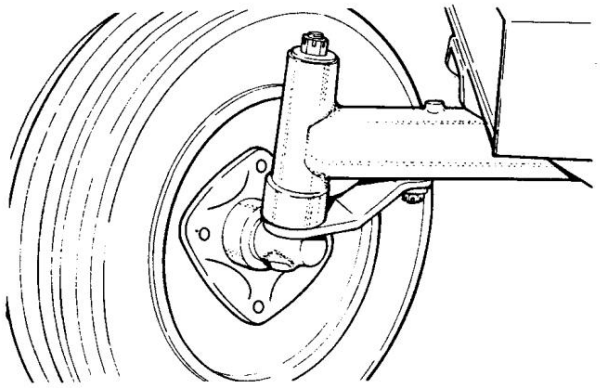
The steering system consists of the steering gear box incorporating a ball nut ass'y and a sector shaft, drag link, knuckle arm, tie rod, front axle, kingpins and front wheels.



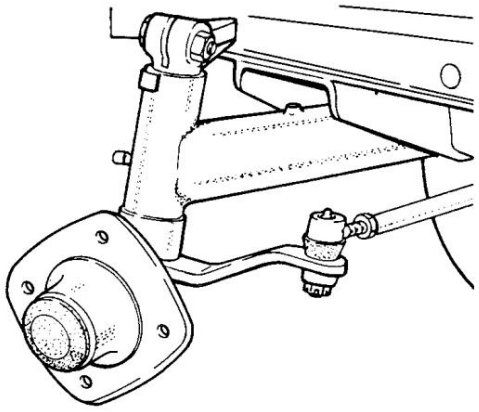
DISASSEMBLY

Disassembling the front wheel hubs

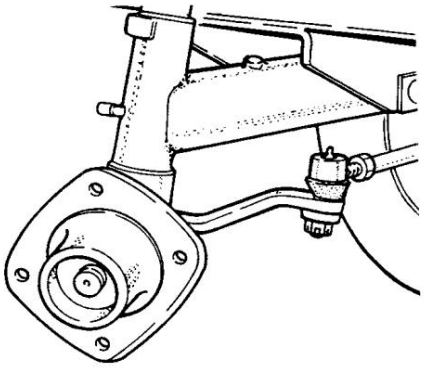
(1) Lightly loosen the four front wheel mounting bolts.



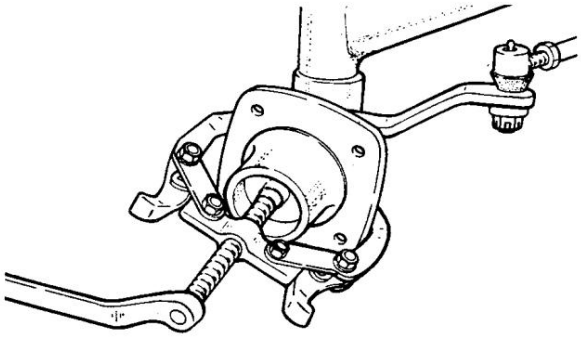
(2) Jack up the front axle, loosen the front wheel mounting bolts, and remove the front wheels.



(3) Remove the front wheel hub cap, straighten the tab of the lock washer, and remove the sleeve nut.



(4) Remove the front wheel hub using the gear puller, and remove the oil seal.



(5) Remove the ball bearing from the front wheel hub.

Disassembling the kingpins

(1) Remove the cotter pin locking the castle nut on each end of the tie rod, loosen the nut, and remove the tie rod.

(2) Loosen the knuckle arm bolt, and remove the knuckle arm while taking care so that the king pin does not fall.

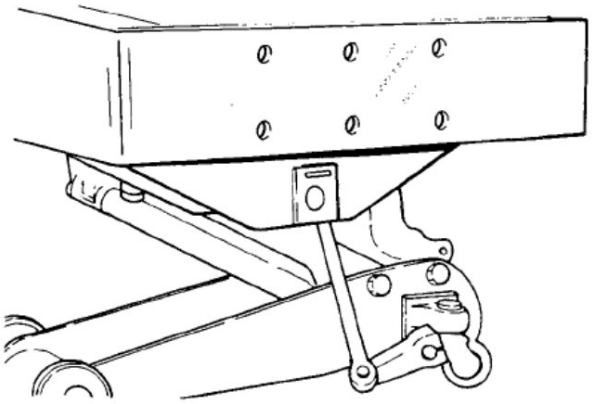
Remove the drag link from the knuckle arm, as required.

(3) By tapping the top end of the kingpin, pull out the kingpin.

(4) Remove the right-side castle nut, and remove the right-side kingpin.

Removing the front axle

(1) Pull out the cotter pin from the center pin and remove the castle nut.



(2) Support the front axle, pull out the center pin and remove the front axle.

INSPECTION

Wash all the disassembled parts with cleaning oil and blow them dry with compressed air. Check for excessive wear or damage.

Replace with new one if defective or excessively worn.

(1) Grease fitting and grease passage for clogging.

(2) Tire setting tap for damage.

(3) Smooth rotation of ball bearing

Center pin outside diameter:

$22\ ^{-0.065}_{-0.098}$ mm ($0.866\ ^{-0.0026}_{-0.0039}$ in.)

Front axle center pin hole diameter:

$22\ ^{0}_{+0.052}$ mm ($0.866\ ^{0}_{+0.0020}$ in.)

Kingpin outside diameter:

$25\ ^{-0.020}_{-0.053}$ mm ($0.984\ ^{-0.0008}_{-0.0021}$ in.)

Kingpin bushing inside diameter:

$25\ ^{+0.073}_{+0.040}$ mm ($0.984\ ^{+0.0029}_{+0.0016}$ in.)

Measure the shaft outside diameter and bushing inside diameter. If measurements exceed the above limits, replacement of parts is necessary.

Install the kingpin bushing, and measure the inside diameter. If the measurement is smaller than specified above, correct the diameter using a reamer very carefully.

After this operation, thoroughly clean the metal dust.

Always use new "O" rings and oil seals.

REASSEMBLY

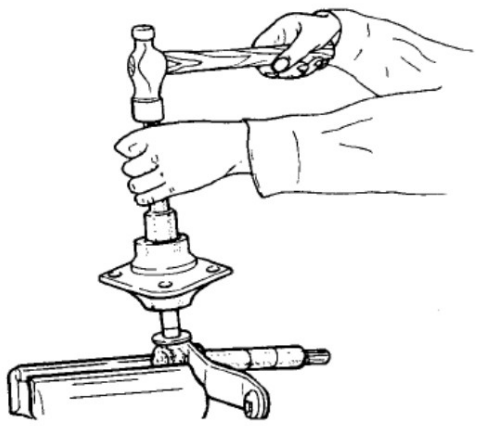
Apply oil or grease to contact surfaces of moving parts, and reassemble them carefully so that they maintain the specified dimensions.

Reassembling the front wheel hubs

(1) Install the washer to the kingpin. Install the grease-coated oil seal.

(2) Install two circlips to the front wheel hub, and insert the ball bearing into the hub.

(3) Install the front wheel hub to the kingpin, pack with Alvania grease, and insert the ball bearing into the hub.



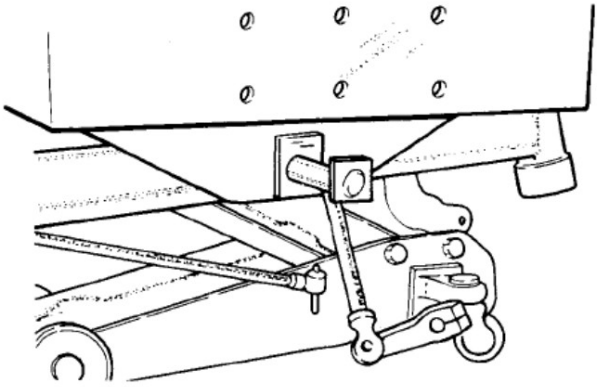
(4) Install the lock washer, and tighten the sleeve nut.

Front wheel hub starting torque	0.4 ~ 0.6 kg-m (10.1 ~ 11.6 ft-lb)

(5) After tightening the nut with starting torque, make sure that the front wheel hub rotates smoothly, and lock with the lock washer. Apply a bond to the cap, and install it to the front wheel hub.

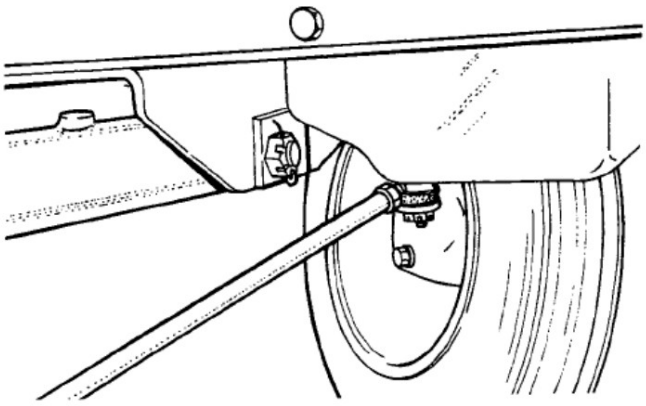
Reassembling the front axle

(1) Clean the center pin hole in the front axle and holes in the chassis, and install the front axle to the chassis with the longer boss facing forward.



(2) Push in the greased center pin from the front side, and tighten the castle nut to specification. Then back it off 1/4 ~ 1/3 turn so that the cotter pin holes can be aligned.

Tightening torque	15.0 ~ 17 kg-m (108 ~ 123 ft-lb)



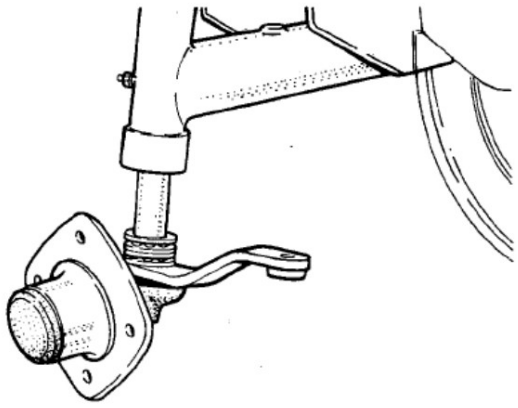
(3) Lock with the cotter pin.

(4) Make sure the front axle swings smoothly without end play.

Reassembling the kingpins

(1) Oil the kingpin sparingly, and push the bushing onto the kingpin. Install the grease-coated "O" ring.

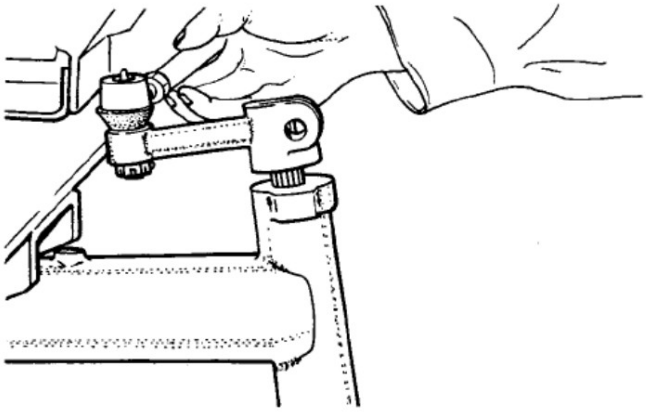
(2) Install the thrust bearing, and apply a liberal amount of grease to it, and install the kingpin to the front axle.



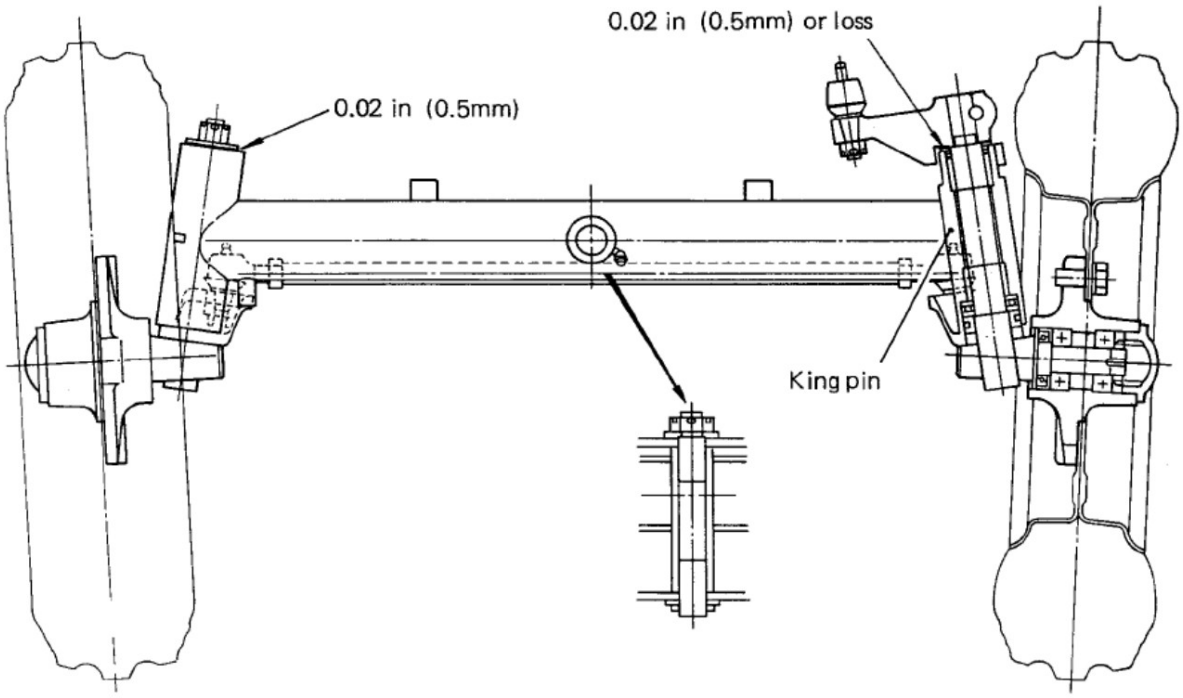
(3) Fit the greased oil seal to the kingpin, while taking care so that the kingpin does not slip off.

(4) Install the washer, and align the knuckle arm bolt hole with the cut on the left-side kingpin, and tighten the bolt.

Tightening torque	2.1 ~ 3.0 kg-m (15.2 ~ 21.7 ft-lb)



(5) Make sure the gap between the knuckle arm lower side and the washer is 0.5 mm (0.02 in.) or less.



(6) Install the washer to the right-side kingpin, tighten the castle nut, and lock with the cotter pin.

Tightening torque	4.5 ~ 5.5 kg-m (32.5 ~ 39.7 ft-lb)

(7) Make sure the kingpins operate smoothly, and grease them as required.

SPECIFICATIONS

			2-wheel drive	4-wheel drive
Steering system			Ackerman jant method	
Axle center			Center pivot type	
Steering knuckle arrangement			Lemoine	Reverse Elliot
Steering gearbox			Ball screw type	
Tread adjustment			Not adjustable	
Axle center swing angle		deg	8	8
King pin angle			8	10
Chamber			2.5	2.5
Caster			3	0
Toe-in		mm (in.)	6.4±1.5(0.25±0.06)	0 ~ 6 (0 ~ 0.24)
Steering angle		deg	55	53
Steering gear ratio			1/15	
Steering wheel size		mm (in.)	403 (15.87)	
Turning radius (with brakes)			1850 (72.83)	
MT160 Front AG tire	Tire size and ply rating		4.00–9–4 ply	5–12–4 ply
	Tire pattern		Three rib, F–2	Farm lug, R–1
	Tire pressure	kg/cm² (psi)	3.25 (46.2)	2.2 (31.3)
	Outside diameter	mm (in.)	457 (18)	550 (21.65)
	Tire width		113 (4.45)	123 (4.84)
	Maximum load	kg (lb)	200 (441)	210 (463)
	Type of valve		TR–13	
	Rim size		3.00D X 9DT	4JA X 12
MT160 Front ES tire	Tire size and ply rating		18 X 7.00–8–4 ply	6–12–4 ply
	Tire pattern		Pillow dia, G-2	All weather, R-3
	Tire pressure	kg/cm² (psi)	2.0 (28.4)	2.2 (31.3)
	Outside diameter	mm (in.)	457 (18)	564 (22.20)
	Tire width		170 (6.69)	155 (6.10)
	Maximum load	kg (lb)	310 (684)	270 (595)
	Type of valve		TR-413	TR-13
	Rim size		5.50 X 8DT	5JA X 12

			2-wheel drive	4-wheel drive
MT180 & MT180H Front AG tire	Tire size and ply rating		4.5–10–4 ply	5–12–4 ply
	Tire pattern		Three rib, F–2	Farm lug, R–1
	Tire pressure	kg/cm^2 (psi)	2.2 (31.3)	
	Outside diameter	mm (in.)	488 (19.21)	550 (21.65)
	Tire width		120 (4.72)	123 (4.84)
	Maximum load	kg (lb)	205 (452)	210 (463)
	Type of valve		TR–13	
	Rim size		3.00D X 10DT	4JA X 12
MT180 & MT180H Front ES tire	Tire size and ply rating		20 X 8.00–10–4 ply	6–12–4 ply
	Tire pattern		Pillow dia, G–2	All weather, R–3
	Tire pressure	kg/cm^2 (psi)	1.7 (24.2)	2.2 (31.3)
	Outside diameter	mm (in.)	495 (19.49)	564 (22.20)
	Tire width		1193 (7.60)	155 (6.10)
	Maximum load	kg (lb)	410 (900)	270 (595)
	Type of valve		TR–413	TR–13
	Rim size		6.00I X 10DT	5JA X 12

ISO

CHAPTER 5-1
TRANSMISSION SYSTEM

(Sliding gear type)

5-1

REMARQUES

TABLE OF CONTENTS

REMARQUES

DESCRIPTION

The transmission in MITSUBISHI MT160(D) and MT180(D) is of selective sliding shift type, designed to give three forward speeds and one reverse speed on each of the two ranges, HIGH and LOW. Thus, a total of six forward speeds and two reverse speeds are available.

There are two PTOs in this transmission. One is called the mid-PTO (for driving front wheels) and the other is called the main PTO (for driving an implement such as the rotary).

The main PTO provides three speeds. Its output shaft is of an SAE standard type, 1-3/8" in nominal size and having 6 splines.

Transmission gears, shafts and shift mechanisms are in the front section, and differential gearing and spiral bevel gear drive, complete with differential lock, are in the rear section of the transmission case.

The spiral bevel gear (crown gear) is integral with the differential case. The differential lock device, designed compact and taking but a small inside space, is controlled from a pedal located on the right of the transmission case.

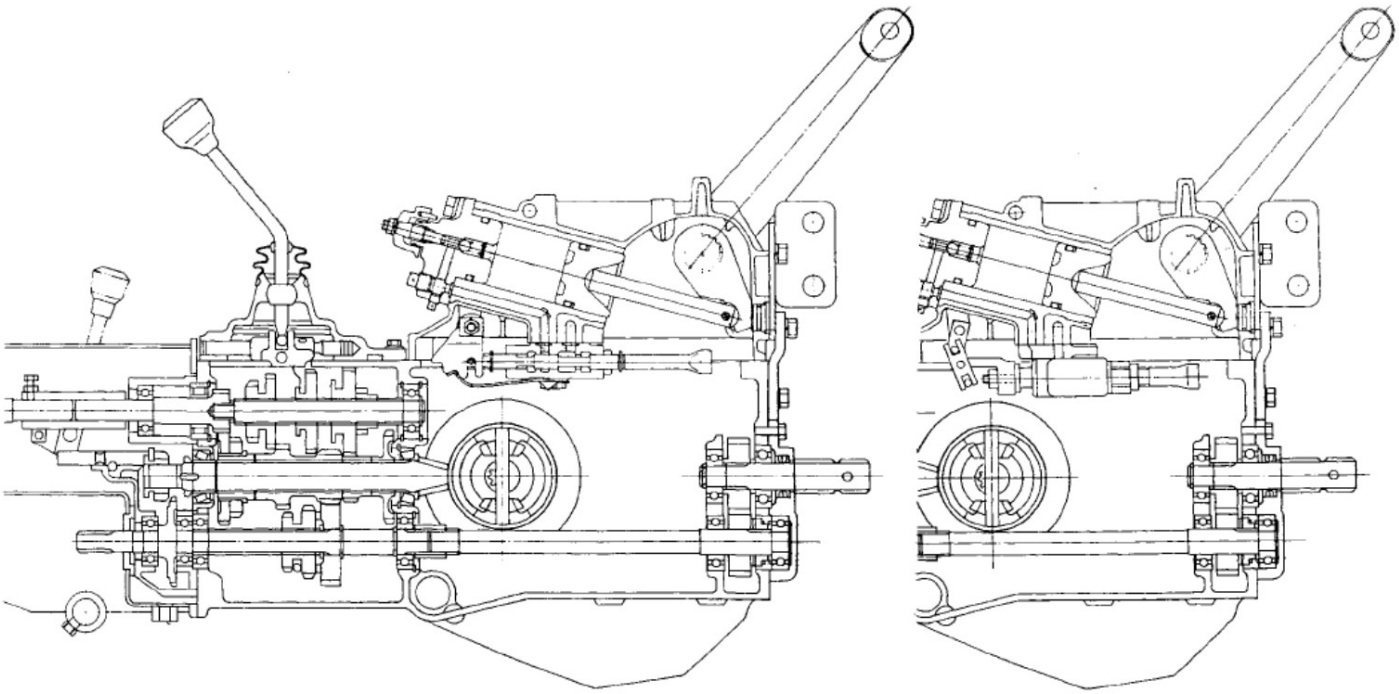
To both right and left sides of the rear of the transmission case are fitted an aluminum-alloy case in which a final reduction gearing, complete with a brake, is housed. The two cases are built sturdy.

The shift mechanism and the hydraulic control device for the working implement are located in the top of the transmission case. Transmission lubrication and hydraulic control (for the implement) share the oil: the oil in the transmission case is used also by the hydraulic control system, and is prescribed to be a gear oil of SAE #80 for standard weather condition. (The viscosity rating of this oil must be changed for seasonal changes.)

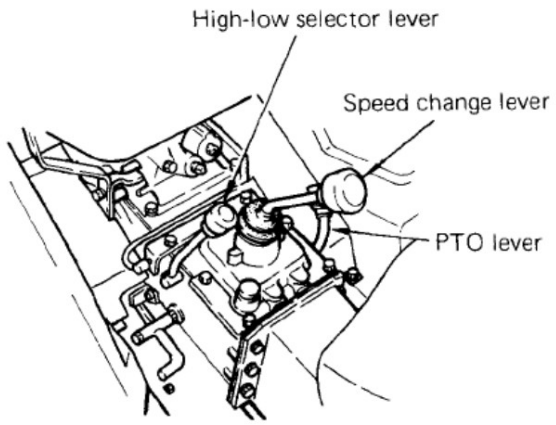
The main PTO is equipped with an overrunning clutch to prevent reverse flow of drive into the transmission from the working implement. Because of this clutch, there are not such operating difficulties as "gear grating" in shifting and "tractor refusing to halt" (even with the main clutch released), when the tractor is working with, say, the single blade rotary mower hitched to it.

CONSTRUCTION

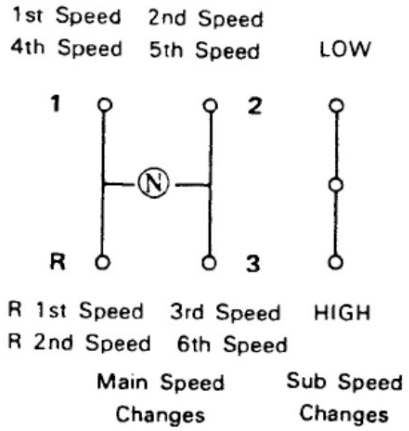
A total of fourteen transmission gears and three shafts constitute the selective paths of drive from engine to the rear axle through spiral bevel and differential gears. Drive to the front axle is on-off controlled in the mid-PTO. One of the three shafts is reverse shaft.



How gears are selected will be seen in the following illustrations. Note that there are two control levers: speed change lever and high-low selector lever.



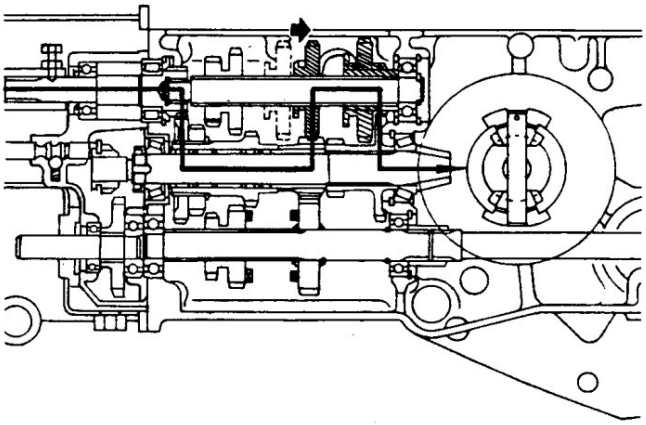
Shifting mechanism



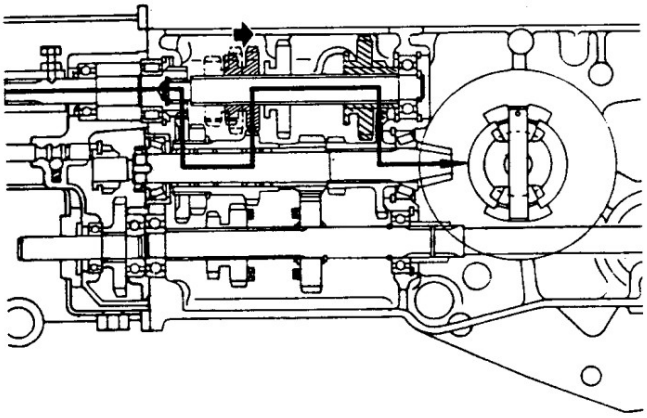
Shift patterns

Forward speeds

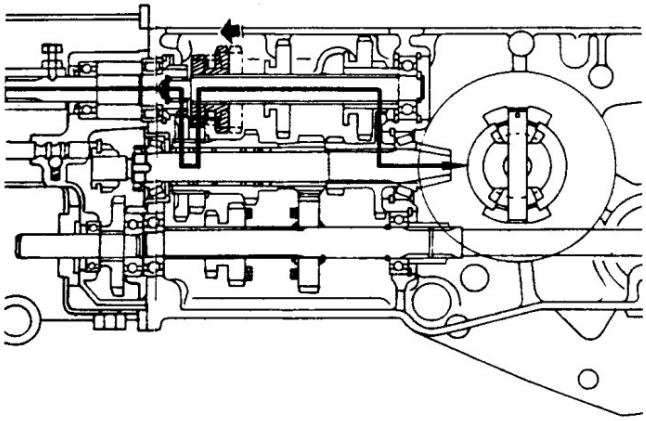
F-1



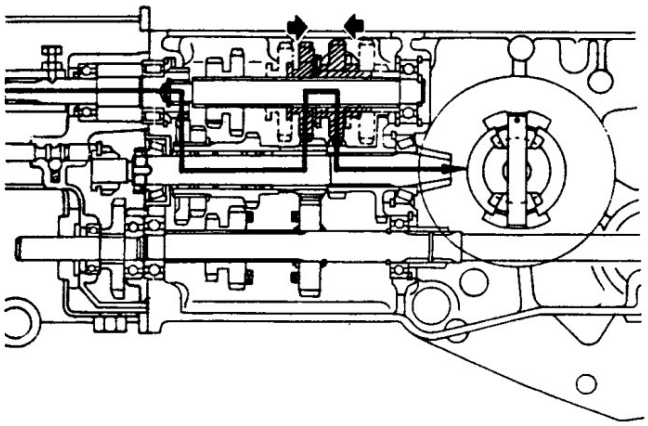
F-2



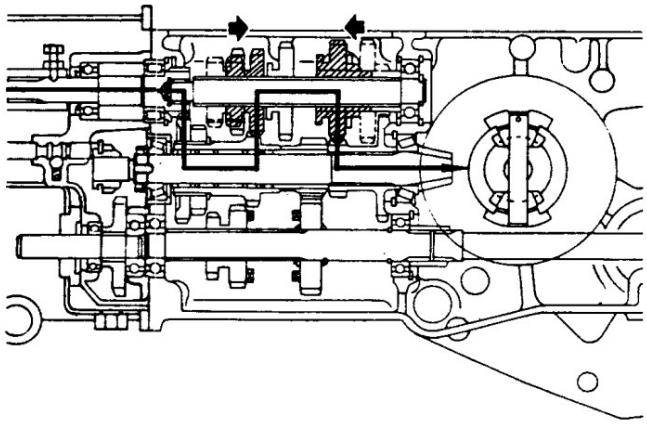
F-3



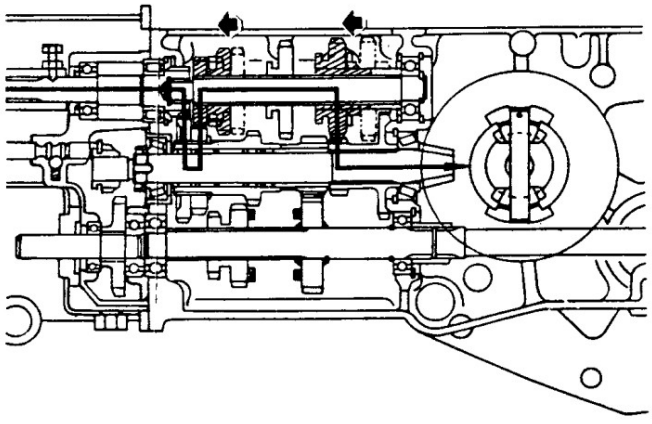
F-4



F-5

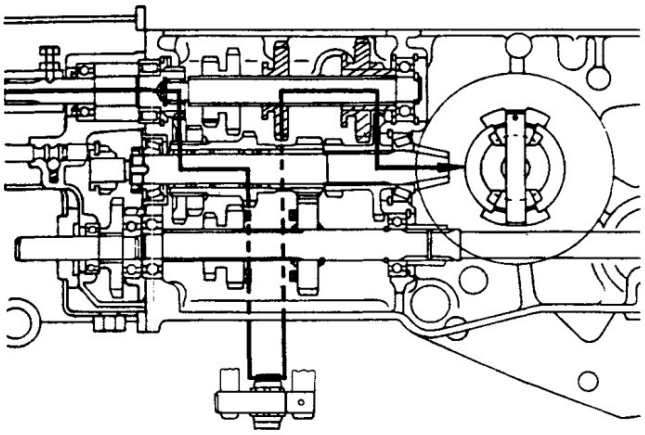


F-6

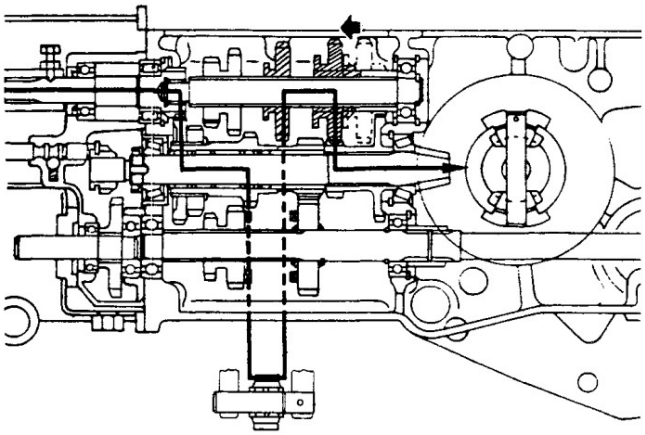


Reverse speeds

R-1



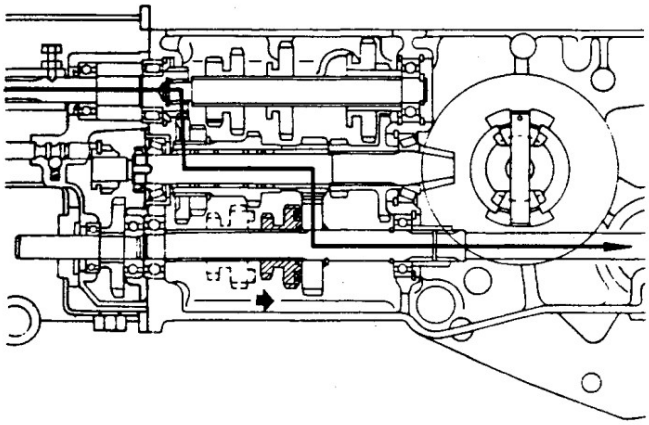
R-2



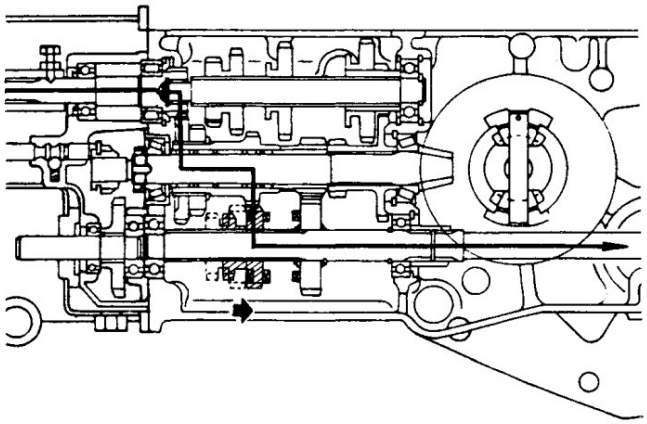
Power take-off

The main PTO, located in the bottom section, has five gears for providing three selective speeds. Its overrunning clutch permits one-way flow of drive (from PTO shaft to driven implement) and not the other way around.

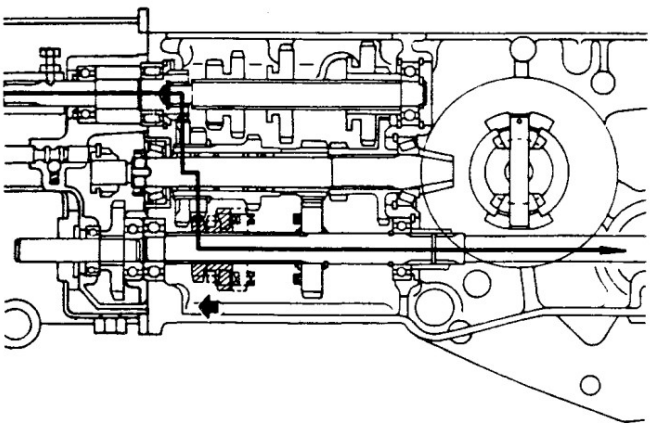
P-1



P-2

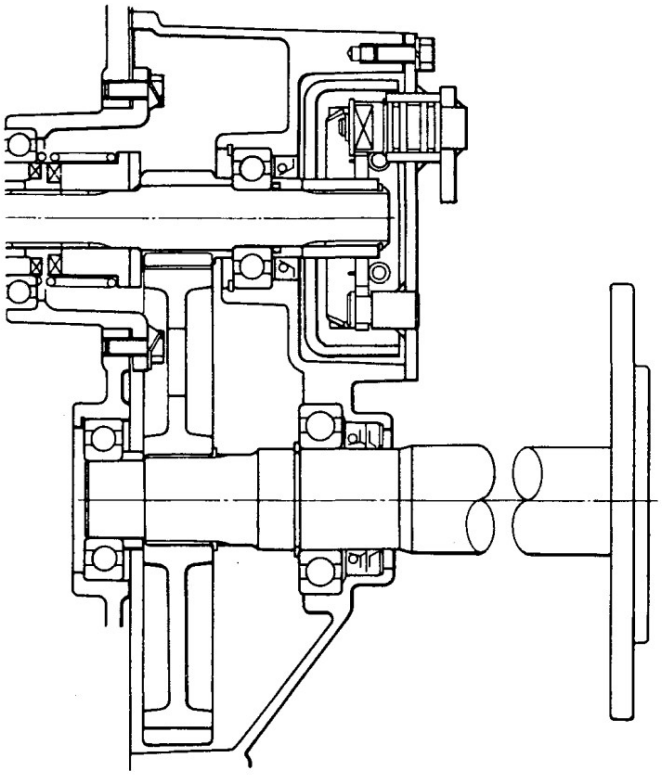


P-3



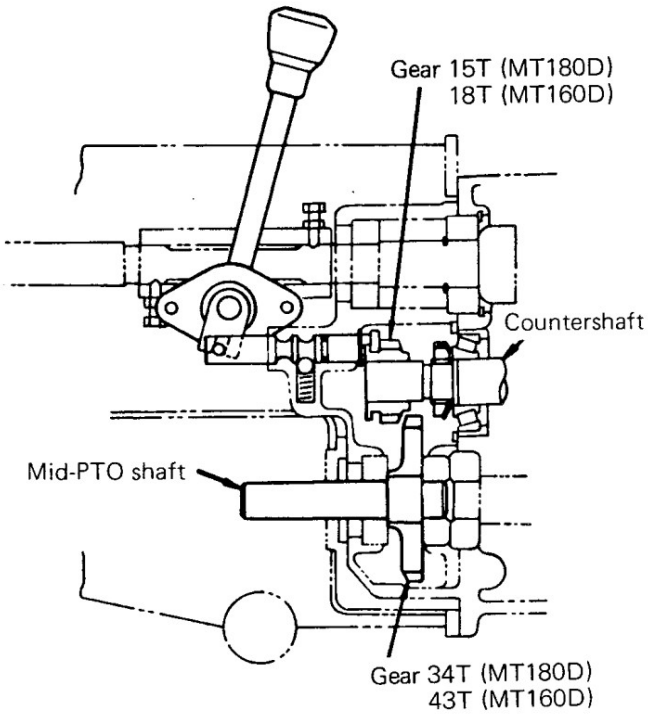
Final cases

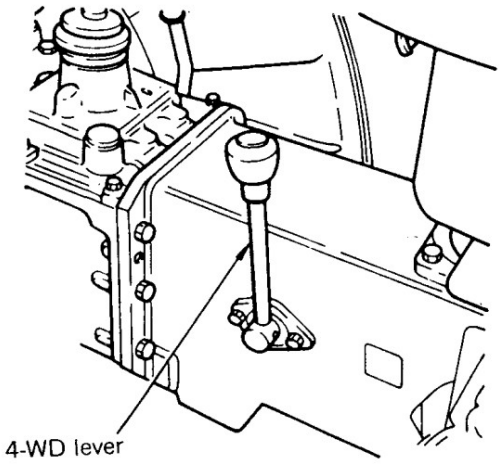
The brake provided in each aluminum-alloy case is of internally expanding type. It is a water-proof brake. The differential lock device is incorporated in the right-side case.



Mid-PTO

This PTO is for driving front axle, and is controlled from the shift lever located at the right side of clutch housing. Drive is taken from the front end of the transmission case.





REMOVAL AND DISASSEMBLY

NOTE

a) Complete transmission disassembly is occasioned by two cases: 1) when the transmission case has suffered damage, or 2) when PTO shaft has to be replaced. Partial disassembly will suffice in most cases when a gear, shaft or bearing has suffered damage in the transmission.

b) To disassemble the transmission partially or completely, it must be taken down from the machine. A sufficient working space should be secured in advance, and all the necessary hand tools and materials should be prepared for ready use. Before starting to disassemble, clean the case thoroughly, removing dirt, grime and greasy matter. The external surfaces of the case are usually greasy and slippery: be sure to handle it carefully upon removing the transmission from the machine.

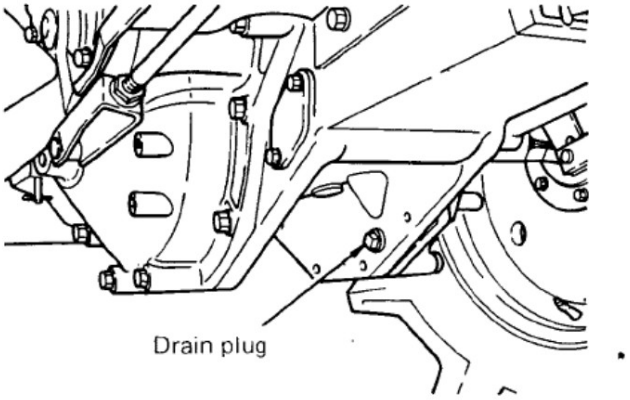
Removing the transmission

It is not necessary to remove the transmission from the machine when the ring gear or select shaft has to be disassembled: this disassembly can be carried out on the transmission in place.

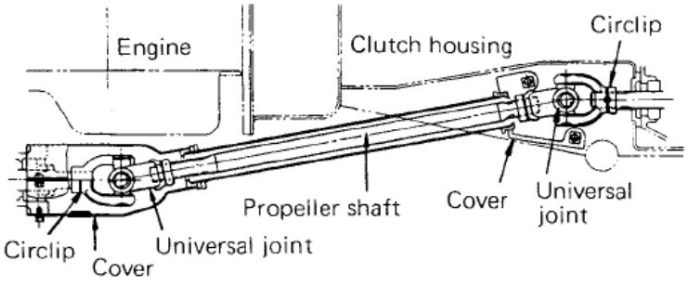
To take down the transmission, remove the bolts fastening the transmission case to the clutch housing: it is not necessary to take down the engine.

If, for one reason or another, the engine has to be taken down from the machine, refer to the removal procedure set forth for the clutch housing.

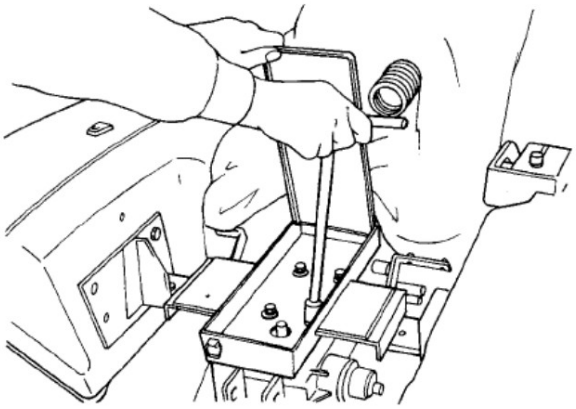
(1) Remove drain plugs, right and left, on transmission case at its rear part. Be sure to drain the case completely.



(2) Remove bolts securing the covers, front and rear, of 4-wheel drive universal joints, take off the covers, pick out circlips and pins, and remove the joint.



(3) Remove tool box and seat together.



(4) Place a jack under the rear part of transmission case, and take up the weight of the case with the jack. Loosen rear wheel bolts, jack up the rear axle at both ends, and take off the rear wheels. Take out the jack supporting the rear part of transmission case.

(5) Remove fenders and covers, right and left.

(6) From each brake cam arm, disconnect brake rod.

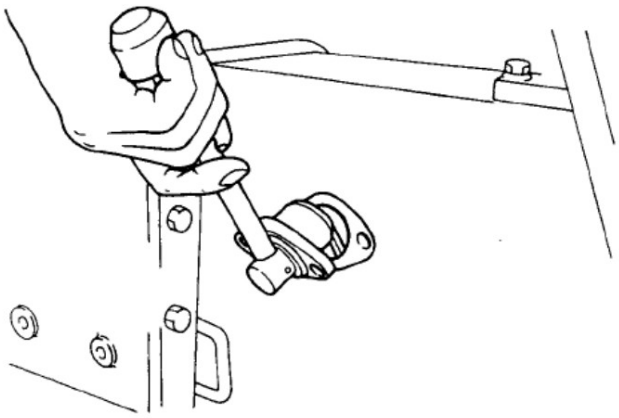
(7) Remove steps and foot covers, right and left, taking care not to injure the return springs for clutch pedal and brake pedals.

(8) Remove hydraulic pipe clamp on the left-hand side of clutch housing, and disconnect suction pipe from the left part of transmission case. (The suction pipe is secured by bolts.) From the hydraulic case, remove union bolt, by which the pressure pipe is secured to this case.

NOTE

Be sure to recover the seal washers used on the union bolt.

(9) Remove from the right-hand side of clutch housing the shift lever for 4-wheel drive.



(10) Remove 3-point link bracket.

(11) Place two jacks under the machine to support clutch housing and transmission case, remove the bolts securing the two together, and separate them carefully.

(12) Using a lifting sling and a hoist, lift the transmission out of the machine, and set it on the work stand.

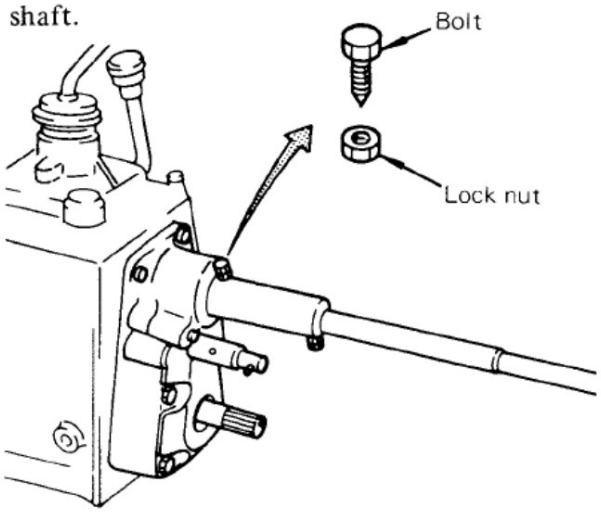
(13) Remove the bolts securing the hydraulic case to the transmission case, and take off the former case.

(14) Remove the cover, in which the shift mechanism is built.

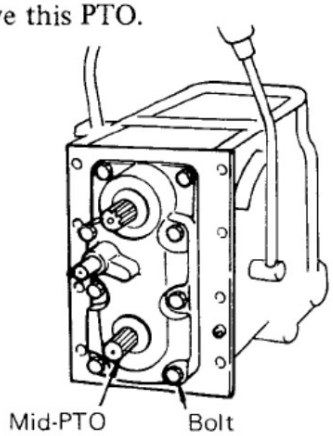
NOTE

This cover and also the hydraulic case are of an aluminum alloy: do not hammer them. They must be handled with care so as to avoid distortion, dent or any other damage.

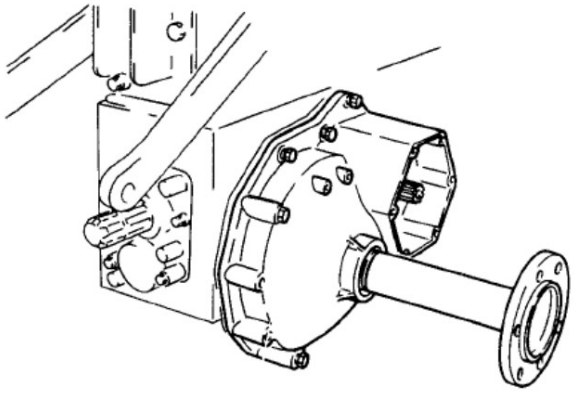
(15) Loosen set bolt on the drive shaft of the coupling between drive shaft and main shaft, and separate and remove main shaft, complete with the coupling, from drive shaft.



(16) Loosen bolts securing the mid-PTO, and remove this PTO.



(17) Loosen bolts securing each final case to the transmission case, and remove the two cases, right and left.



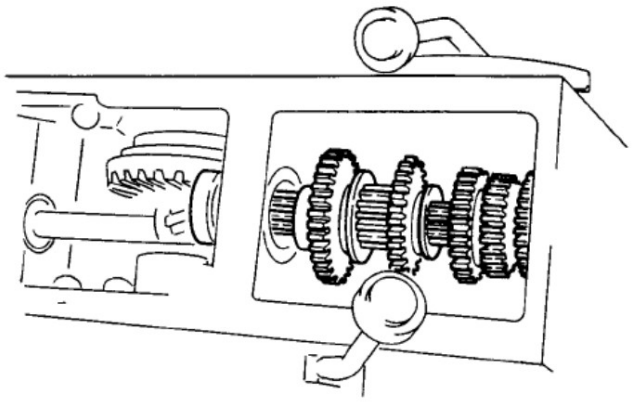
NOTE

Sealant is used in the joint between transmission case and final case. For this reason, the final cases may not separate easily from transmission case. Driving a chisel-like tool into the joint is sure to damage the case, which is made of an aluminum alloy. A soft-metal hammer may be used on the wheel boss in an attempt to sever it from the transmission case but be careful not to give strong hammer blows to the case.

Disassembling the select shaft

Disassembly of this shaft can be effected with the transmission in place: the two parts to be removed in order to allow the shaft to be disassembled are the hydraulic case and the cover on shifting mechanism.

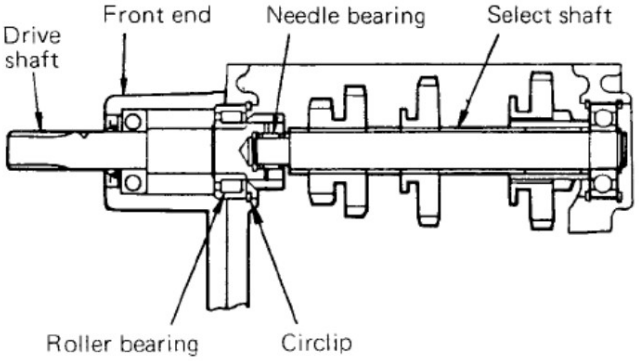
Pick out circlip on the rear portion of select shaft; drive on its forward end lightly; and pull it out with its rear portion foremost while taking out its gears. As necessary, remove ball bearing after picking out its circlip.



NOTE

Pay attention to the needle bearing and collar on the drive shaft.

Disassembling the drive shaft



Drive shaft comes out easily from the front end of transmission case when mid-PTO has been removed. Just pull out drive shaft. As necessary, remove roller bearing on drive shaft: a circlip must be taken out to allow this bearing to come off.

NOTE

Pay attention to the needle bearing fitted into drive shaft gear.

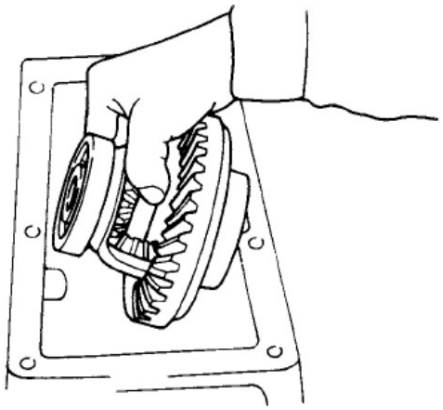
Removing the differential gear assembly

(1) Remove bearing holders, right and left, from transmission case. The bolts securing these holders are locked with stopper plates: be sure to straighten these plates and, after loosening the bolts, ease the holder off by putting the tip of a plain screwdriver to the notch formed of the holder.

NOTE

When taking out the differential gear assembly, be sure to recover the shim used for backlash adjustment and to check the shim thickness and the number of shim pieces used. The same shim must be re-used in reassembly if the assembly has not been broken apart and is to be restored in its original condition.

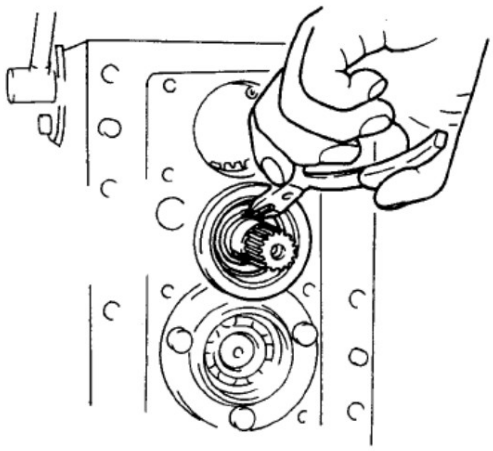
(2) Lift the differential gear assembly out of transmission case.



Disassembling the countershaft

(1) Straighten the tab washer under sleeve nut, loosen the nut and remove tapered roller bearing.

(2) Pick out circlip on the forward part of countershaft and, while lightly driving on its forward end, force the shaft out to the rear, taking out the gears, collars, needle bearings and thrust washers, one by one, as the shaft comes out.



(3) Draw the inner race of tapered roller bearing off countershaft.

Disassembling the reverse shaft

(1) Remove the reverse shaft seal case from the front end of transmission case.

(2) Pull out spring pin from reverse shaft lock and, while displacing the circlips, pull reverse shaft out from the front end. Remove circlips and needle bearings from reverse shaft.

Disassembling the PTO shaft

PTO shaft can be removed with the transmission in place, provided that the hydraulic case be removed in advance. It is here assumed that this case has been taken down.

(1) Loosen bolts securing the cover to the rear end of transmission case, and remove the cover.

(2) Pick out circlip on the forward end portion of PTO shaft; lightly drive on the end face of PTO shaft and, while drawing it out, take out its gear. As necessary, remove ball bearings from PTO shaft, and oil seals from the cover.

Disassembling the PTO drive shaft

This drive shaft is in two parts: rear-side part and front-side part. Removal of rear-side shaft, too, can be effected with the transmission in place, after PTO shaft has been taken out.

<Rear-side shaft removal>

(1) Ease out circlip on ball bearing inside transmission case.

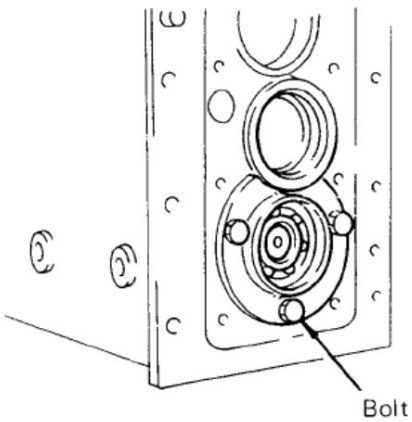
(2) Draw rear-side shaft toward the rear, with a screwdriver hitched to ball bearing on the rear side.

(3) When rear-side shaft is halfway out, pick out circlip on the front side and the one already eased out of the groove next to ball bearing. With these circlips removed, draw out the shaft from transmission case.

<Front-side shaft removal>

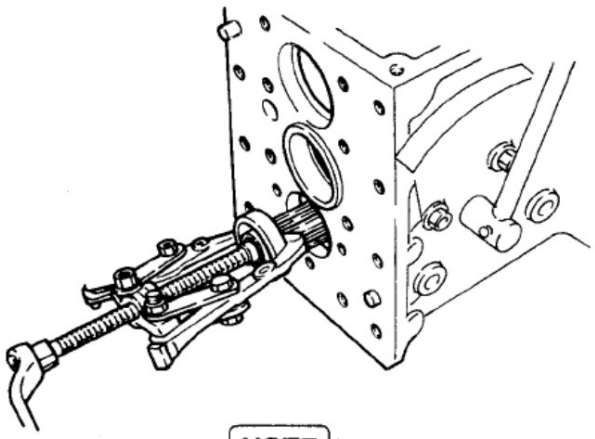
To permit removal of this shaft, transmission case must be off clutch housing, and both countershaft and rear-side part of PTO drive shaft must be out.

(1) Remove bearing holder on the front end of transmission case.



(2) Draw out the front-side shaft from the front end.

(3) Remove ball bearing (on the forward part of the front-side shaft so drawn out). Remove the shaft complete with gear 30T and gear 20T-26T from the upper side of transmission case.



NOTE

Remove the other ball bearing from the front-side shaft as necessary.

Disassembling the differential gear assembly

(1) Give match marks to differential gear case and spiral gear.

(2) Straighten the stopper washers under the heads of bolts securing the spiral gear, remove the bolts and take off spiral gear.

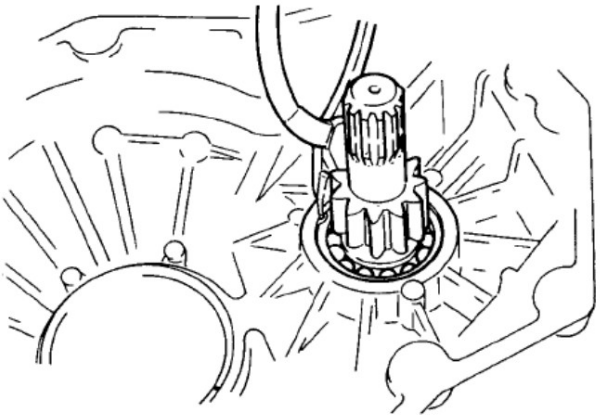
(3) Pull off locking pin from center pin, draw out the pin, and take out pinion gears, side gears and thrust liners.

Disassembling the final cases

After removing the two final cases from transmission case and detaching brake cover and drum from each, proceed as follows:

<Differential shaft>

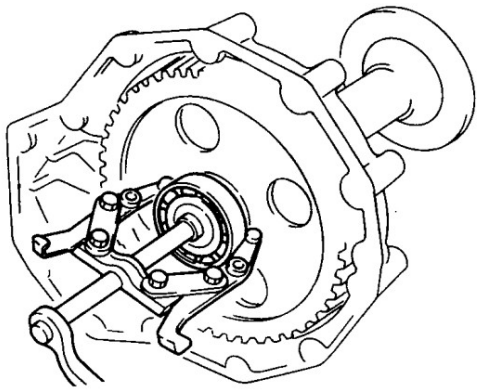
(1) Pick out circlip, remove pinion shaft (it may be necessary to lightly tap on this shaft), and draw out oil seal bushing together with ball bearing.



(2) From the right final case, remove differential lock shifter: loosening the nut allows the shifter to come off.

<Rear wheel shaft>

(1) Draw out ball bearing, and remove collar and final reduction gear.



(2) Pick out two circlips and drive rear wheel shaft out of final case.

Disassembling the mid-PTO

Draw out the mid-PTO shaft and remove ball bearings and gears together. There is no unusual step involved in this disassembly.

REASSEMBLY AND INSTALLATION

(1) Before starting the reassembly work, be sure that all transmission parts are perfectly clean, check to be sure that there is no missing parts, and, when building up sub-assemblies, refer to the specifications and assembly standards to make sure that each sub-assembly is properly built up with respect to gaps, running clearances, plays, backlashes, etc.

(2) Oil or grease sliding surfaces, as necessary, at the time of installing moving parts. Similarly, grease "O" rings, oil seals and the like just before fitting them.

(3) It is advisable but not mandatory that "O" rings, gaskets, packings, oil seals, tab washers and the like be regarded as expendable items and be replaced by new ones upon their removal in disassembly.

(4) Wrap through-bolts with sealing tape just before using them in reassembly.

(5) Have sealant on hand and use it on the mating faces of cases and covers.

(6) Build up the transmission in the following sequence:

(a) Differential gear reassembly

(b) Determination of shim thickness on the basis of countershaft cone center measurement

(c) PTO drive shaft (rear-side) reassembly

(d) PTO drive shaft (front-side) reassembly

(e) PTO shaft reassembly

(f) Reverse shaft reassembly

(g) Countershaft reassembly

(h) PTO gear tooth alignment and adjustment

(i) Mid-PTO shaft reassembly

(j) Main shaft installation

(k) Select shaft reassembly

(l) Differential gear installation

(m) Final case reassembly

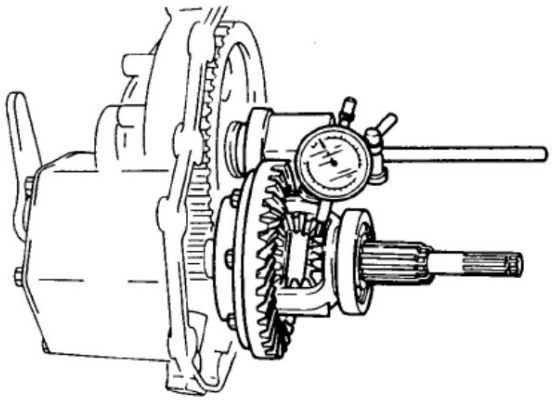
(n) Final case installation.

(o) Speed change shifter reassembly

Reassembling the differential gear assembly

(1) Oil thrust liners, fit the liners to the differential gear case, install side gears, position pinion gears in place, together with liners, and insert center pin.

(2) Adjust the thickness of thrust liners, as necessary, to secure a backlash of 0.25 to 0.35 mm (0.010 to 0.014 in.) between pinion gear and side gear.



Backlash	0.25 ~ 0.35 mm (0.010 ~ 0.014 in.)

Shim stock for this backlash adjustment is available in the following thicknesses:

Unit: mm(in.)

Thickness	Part No.
1.2 (0.047)	1135 1408 001
1.4 (0.055)	1135 1409 001
1.6 (0.063)	1135 1411 001

(3) After producing the specified backlash, drive lock pin into center pin to lock the latter pin. Insert differential shaft and rotate the differential by hand to be sure that it rolls smoothly.

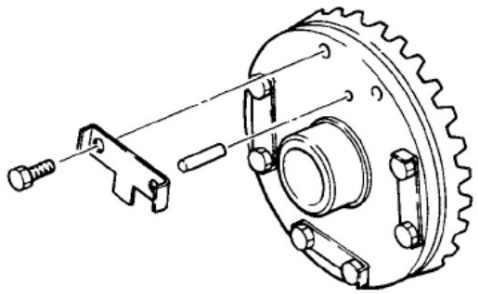
(4) Fit spiral gear to the case, as guided by the

match marks, setting the gear in its original position, put on stopper washers and bolt the gear to the case, tightening the bolts to this torque value:

Tightening torque	2.5 ~ 3.0 kg-m (18 ~ 22 ft-lb)

NOTE

Stopper washer A (Part number 1135 1405 000) has a lug formed as shown. Position this washer in such a way that the lug will cover up the spring pin locking the center spring.



(5) Install ball bearings in the differential case.

Measuring the countershaft cone center for shim selection

(1) In the bore provided in the transmission case wall, through which the countershaft is to enter, set circlip, and fit the outer race of tapered roller bearing. Be sure to discriminate between the inside end face and the outside end face of this race.

(2) Mount the inner race of tapered roller bearing on countershaft.

(3) Position countershaft in place, install the other tapered roller bearing on the front side, and secure it by tightening sleeve nut. Check to be sure that the countershaft so secured has no end play. Remember, cone center measurement with the use of a special tool presumes absence of end play on this shaft. Select the shim thickness, in the manner explained, to obtain this value:

Countershaft cone center	77 ± 0.05 mm (3.031 ± 0.002 in.)

How to use the two-piece special tool

Set tool A on the seats (formed of transmission case) for the bearing holders of differential gear case. Position tool B between the end face of pinion (of countershaft) and tool A in place.

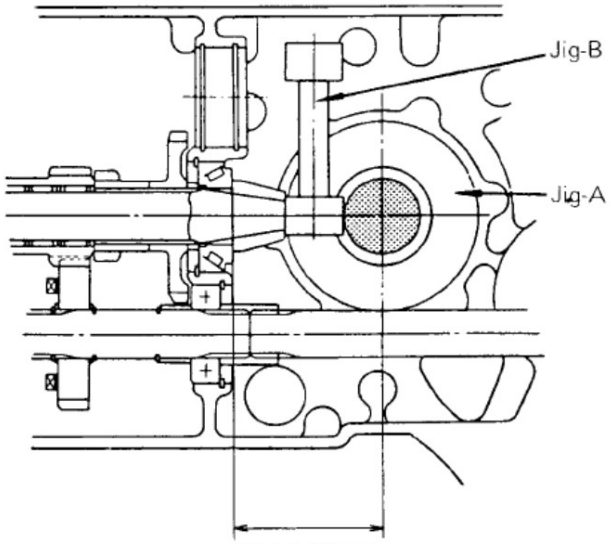
Select the shim thickness that permits the small-diameter end of tool B to enter freely and prevents the large-diameter end from entering. The shim so selected is to be inserted between the outer race of tapered roller bearing and the circlip at the time of reassembling the countershaft.

Shim stock for this selection is available in the following thicknesses:

Unit: mm (in.)

Thickness	Part No.
Shim set, drive shaft	1019 1309 000
0.1 (0.004)	1135 1315 011
0.2 (0.008)	1135 1316 011
0.5 (0.020)	1135 1317 011

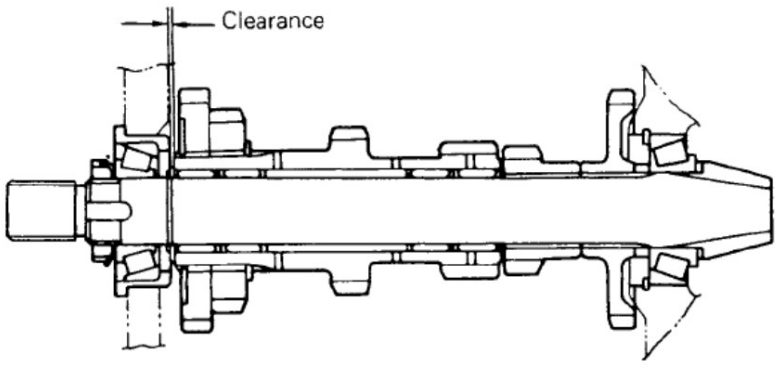
The required shim thickness is equal to the clearance which occurs when the small-dia. tool B is placed between pinion gear and tool A.

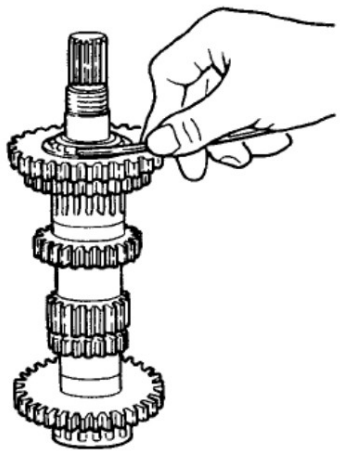


Shim selection for countershaft gear clearance

The thickness of shim to be placed between the collar and gear 34T at the time of reassembling the countershaft must be determined in advance.

On the countershaft complete with tapered roller bearing, mount the collar, gear 34T, gear 17T, thrust liner, gear 18T-23T, gear 29T, gear 31T, needle bearings, collar, needle bearings, thrust liner – all in that order – and, as the last part, circlip next to the thrust liner. Under this condition, measure the clearance between the last circlip and the thrust liner, and on the basis of this reading, select the shim that will give the clearance to be anywhere between 0.1 and 0.4 mm (0.004 and 0.016 in.).



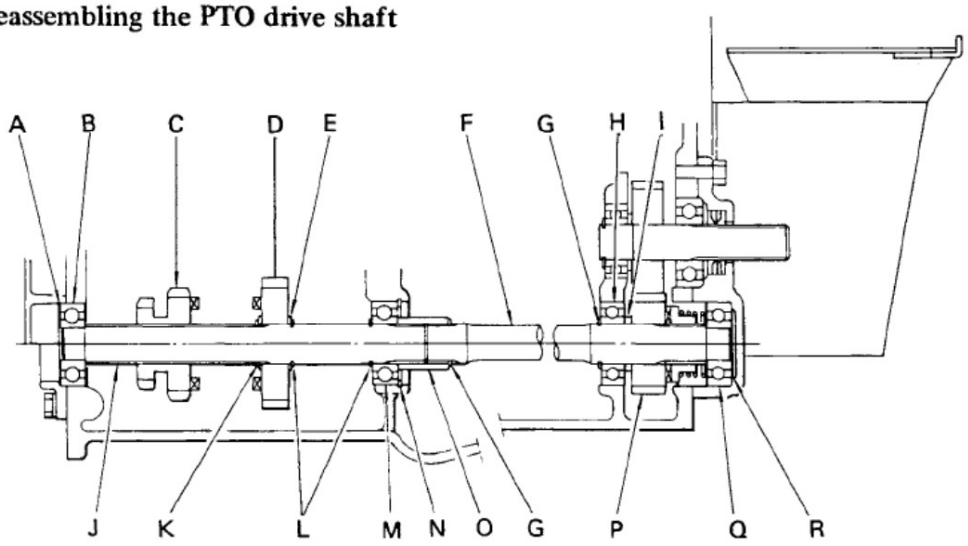


Shim stock for this adjustment is available in two thicknesses:

Unit: mm (in.)

Thickness	Part No.
0.2 (0.008)	1135 1314 011
0.4 (0.016)	1135 1318 000

Reassembling the PTO drive shaft



A-Liner (t=1.0, 0.4)
B-Ball bearing
C-Gear (20T-26T)
D-Gear (30T)
E-Liner
F-PTO drive shaft
G-Circlip
H-Ball bearing
I-Collar
J-Shaft
K-Circlip
L-Circlip
M-Ball bearing
N-Circlip
O-Collar
P-Gear (23T)
Q-Ball bearing
R-Circlip

<Rear-side shaft>

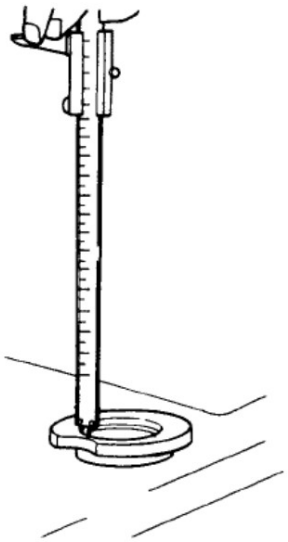
(1) Install circlip(N) in the bore for ball bearing. (M)This bearing is the one at the middle of transmission case. Fit two circlip (G) to the groove provided in rear-side shaft.(F)

(2) Push ball bearing (H) onto rear-side shaft, bringing the bearing all the way until it meets the circlip (G) on the rear end. Installing the shaft (F) in transmission case, mount collar (I) and gear 23T (P), with its claws coming on the rear side.

(3) Fit the collar (O) to the shaft, (F) making sure the splined fit is smooth.

<Front-side shaft>

(1) Grease "O" ring and fit it to PTO shifter. Install the shifter by bringing it into transmission case.

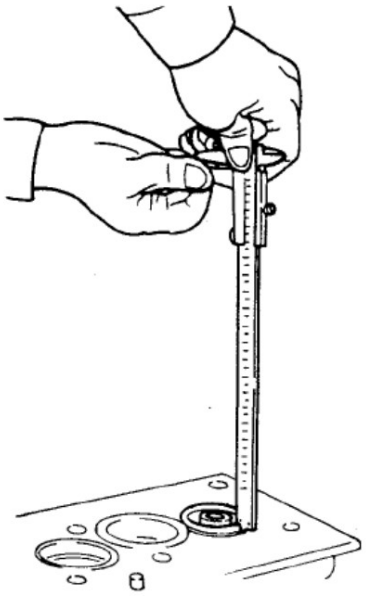


(2) Install circlip (L) on the rear portion of front-side shaft, (J) and mount the inner race of ball bearing. (M)

(3) Set circlip (D on that part of front-side shaft where gear 30T takes its position. Mount thrust liner (E)and gear 30T (be sure to locate its clutching claws on the correct side), fit thrust liner, (E) and retain them by installing circlip. (K)

(4) Put on gear 20T-26T, locating the claws on the correct side, and feed the front-side shaft into transmission case.

(5) Set the shifter on gear 20T-26T, and position the shaft (J) and shifter in place, and install ball bearing (B) on front side.



(6) Measure the amount by which the ball bearing (B) protrudes from transmission case and also the depth from bearing holder flange face to the bearing. On the basis of the readings, determine the liner(A)thickness necessary to reduce the clearance to less than 0.4 mm (0.016 in.), insert the needed liner between bearing holder and ball bearing, and secure these parts in place.

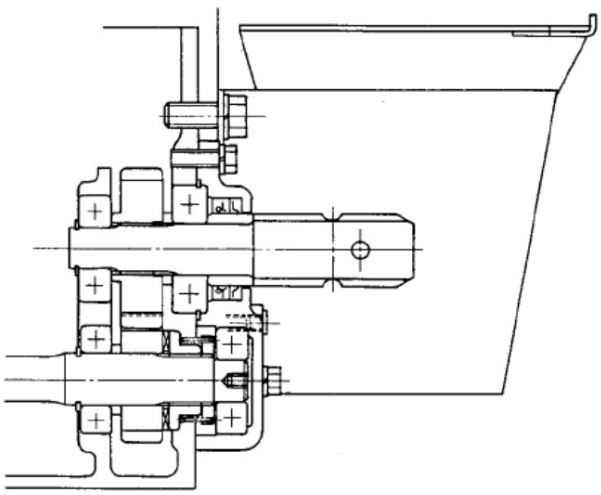
PTO drive shaft end play	0.4 mm (0.016 in.), maximum
Tightening torque	2.5 ~ 3.0 kg-m (18 ~ 22 ft-lb)

For this adjustment, use the liner (A) of the following thicknesses:

Unit: mm (in.)

Thickness	Part No.
Shim set, PTO	1974 1617 000
0.4 (0.016)	0730 0005 204
1.0 (0.039)	0730 0005 210

Reassembling the PTO shaft



(1) Install oil seal collar on PTO shaft, with the chamfered face of the collar coming on the front side.

(2) Install ball bearing on PTO shaft, positioning the bearing in such a way that its circlip comes on the outer side and, through the rear end of transmission case, install the PTO shaft and then install collar and gear 27T on it.

(3) Grease oil seal, and fit the seal to the cover.

(4) Through the rear end of transmission case, install one-way clutch on PTO drive shaft.

(5) Insert spring and washer, and install ball bearing.

(6) Apply sealant to the cover, and install the cover from the rear end of transmission case.

NOTE

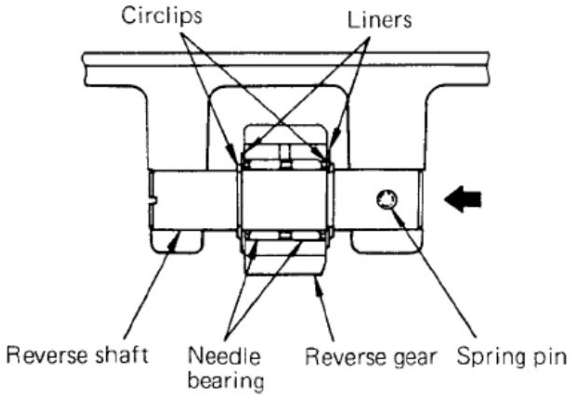
Wrap through-bolts with sealing tape.

Tightening torque	2.5 ~ 3.0 kg-m (18 ~ 22 ft-lb)

(7) To the front end of PTO shaft, fit ball bearing and retain it by installing circlip.

(8) Turn the shaft by hand to make sure that one-way clutch operates accurately and that the shaft rotates smoothly.

Reassembling the reverse shaft

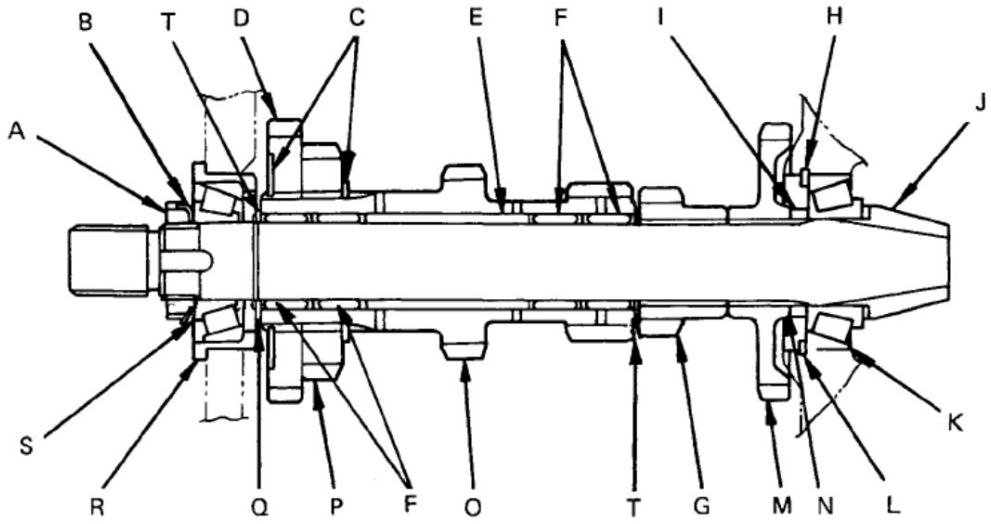


(1) Through the hole provided in the front end wall of transmission case, insert reverse shaft and, while pushing the shaft gradually, install it on the circlip, thrust liner, reverse gear complete with needle bearings, thrust liner and circlip, in that order. With the reverse shaft set in place, align the spring pin hole, and drive the pin into the hole to lock the shaft.

(2) Spin the gear by hand and be sure that it is capable of smooth rotation.

(3) Drive the seal cap into the hole in the front end wall of transmission case, making sure that the cap is flush with or down from the end surface.

Reassembling the countershaft



A-Nut
B-Washer
C-Circlip
D-Gear (31T)
E-Collar
F-Needle bearing
G-Gear (17T)
H-Circlip
I-Collar
J-Countershaft
K-Tapered roller bearing
N-Shim
M-Gear (34T)
N-Liner
O-Gear (18T-23T)
P-Gear (29T)
Q-Circlip
R-Holder
S-Tapered roller bearing
T-Liner

(1) Insert the shim (L)(which has been selected on the basis of cone center measurement) between the circlip (H) and the outer race of tapered roller bearing (K) in the wall of transmission case.

(2) Insert countershaft (J) (to which tapered roller bearing (K) has been mounted) into transmission case through its rear end. Place the shim (N) (which has been selected on the basis of the clearance measured on countershaft gear) between collar (I) and gear 34T (M). Mount on the countershaft being inserted with the following parts: gear 17T (G), thrust liner (T), gear 18T-23T (O), gear 29T (P), gear 31T (D), needle bearings (F), collar (E), needle bearings (F), and thrust liner (T), in that order. Retain these parts by installing circlip (Q).

NOTE

These gears have their tooth ends chamfered. Be sure to bring the chamfered end to the side shown in the sectional view.

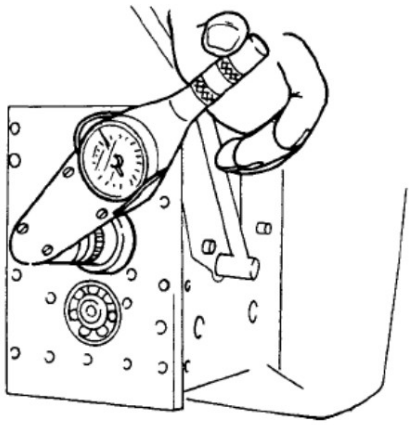
(3) Install the outer race of tapered roller bearing (S) in the holder (R) fitted to the transmission case. Mount tapered roller bearing on countershaft and secure the countershaft in place by tightening its sleeve nut (A). Be sure to use tab washer (B) on this nut.

NOTE

When fitting the outer race, be sure to discriminate its inner end and outer end.

(4) Tap lightly on each end of countershaft in place, and make sure that there is no end play on this shaft. Measure the preload of countershaft and, as necessary, adjust the tightness of its bearings to produce the specified preload.

Countershaft preload	0.08 ~ 0.10 kg-m (0.58 ~ 0.73 ft-lb)



(5) With a proper preload obtained, lock the sleeve nut by bending tab washer sharply.

PTO gear tooth alignment and adjustment

(1) Tentatively secure guide plate to transmission case.

(2) Fit stopper spring and stopper ball to PTO shift lever: grease the ball before inserting it. Attach shift lever to PTO shifter, and lock the lever by inserting spring pin.

(3) Operate the shift lever to see if the teeth of PTO gear and counter gear are properly aligned; if not, align them by shifting the guide plate on transmission case. After making sure that the shifting action is satisfactory, secure guide plate permanently by tightening to this torque value:

Tightening torque	2.5 ~ 3.0 kg-m (18 ~ 22 ft-lb)

Reassembling the mid-PTO

(1) Grease oil seal, and fit the seal to mid-PTO case.

(2) Set 4-WD shifter-shaft stopper spring and stopper ball in mid-PTO case. Grease "O" ring, and install "O" ring and circlip on shifter shaft. Install the shaft in mid-PTO case, and drive spring pin into the forward end of shifter shaft.

(3) Mount the roller-bearing(C) inner race on drive shaft,(J)brining the flanged end of the race to the opposite side of the gear, and retain the inner race by fitting circlip.(B) Refer to the upper figure on the page 5-19.

(4) Push in the ball bearing on mid PTO shaft. Install gear with its longer boss coming on the front side. Push in the ball bearing on the shaft.

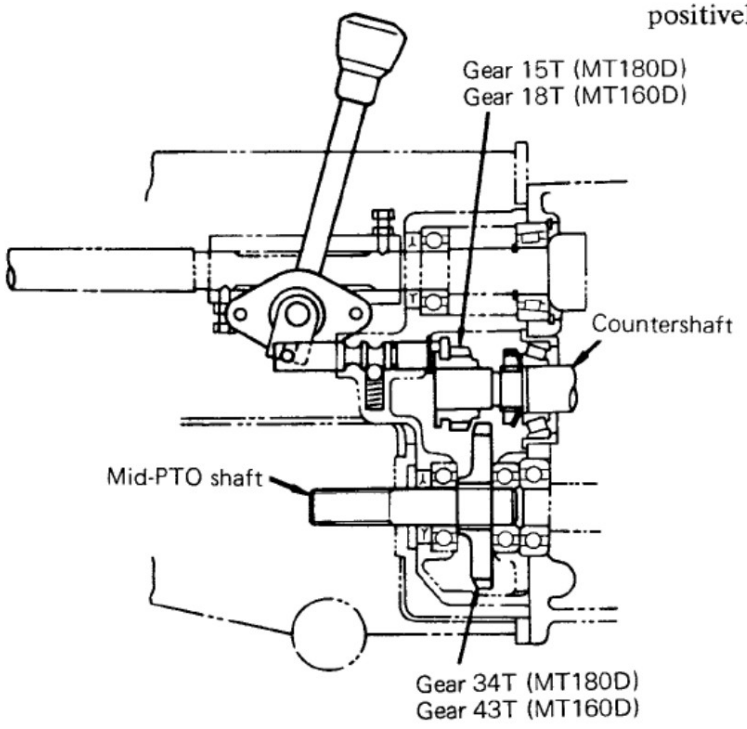
(5) Install PTO shaft and drive shaft in the mid-PTO case.

(6) Mount gear 15T for 180D and 18T for 160D, positioning it properly relative to the fork of shifter shaft. Apply sealant to the mating face of mid-PTO case and fit it to transmission case. Secure the mid-PTO case by tightening its bolts to this torque value:

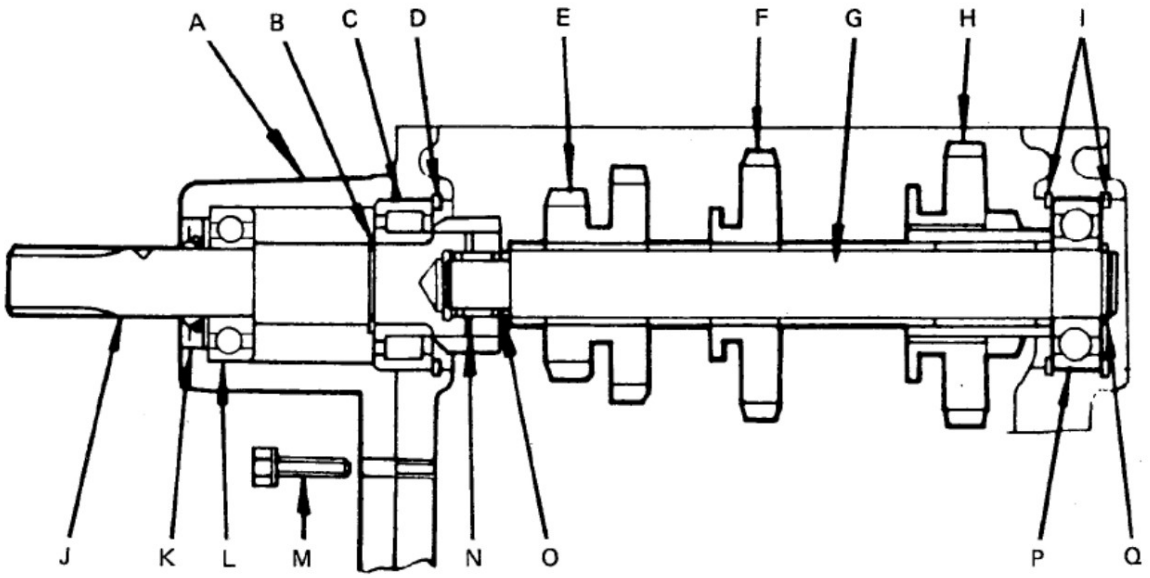
Tightening torque	2.5 ~ 3.0 kg-m (18 ~ 22 ft-lb)

Installing the main shaft

Fit the coupling to the main shaft, and connect this shaft to drive shaft. Be sure to lock the main shaft securely by means of set bolt. After tightening the set bolt, lock it positively.



Reassembling the select shaft



A-Bearing holder	F-Gear (32T)	K-Oil seal	P-Ball bearing
B-Circlip	G-Select shaft	L-Ball bearing	Q-Circlip
C-Roller bearing	H-Gear (15T-33T)	M-Bolt	
D-Circlip	I-Circlip	N-Needle bearing	
E-Gear (20T-27T)	J-Drive shaft	O-Collar	

(1) Install high-low shifter in transmission case. Grease "O" ring, and fit it to shifter at its portion outside of the case while pushing it against the case.

(2) Push in the shifter all the way, fit the plate to the case, and tighten its bolts tentatively, leaving them finger-tight.

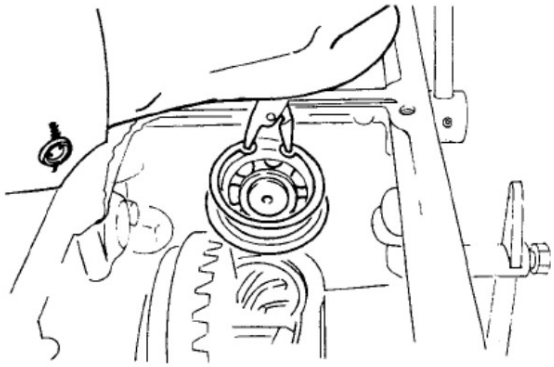
(3) Fit ball bearing (P) to select shaft (G), and put on circlip to retain the bearing (Q).

(4) Install circlip (I) in the hole provided in the wall of transmission case for select shaft.

(5) While inserting select shaft (G) through the rear end of transmission case, mount on this shaft the following parts: gear 15T-33T (H), gear 32T (F) (bring their shifter fork grooves on the front side) and gear 20T-27T (E) (bring gear 20T on the front side). Set shifter in the fork grooves of gear 15T-33T (H).

(6) Fit collar (O) and needle bearing (N) to the forward part of select shaft (G), and connect this part of select shaft to drive shaft (J). Be sure to oil the needle bearing (N) before installing it.

(7) Install circlip (I) in the circlip groove provided in the wall of transmission case to retain the ball bearing on the rear part of select shaft and set the select shaft.



NOTE

Be sure to position the gears in place as shown. Discriminate the two ends of the gear: one end is chamfered but the other is not. "Hard shifting" is often due to these gears positioned the other way around.

(8) Move the installed parts by hand to be sure that select shaft is capable of smooth

rotation and that each gear is capable of smooth sliding motion.

(9) Fit stopper spring and ball to high-low selector lever: grease ball before inserting it. Connect the lever to shifter shaft, and secure the connection by driving in spring pin.

(10) Bring the gear 34T and the gear 17T on countershaft into correct positional relationship with the gear 15T-33T in reference to their faces, by adjusting the guide plate on transmission case. After this adjustment, secure the plate permanently by tightening its bolts to this torque value:

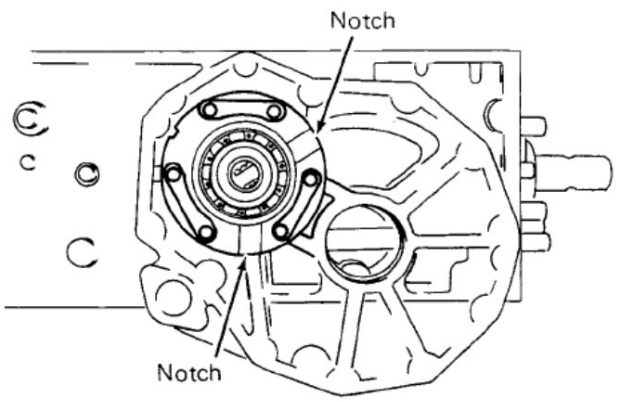
Tightening torque	2.5 ~ 3.0 kg-m (18 ~ 22 ft-lb)

(11) Attach the knob to high-low selector lever. Operate the lever in the usual manner to make sure that shifting action is smooth and positive.

Installing the differential gear assembly

(1) The differential gear assembly is already in built-up condition at this stage, complete with the ring gear. Lower it into transmission case, with the ring gear coming on the left side.

(2) Position the two bearing holders (differing in length) in place, seating each holder correctly by matching its notch to the corresponding one formed of case. The long holder comes on the right side, and the short one on the left.



NOTE

Bear in mind that, if the holders are not positioned correctly as dictated by the matching notches, interference occurs between final gear and bearing holder. The final case might break if the case is secured under this condition (interference between holder and gear.)

(3) Tentatively tighten the two bearing holders in place, right and left, on transmission case, making their securing bolts snug-tight. Be sure that stopper washers are used on these bolts.

(4) Using the below-indicated sizes (thicknesses) of shim stock (liner), adjust the ring gear backlash to the specification in the manner hereunder described:

Ring gear backlash	0.25 ~ 0.35 mm (0.01 ~ 0.014 in.)

Shim stock for ring gear backlash adjustment

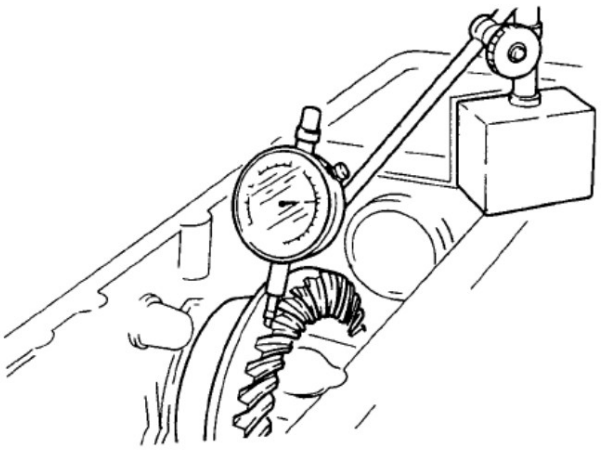
Unit: mm (in.)

Thickness	Part No.
Shim set	1019 1425 000
0.2 (0.008)	1135 1419 000
0.3 (0.012)	1135 1421 000
0.5 (0.020)	1135 1422 000

(a) Insert the liner between transmission case and left-side bearing holder. Be sure that the individual shims (each consisting of one or more sheets) of the liner are equal in thickness. This requirement is met by using the same number of shim sheets. The liner here is tentative and need not be exact in thickness, but make sure that the clearance is filled up uniformly all around.

(b) Tighten the left-side holder (which is now sided by the tentative liner) good and hard, but leave the right-side holder in snug-tight condition. Take a backlash reading, as shown, to see if the backlash is within the specified range indicated above; if not, loosen the left-side holder

and increase or decrease the thickness of the liner there.

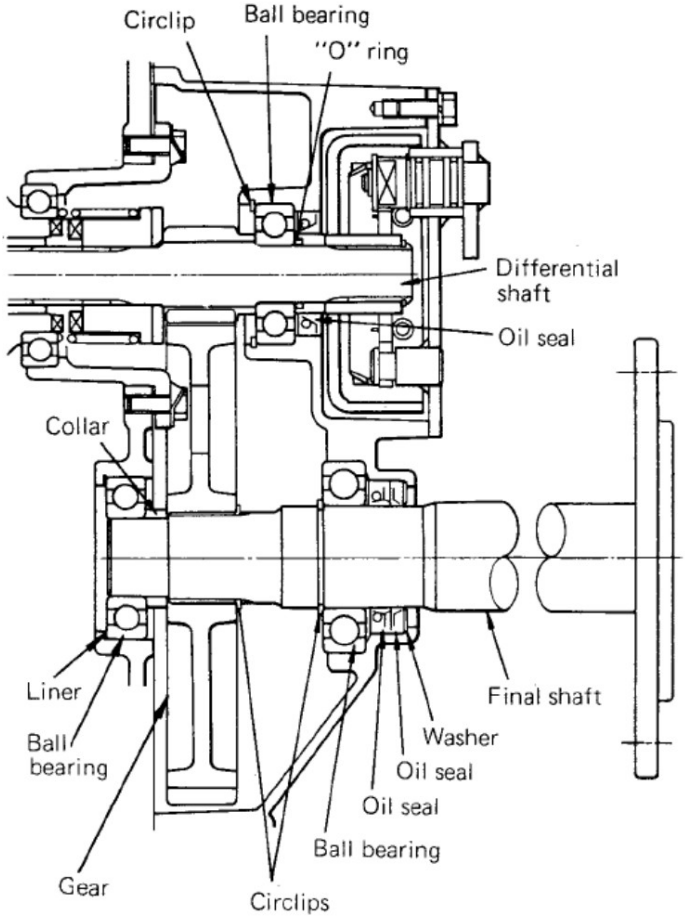


(c) A proper backlash having been secured, measure the clearance between the right-side holder and case, and fill the clearance with another liner equal in thickness to the reading. This liner, too, is to be formed in the same way as above. Put on stopper washers and tighten the right-side holder.

(d) Tap lightly on the differential gear case in place, directing the tapping force leftward and rightward to be sure that this case has no end play. Re-check the backlash and, upon noting that it is within the specified range, lock the bolts securing the bearing holders, right and left, by bending stopper washers sharply. The holder bolts are to be tightened to this torque value:

Tightening torque	2.5 ~ 3.0 kg-m (18 ~ 22 ft-lb)

Reassembling the final case



(1) Grease oil seals, and fit the seals to those parts of final case admitting differential shaft and final shaft. For the final shaft, however, a washer must be installed before fitting the oil seal.

(2) Press ball bearing onto differential shaft. Grease "O" ring and fit it to oil seal collar. Feed the collar onto differential shaft, with its "O" ring coming next to the ball bearing.

(3) Insert differential shaft into final case, and set it in place by fitting circlip.

(4) Position final shaft in final case, fit ball bearing by pressing, and retain the bearing by installing circlip.

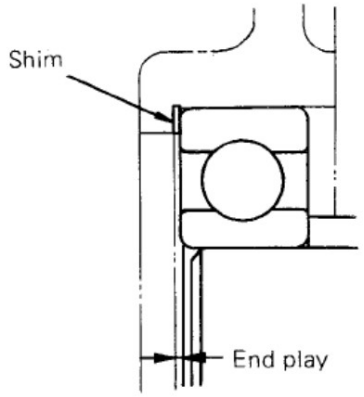
NOTE

When forcing the bearing in, be sure to apply the push to its inner race.

(5) Install circlip (for final gear stopper) on final shaft, mount final gear and collar, and press in ball bearing.

(6) Take two measurements: 1) height of ball bearing face above the seat formed of transmission case for final case, and 2) distance from transmission case face to ball bearing holder. On the basis of these two measurements, determine the shim (liner) thickness necessary for giving an end play of 0.0 to 0.4 mm (0.0 to 0.016 in.) to final shaft. The liner with the determined thickness is to be used on ball bearing holder.

Final shaft end play	0.0 ~ 0.4 mm (0.0 ~ 0.016 in.)



(7) Apply sealant to the mating face of final case, fit the case to transmission case, and secure it by tightening its bolts to this torque value:

Tightening torque	5.0 ~ 6.0 kg-m (36 ~ 43 ft-lb)

NOTE

The right-side final case must be complete with differential lock shifter and lock sleeve: the shifter must be installed before inserting differential shaft into the case.

SPEED CHANGE SHIFTER

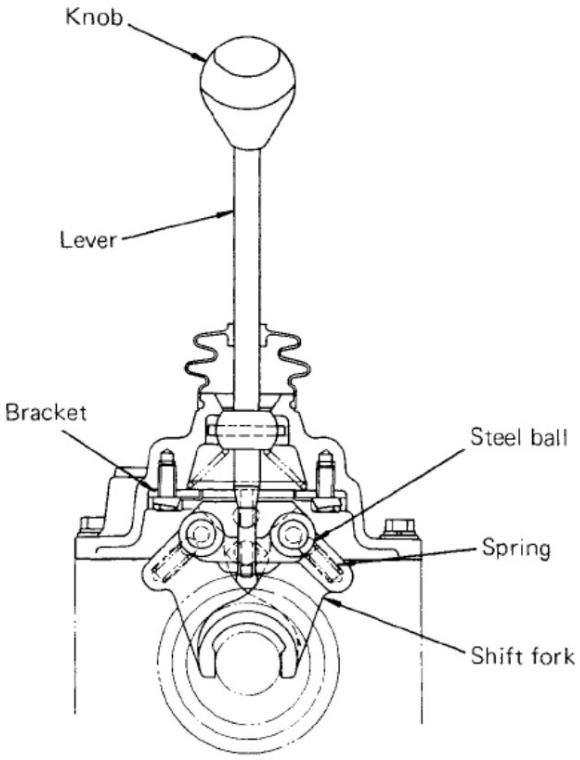
Disassembling the speed change shifter

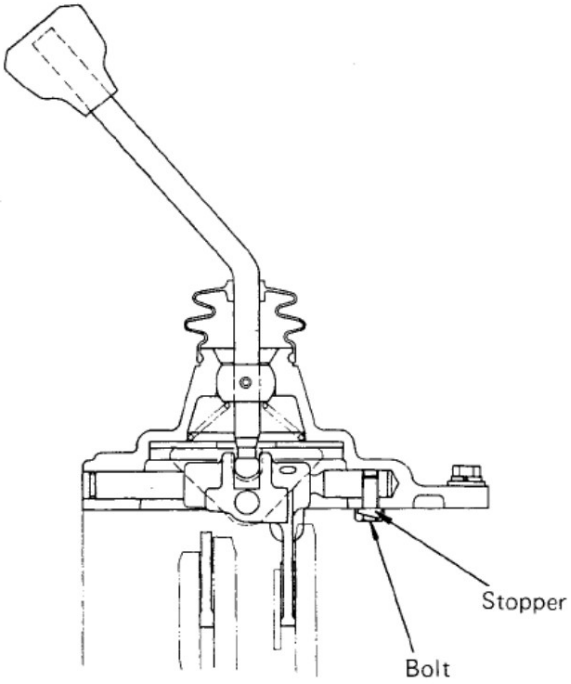
Disassemble the shift mechanism, which has been removed from the transmission, by proceeding as follows:

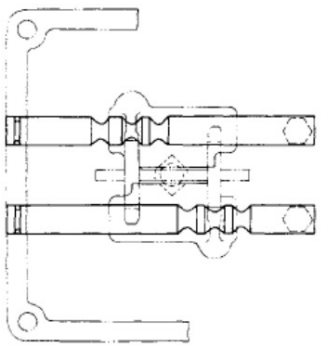
(1) Loosen set bolts on the two shifter shafts, right and left. Each set bolt is locked by stopper washer: straighten the locking portion of the washer and loosen the bolts.

(2) Draw out each shifter shaft from the front side by pulling, and remove shift fork, steel ball and stopper spring.

(3) Loosen bolts securing the bracket, take off bracket, remove knob from speed change lever, and take out the lever.







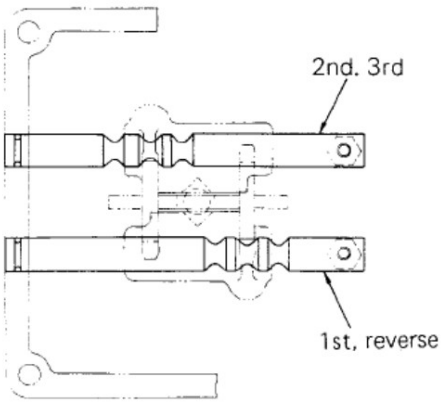
Reassembling the speed change shifter

(1) Insert speed change lever into cover, attach spring, and position bracket in place. Put on stopper washer and tighten the bracket securing bolts to the torque value indicated below, and lock the bolts by bending the stopper washer.

Tightening torque	2.5 ~ 3.0 kg-m (18 ~ 22 ft-lb)

(2) Insert stopper springs and steel balls into the two shifter forks.

(3) Grease "O" ring and fit it to shifter shaft. Of the two shifter shafts, the distance between the two grooves (one for "O" ring and the other for stopper ball) tells the difference between the two, 1st-reverse shaft and 2nd-3rd shaft. The distance is longer on 1st-reverse shaft, as shown in this illustration:



(4) Mount shifter fork on the rear part of 1st-reverse shifter shaft, and install the shaft in the cover.

(5) Mount shifter fork on the front part of 2nd-3rd shifter shaft, and install the shaft in the cover.

(6) Adjust each shifter shaft, aligning the stopper hole through cover and shaft, put on stopper washer and lock after tightening.

NOTE

The transmission case may be filled with oil at this time, provided that the drain plug and hydraulic pipe connection are tight. Oil filling is easier at this stage.

(7) Apply sealant to the mating face of cover, and secure it to transmission case by tightening its securing bolts to this torque value:

Tightening torque	2.5 ~ 3.0 kg-m (18 ~ 22 ft-lb)

Reassembly is reverse of disassembly as far as the sequence of steps is concerned for the following parts: hydraulic case, step boards, brake pedals, fenders, tool box, seat, clutch housing, and 4-wheel drive universal joint covers.

ISO

CHAPTER 5-2
TRANSMISSION SYSTEM

(Hydrostatic Transmission)

5-2

REMARQUES

TABLE OF CONTENTS

REMARQUES

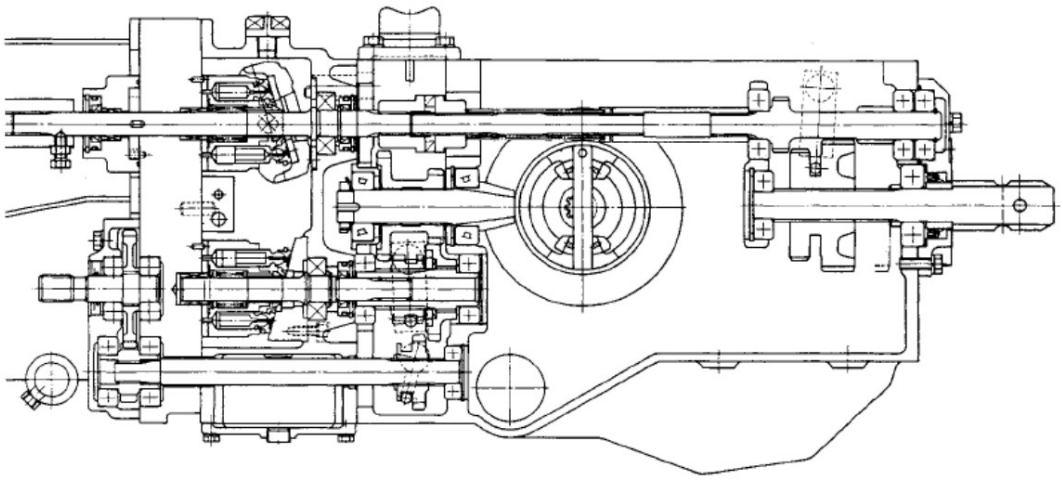
DESCRIPTION

Mitsubishi tractor MT180H/HD is equipped with two types of transmission (hydrostatic transmission and sliding gear type transmission). The hydrostatic transmission (HST) corresponds to the main gear change section in the mechanical type transmission. When changing the gear in the mechanical type transmission, the clutch must be disengaged, but the gear in HST can be changed without disengaging the clutch.
The gear in HST can be set to the stop, forward, and reverse positions with only one lever, and the speed of vehicle can be changed without changing the speed of PTO. The sliding gear type transmission consists of the sub-gear change section (two stages of high and low), differential, final drive, and PTO shaft which is SAE 1-3/8" in size and equipped with PTO overrunning clutch. The employment of HST has facilitated the front loading work, work on mower, etc. in which the gears are frequently changed from forwarding to reverse and vice versa.

NOTE

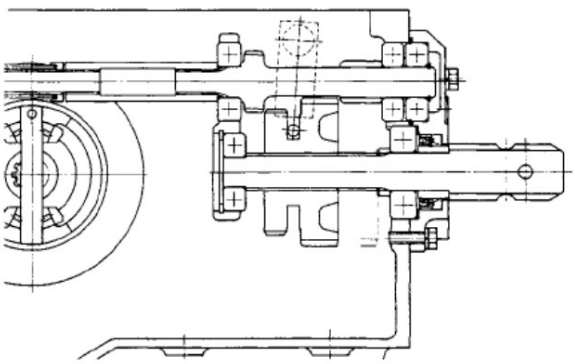
If HST lever is set to the neutral position, and PTO lever to the operating position, PTO shaft continues to rotate. However, if the clutch is disengaged, all the power train is disengaged, and therefore, PTO shaft stops, too.

CONSTRUCTION



Main transmission

This is a stepless hydrostatic transmission (HST). HST does not use gears but use oil to transmit the power of engine to the sub transmission and PTO gear. It is a shuttle transmission with which the forward and reverse positions can be changed easily by moving the lever straight.



The hydraulic circuit of HST is a closed circuit. In the closed circuit, the oil sent out from the cylinders or motors is not returned to the tank but sucked by the pump again.

< Open circuit >

In the open circuit, the oil sent out from the cylinders or motors is returned to the tank, then sucked by the pump.

Function of each section of HST unit and oil flow

(Function of each section)

1. Charge pump

   Althought the circuit is closed, some oil is always lost. This pump supplies the oil by the amount of lost oil. In this HST unit, a trochoid pump is used, which is operated while the engine is running.

2. Low Pressure relief valve

   This is the relief valve of the charge pump. It operates when an excessive load is applied to the charge pump to keep the pressure on

the low pressure side below the specified value and prevent the damage of the charge pump.

3. Cooler

If the temperature of the oil rises, it is deteriorated faster, and the efficiency of HST unit is lowerd. This cooler cools the hydraulic oil to prevent above troubles.

4. Oil filter

The parts of HST are finished accurately, and if dusts (especially metal chips) are mixed into the oil, they are bitten by the valves, etc. and the functions are incomlete. Therefore, the oil must be always cleaned. The oil filter removes the dusts in the hydraulic oil to send clean oil to HST unit.

5. Check valve

This valve prevents the high pressure oil between the pump and the motor from flowing back into the circuit connected to the charge pump to keep the pressure high and protect the charge pump. The oil supplied from the charge pump flows into the main circuit through this valve.

6. High pressure relief valves

Since the high and low pressure sides are changed over as the forward gear and reverse gear are changed, a high pressure relief valve is installed to each circuit. If the load is large and the motor cannot rotate, the high pressure relief valves operate to let the oil flows into the low pressure side and protect the pump and motor from the high pressure.

NOTE

1) In case of a closed circuit, the oil from the relief valve must be sent to the low pressure side. (If that oil is returned to the tank, the charge pump cannot supply the oil sufficiently.)
2) If the high pressure in a closed circuit is relieved, the temperature rises suddenly. Therefore, the load must be released.

7. Neutral valve (Flashing valve)

NOTE

This valve cleans and cools the oil, and called the flashing valve, too.

The high pressure oil flows into the rear of the spool in the neutral valve, and its pressure moves the spool toward low pressure side. The oil sent from the charge pump compensates the lost oil, and the excessive oil flows to the tank through the hole on the housing of the neutral valve.

If the swash plate in the pump is moved from forwarding position to reverse position and vice versa, the spool moves in direction opposite to the direction of pressure application to return the excessive oil to the tank.

(Oil flow)

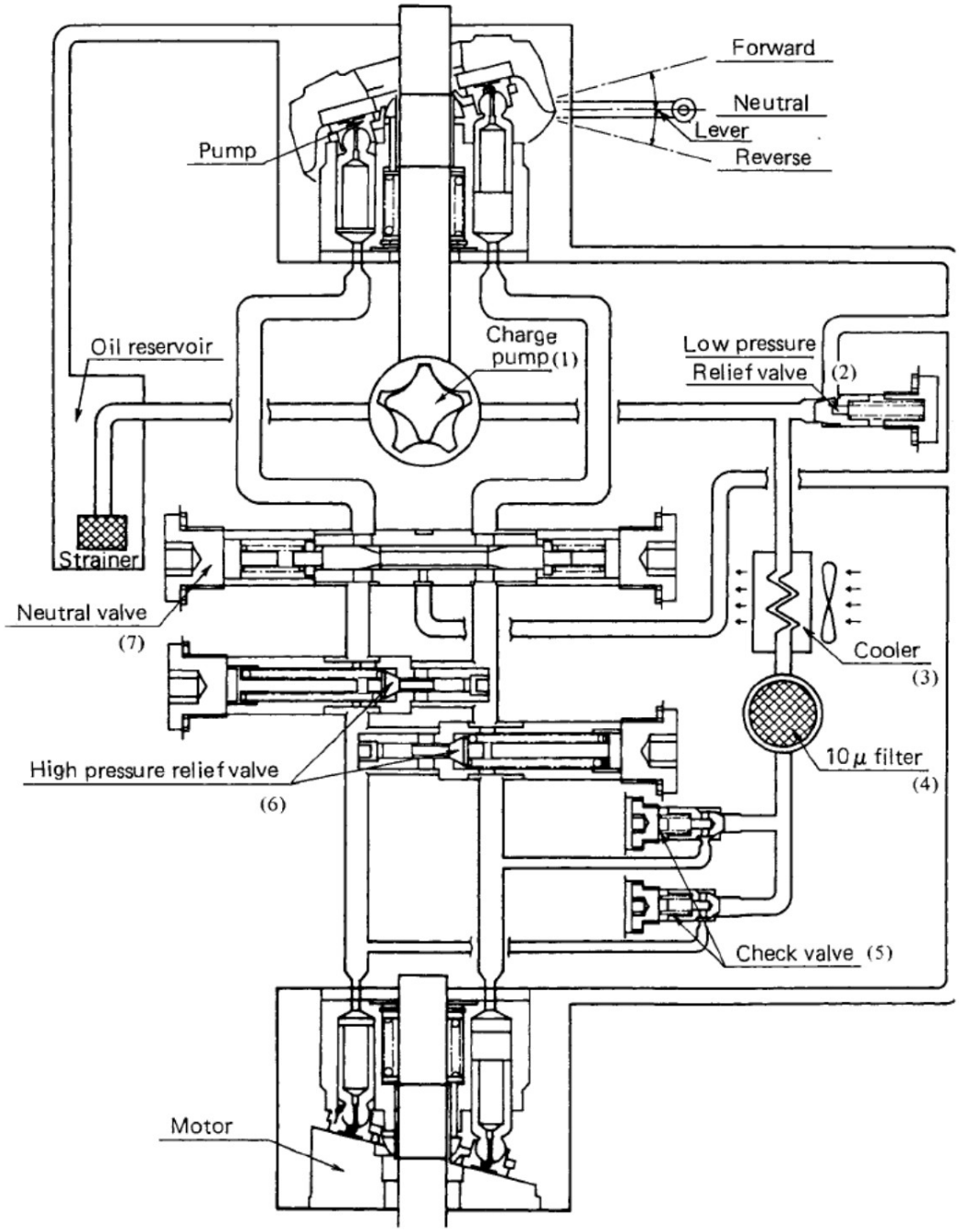
1. If the engine is running (the main clutch is engaged), the charge pump suck the oil in the transmission case through the strainer. The sucked oil flows through the circuit which contains the low pressure relief valve, cooler, and filter, and then, it pushes down the check valve and flows into the low pressure side to compensate the oil lost from the main pump and motor. The check valve on the high pressure side receives the back pressure from the rear, and therefore, the oil does not flow back, and the filter and cooler are not damaged.
2. The oil flowed into the suction side of the pump through the check valve passes the high pressure relief valve next.

A part of this oil is sucked by the main pump, and the rest is returned to the tank through the neutral valve.

(The high pressure relief valve on the low pressure side is a part of the low pressure circuit and becomes a passage when high pressure side is relieved.)

The oil sent out from the charge pump compensates the oil lost from the main pump and motor, and the rest is returned to the tank (in the transmission) through the neutral valve.

3. The pressure of the oil sucked in the pump is raised high by the rotation of the pump, and the oil is sent to the motor. The piston in the motor is pushed down by the oil, and the cylinder block in which the piston is inserted is rotated. As the cylinder block rotates, the shaft is rotated through the spline, and the gears on the shaft transmits the power to move the tractor.
4. If the load on the motor becomes large, the high pressure relief valve operates to let the oil flows into the low pressure side.



Sub transmission

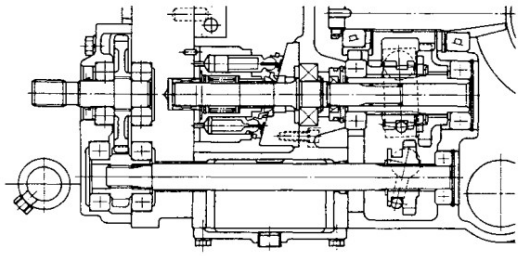
The gears of this transmission are under the pinion shaft of the transmission case. The speed of rotation transmitted from HST unit is changed to low or high speed.

PTO gear

The power from HST unit it transmitted to PTO gear at rear of the differential gear through PTO drive shaft above the differential gear. Using PTO gear, PTO speed can be set to 540rpm or 1,000rpm.

4-Wheel drive gear

4-wheel drive gear is installed uner the counter shaft. It is driven by the slide gear mounted on the lowermost shaft in the transmission case through the idle gear to drive the front axle.



Differential lock

The differential lock consists of a clutch which is located on the right side of differential gear case mounted in the center of diff-housing and a differential lock sleeve which is mounted on the differential right-hand shaft in the rear axle housing. These clutch and sleeve are operated by the differential lock pedal for locking the differential.

GEARSHIFT MECHANISM

HST lever

HST lever is at right rear of the bonnet and right of the throttle lever, Forwarding and reversing are changed-over with this lever.

Sub-gearshift lever

This lever is located on the left side of transmission case. It is guided by the shift guide plate mounted on the transmission case cover. In combination with the HST lever, this lever permits a selection of 2 forward and 2 reverse speeds. In the sub-transmission is built a safety starter switch.

PTO gearshift lever

This lever located on the left side of diff-housing and is ued to select any desired one of 540rpm and 1000rpm.

4-Wheel drive gearshift lever

This lever is located on the left side of transmission case. As this lever is shifted to "ON" position the drive is transmitted to the front axle and the tractor is operated in 4-wheel drive mode.

Rear axle housing

Differential shaft, final drive gears, final shafts and brake system are incorporated in the final drive cases. Differential locking system is housed in the righ-hand final drive case.

REMOVAL AND DISASSEMBLY

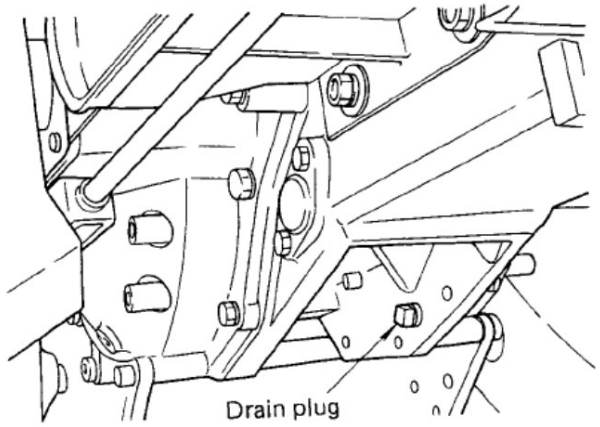
NOTE

a) Complete transmission disassembly is occasioned by two cases: 1) when the transmission case has suffered damage, or 2) when PTO shaft has to be replaced. Partial disassembly will suffice in most cases when a gear, shaft or bearing has suffered damage in the transmission.

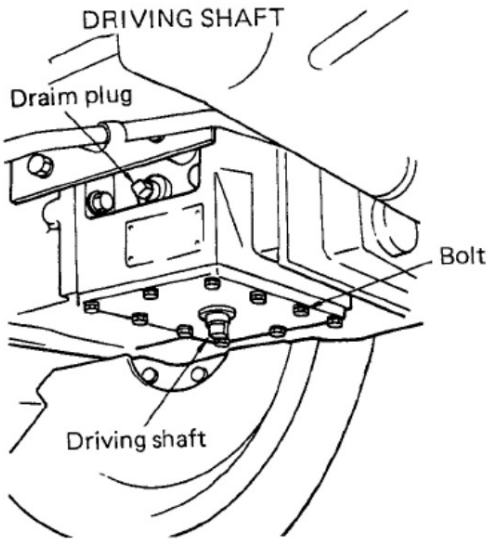
b) To disassemble the transmission partially or completely, it must be taken down from the machine. A sufficient working space should be secured in advance, and all the necessary hand tools and materials should be prepared for ready use. Before starting to disassemble, clean the case thoroughly, removing dirt, grime and greasy matter. The external surfaces of the case are usually greasy and slippery: be sure to handle it carefully upon removing the transmission from the machine.

Removing the transmission

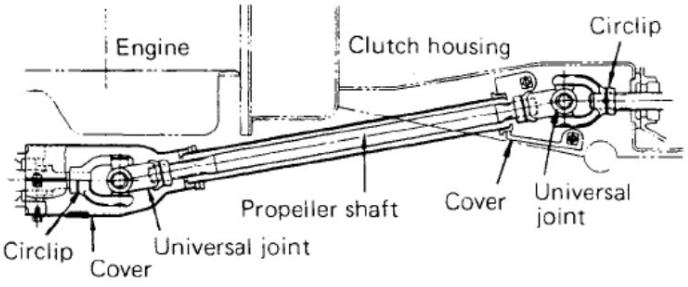
1) Remove drain plugs, right and left, on transmission case at its rear part. Be sure to drain the oil in the case completely.



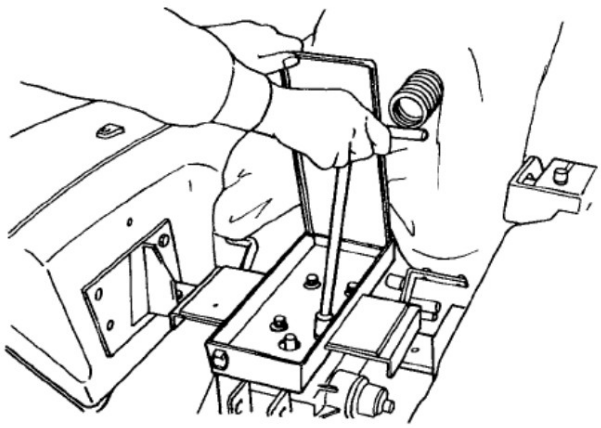
2) Remove the drain plug of HST unit and drain the oil in the unit.



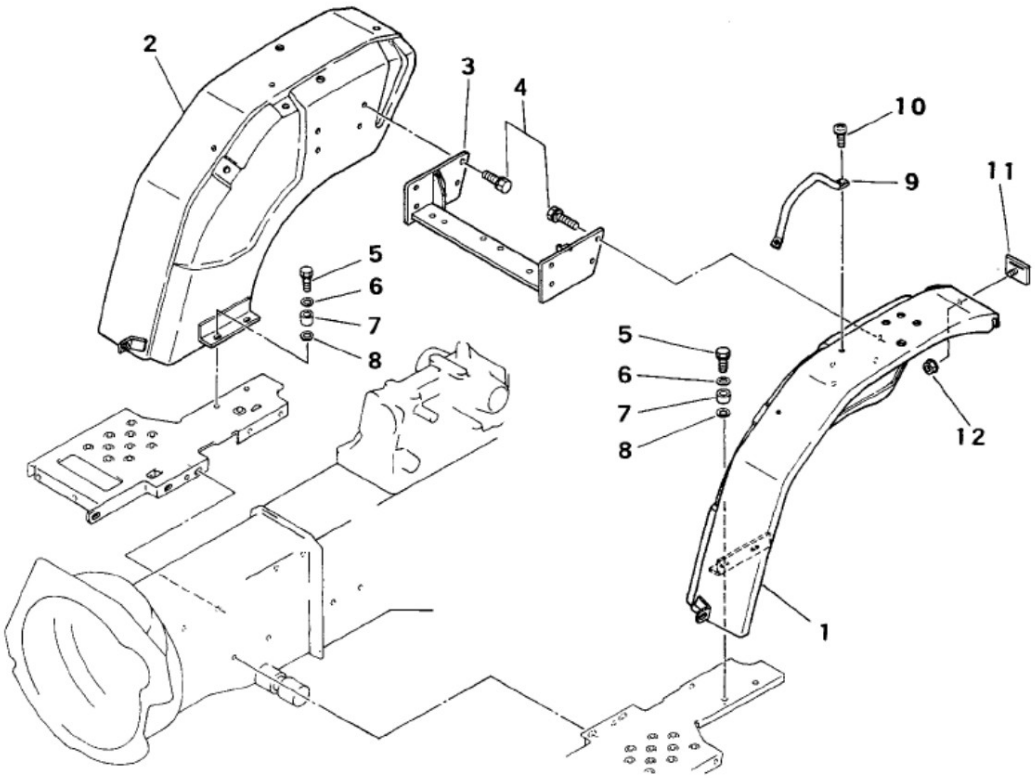
3) Remove bolts securing the covers, front and rear, of 4-wheel drive universal joints, take off the covers, pick out circlips and pins, and remove the joint.



4) Remove the tool box and seat together.

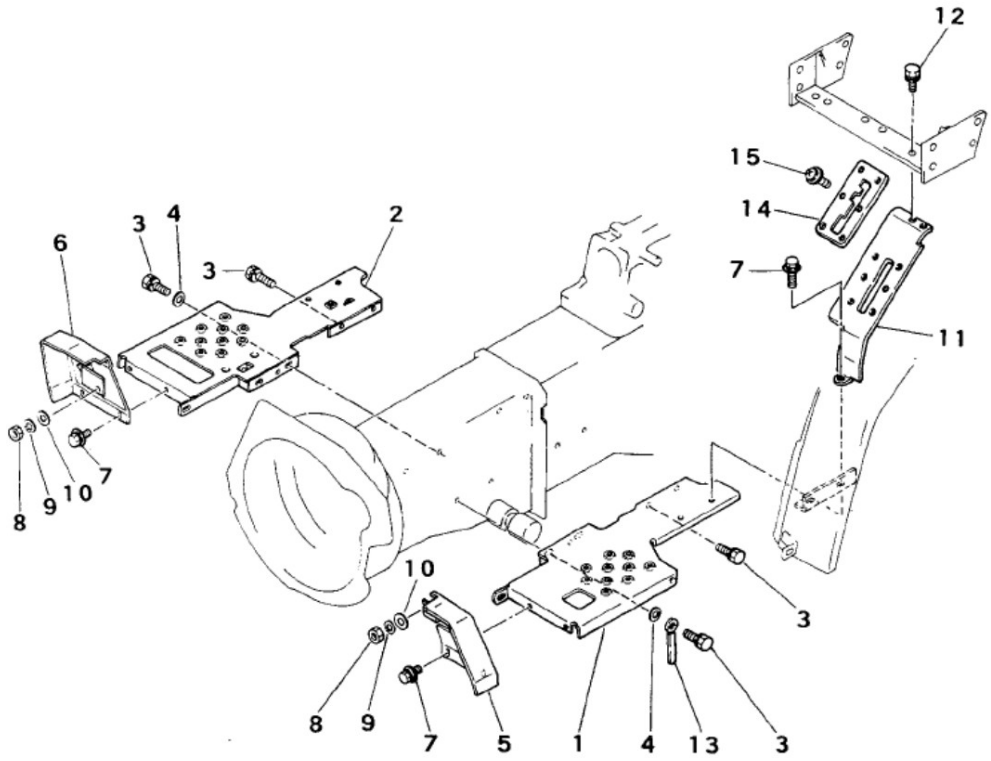


5) Remove the wiring from the fender, and remove the right and left fenders, cover, and fender bracket. At this time, take care not to drop the collar and rubber.



1 Rear fender L.H
2 Rear fender R.H
3 Fender bracket
4 Bolt
5 Bolt
6 Washer
7 Collar
8 Rubber
9 Hand rail
10 Screw
11 Reflector
12 Flange nut

6) Remove the left and right steps.



1 Step L.H
2 Step R.H
3 Bolt
4 Washer
5 Foot cover L.H
6 Foot cover R.H
7 Bolt
8 Nut
9 Spring washer
10 Washer
11 Cover
12 Bolt
13 Clamp
14 Plate
15 Screw

NOTE

Be sure to remove the spring connecting the right step and fifferential lock pedal.

7) Remove the left and right brake rods from the brake.

8) Place a jack under the rear part of transmission case, and take up the weight of the case with the jack. Loosen rear wheel bolts, jack up the rear axle at both ends, and take off the rear wheels.
Take out the jack supporting the rear part of transmission case.

9) Separate rod A ass'y and HST control lever (6) each other by pulling out the snap pin.
by pulling out the snap pin.

10) Remove the filter inlet pipe fixing union bolt from HST oil filter (19).

11) Remove filter inlet pipe (23).

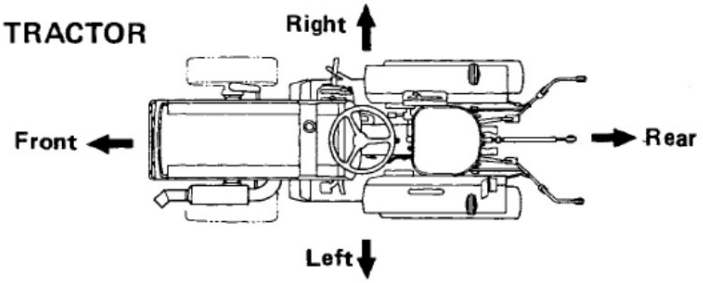
12) Remove the union bolt from HST inlet pipe (24), and then, remove HST inlet pipe (24).

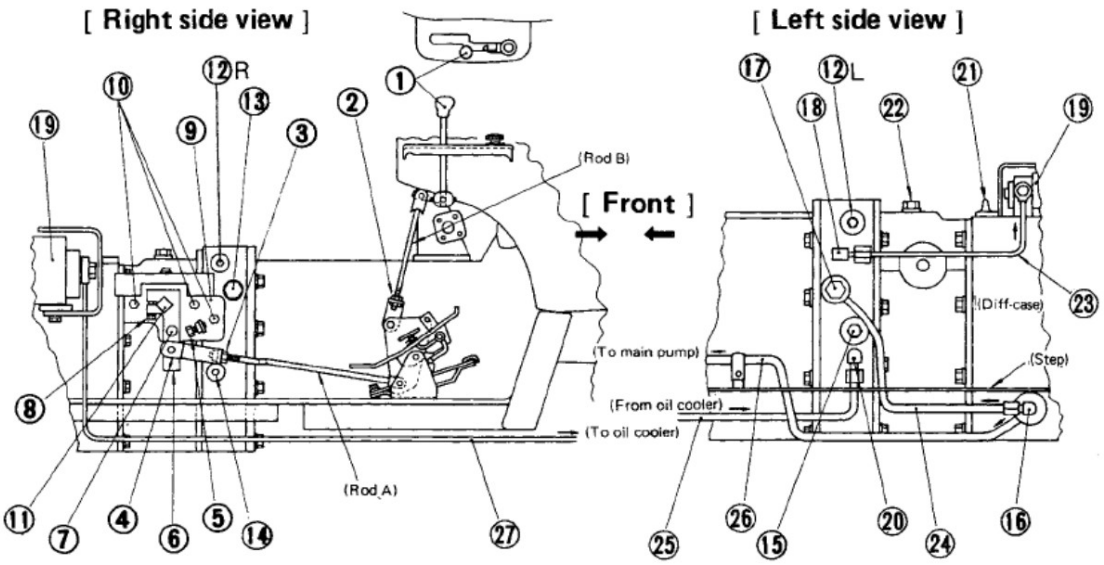
13) Remove cooler outlet pipe (25) by loosening the nut on HST unit side.

14) Remove suction pipe (26) from the transmission by removing two bolts.

15) Remove the union bolt securing the pressure pipe on the hydraulic case.

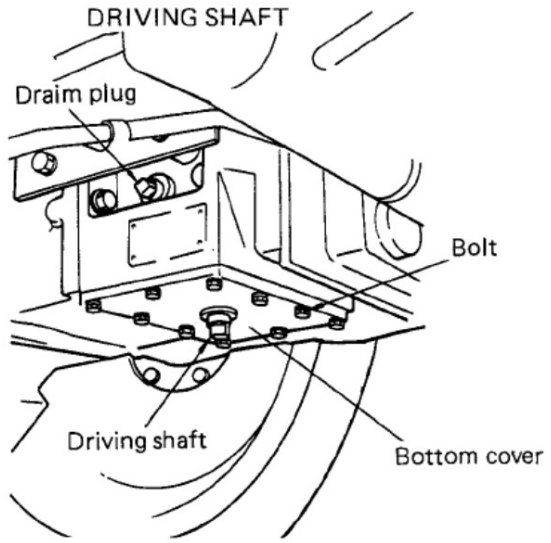
OUTSIDE VIEW of HST TRACTOR



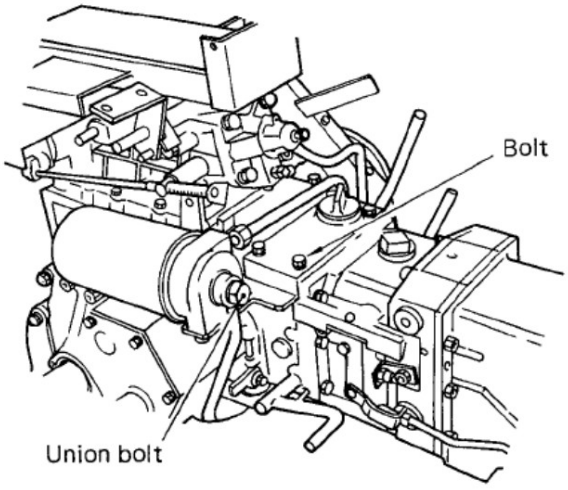


1 HST control hand lever
2 Adjusting point B
3 Adjusting point A
4 Joint
5 Backward speed adjusting stopper
6 HST control lever
7 Poppet ball case
8 HST lever set bolt
9 Neutral position set plate
10 Set plate attaching bolt
11 HST control shaft
12 Neutral valve plug
13 Low pressure relief valve plug
14 High pressure relief valve plug (reverse)
15 High pressure relief valve plug (forward)
16 Oil suction port
17 HST oil inport (to charge pump)
18 Charged oil outport
19 HST oil filter
20 Cooled oil inport (to HST)
21 Oil checking plug
22 Charge oil plug
23 Filter inlet pipe
24 HST inlet pipe
25 Cooler outlet pipe
26 Suction pipe
27 Return pipe

16) Remove the bottom cover from HST unit by removing 10 bolts.



17) Remove the union bolt on HST oil filter (19) of return pipe (27). Remove the cover from the top of the transmission by removing four bolts.



18) Remove 3-point linkage bracket.

19) Place two jacks under the machine to support clutch housing and transmission case, remove 10 bolts securing between clutch housing and HST unit together and seperate them carefully. Then, remove the main shaft and the coupling together.

20) Using a lifting sling and a hoist, lift the transmission out of the machine, and set it on the work stand.

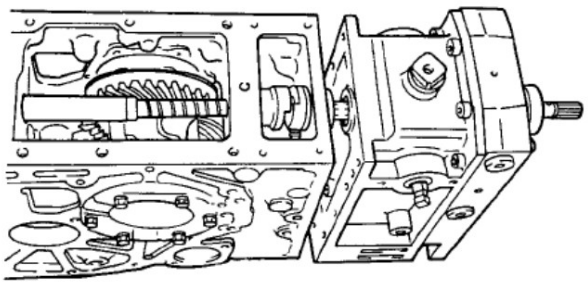
21) Loosen all the bolts securing the hydraulic case on the transmission, and remove the hydraulic case ass'y.

22) Loosen bolts securing each final case to the transmission case, and remove the two cases, right and left.

NOTE

Sealant is used in the joint between transmission case and final case. For this reason, the final cases may not separate easily from transmission case. Driving a chisel-like tool into the joint is sure to damage the case, which is made of an aluminum alloy. A soft-metal hammer may be used on the wheel boss in an attempt to sever it from the transmission case but be careful not to give strong hammer blows to the case.

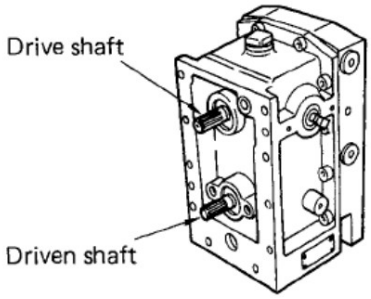
23) Remove 10 bolts, and separate HST unit and the transmission case each other.



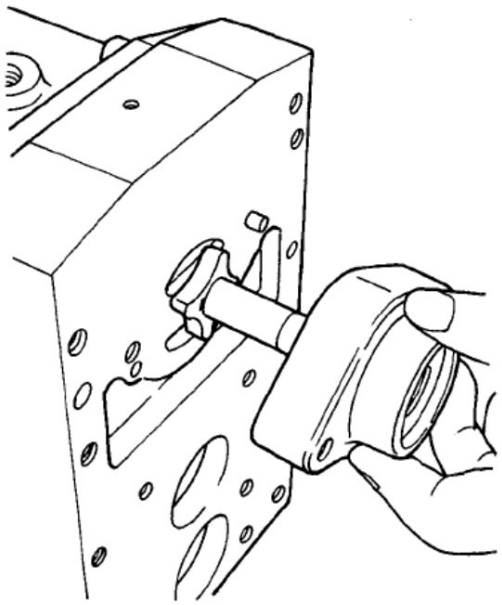
Disassembling the HST unit

Disassemble HST unit according to the following procedure.

1) Remove HST control lever (6) and neutral position set plate (9) by loosening bolts.
2) Remove the set bolts for 4 wheel drive gear case in front of HST unit, and remove the gear, shaft bearing, and gear case an assembly. Now, HST unit was removed.

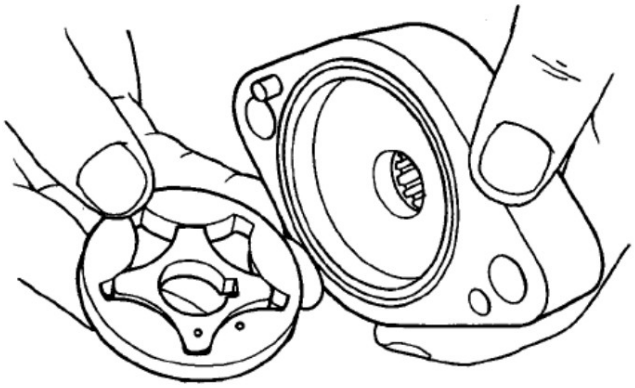


3) Loosen two hexagon socket head bolts from front of HST unit, and remove the casing. At this time, remove the vane and rotor, too.

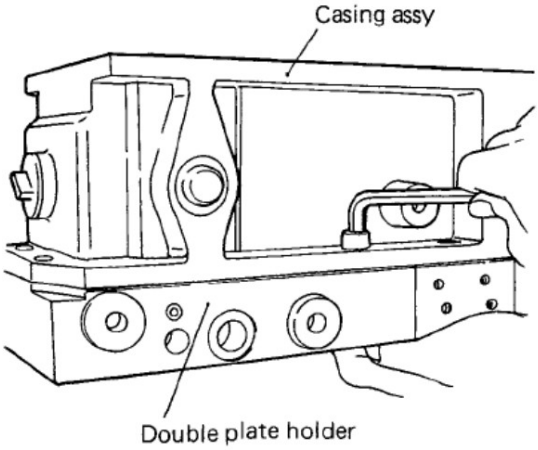


NOTE

Pay attention to the directions and positions of the point marks on the vane and rotor.



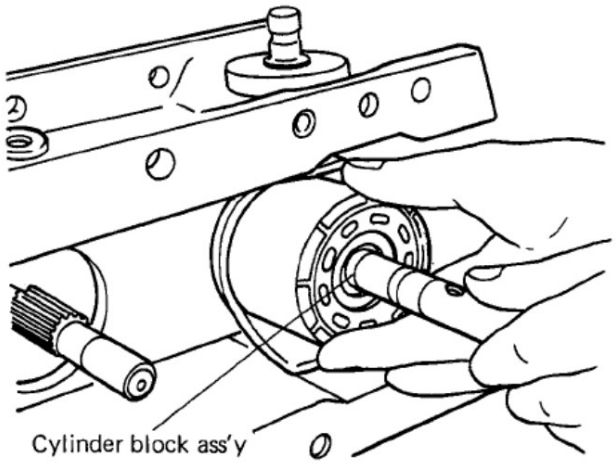
4) Separate the valve plate holder and the casing ass'y by removing 12 hexagon socket head bolts.



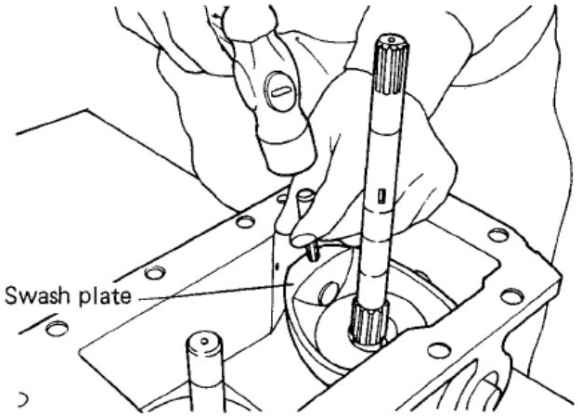
NOTE

The valve plate holder and casing ass'y may not separated easily because the sealing paste is applied on the fitting faces of them. In this case, separate them hitting the casing ass'y with a soft-metal hammer. Remove the sealing paste from the fitting faces of the valve plate holder and the casing ass'y taking care that the fitting faces are not scratched.

5) Remove the cylinder block ass'ies on the pump side and motor side.



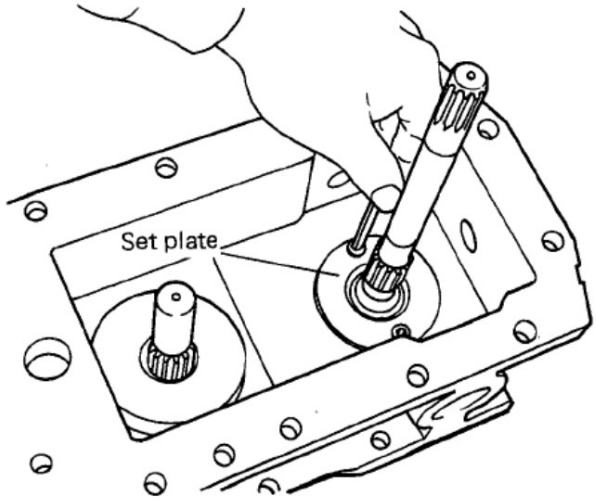
6) Pull out the spring pin of the swash plate, and pull the pin and HST control shaft outward, and then remove the swash plate.



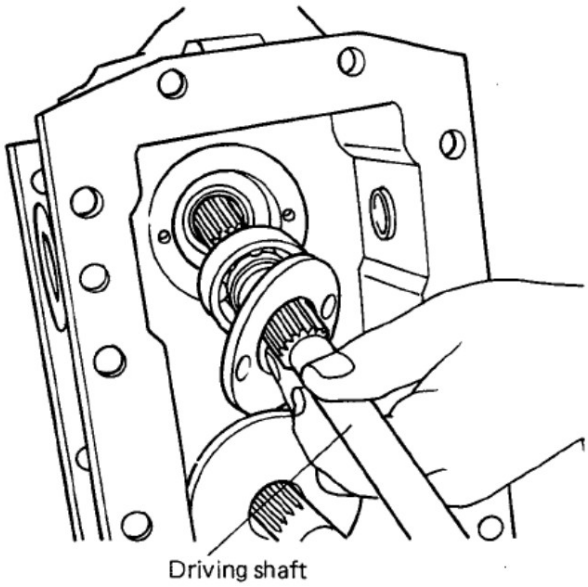
NOTE

Two spring pins are installed on the HST control shaft side.

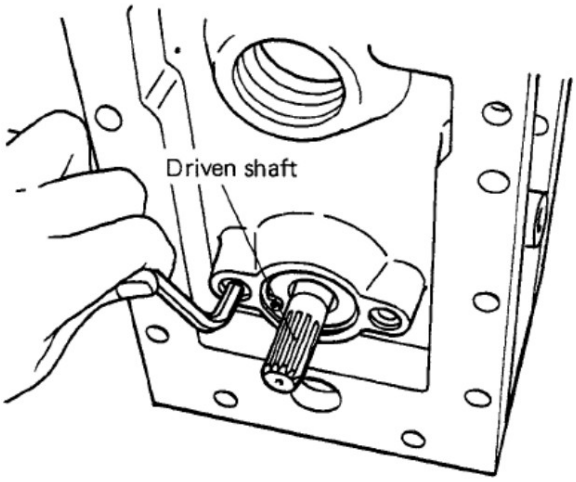
7) Loosen the hexagon socket head bolts securing the set plate on the driving shaft side, and remove the set plate.

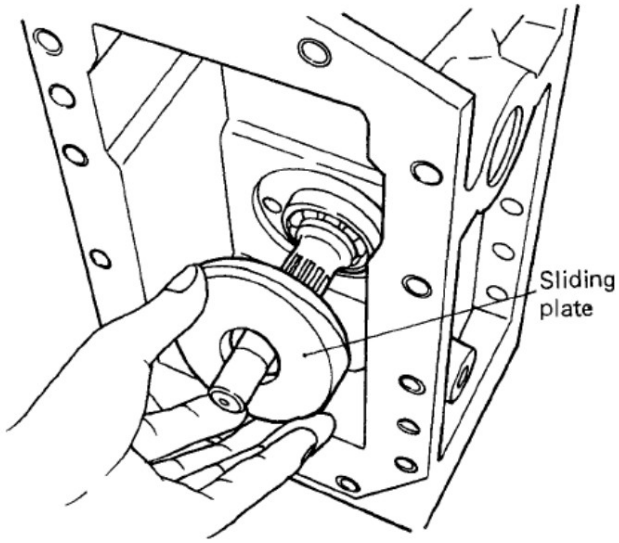


8) Remove the driving shaft together with the ball bearing hitting the driving shaft with a soft-metal hammer from the outside of the casing body.

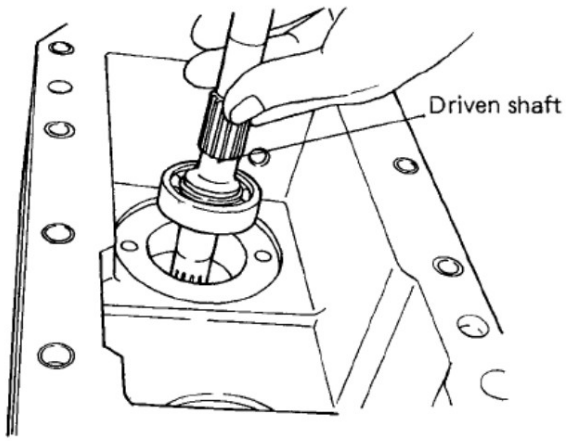


9) Remove the hexagon socket head bolt securing the sliding plate on the casing body, and pull the sliding plate out of the driven shaft.





10) Pull out the driven shaft together with the ball bearing hitting the shaft with a soft-metal hammer from the casing body side.



NOTE

When pulling out the output shaft and driving shaft, take care not to damage the oil seals.

11) When disassembling HST neutral valve assembled in the valve plate holder ass'y, remove either one of neutral valve plug (1) together with seal washer (2).

12) Remove spring (3) and collar (4) in order.

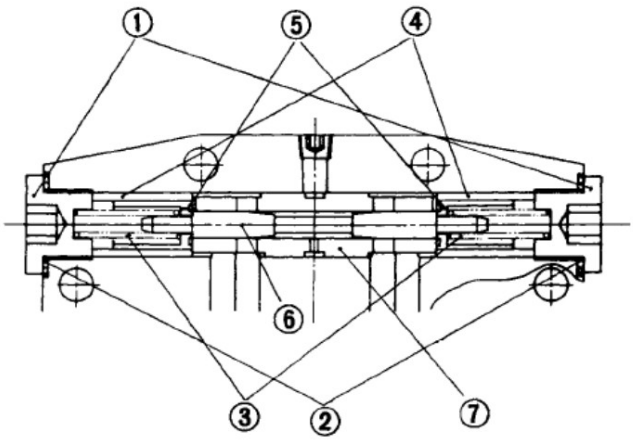
13) Take out plate (5) by using magnet. At this time, hold spool (6) with screw driver or wire so that it does not come out together with plate (5).

NOTE

Particularly be careful because, if the spool comes out, the plate on opposite end may tall into HST circuit.

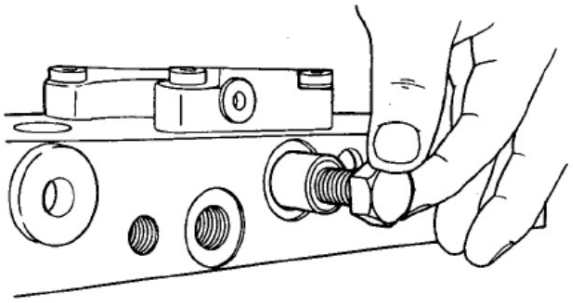
14) Remove neutral valve plug (1) at opposite end.

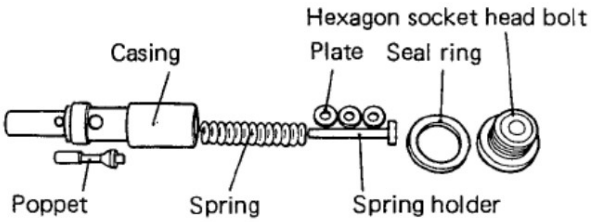
15) Push the spool (6) and neutral valve casing from the end where the neutral valve plug (1) was first removed, to remove them together with spring, collar and plate on opposite end.



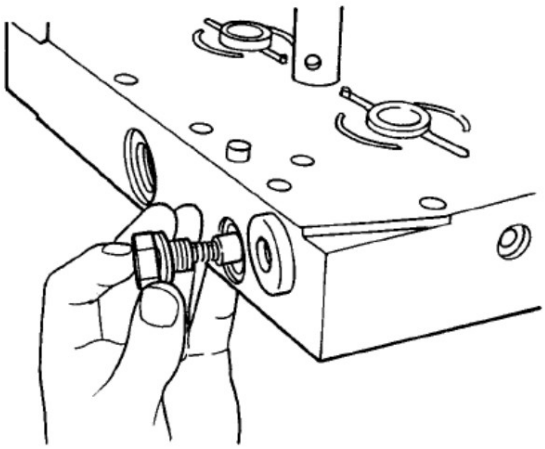
1) Neutral valve plug
2) Seal washer
3) Spring
4) Collar
5) Plate
6) Spool
7) Neutral valve casing

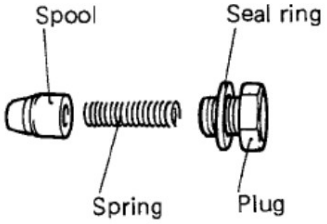
16) Disassemble the left and right high pressure relief valves. Remove the hexagon socket head bolt from the side of the valve plate holder, and take out the seal ring, spring holder, plates, and the spring in order. Then, screw a bolt of M14 x 1.5 into the casing, and pull it out. The poppet can be taken out at this time, too.



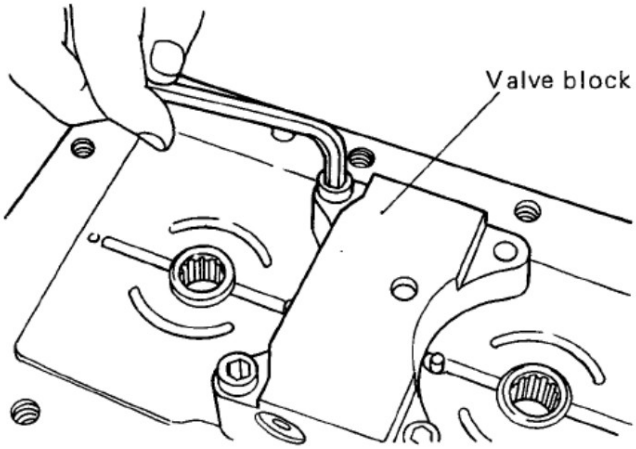


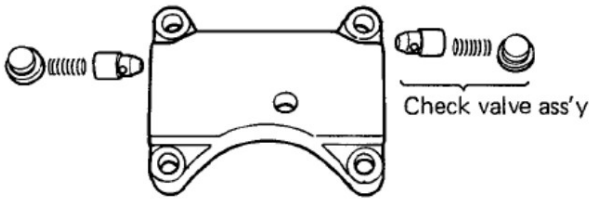
17) Remove the plug of the low pressure relief valve at the side of the valve plate, and remove the low pressure relief valve.





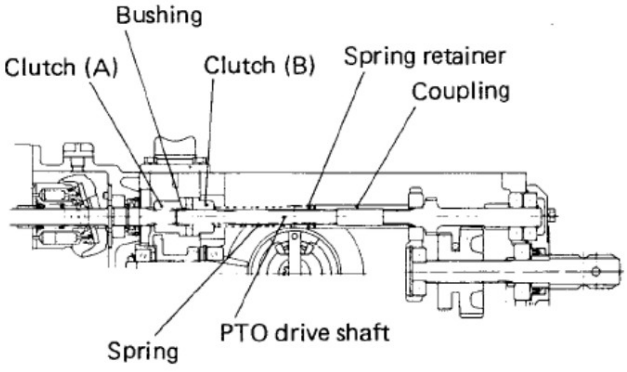
18) Remove four hexagon socket head bolts from the valve block, and remove the valve block. Loosen the plugs, and remove the left and right check valves.





Removing the PTO drive shaft

After removing UST unit, take out clutch (A), bushing, clutch (B), spring, spring retainer, PTO drive shaft and coupling in order.



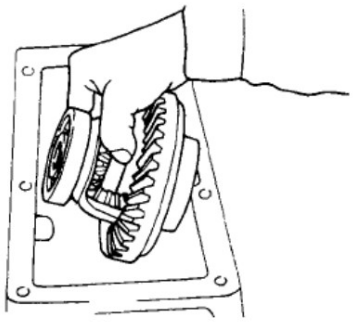
Removing the differential gear assembly

1) Remove bearing holders, right and left, from transmission case. The bolts securing these holders are locked with stopper plates: be sure to straighten these plates and, after loosening the bolts, ease the holder off by putting the tip of a plain screwdriver to the notch formed of the holder.

NOTE

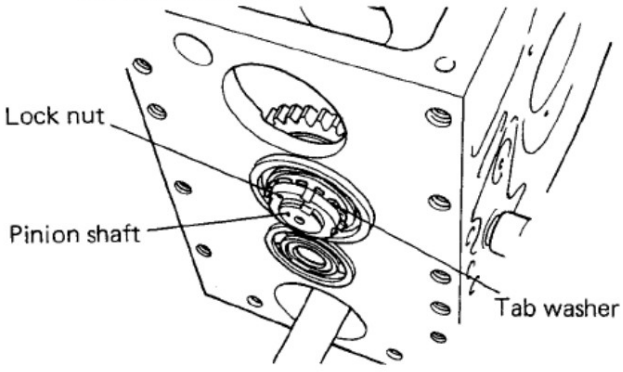
When taking out the differential gear assembly, be sure to recover the shim used for backlash adjustment and to check the shim thickness and the number of shim pieces used. The same shim must be re-used in reassembly if the assembly has not been broken apart and is to be restored in its original condition.

(2) Lift the differential gear assembly out of transmission case.



Removing the pinion shaft

1) Rebend the tab washer securing the lock nut using a plain screw driver. Remove the lock nut at front of the pinion shaft, and remove the tab washer.

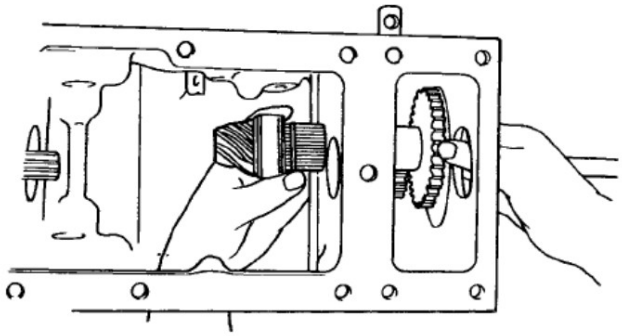


2) Remove the bearing holder together with the ball bearing using two plain screw driver.

NOTE

Take care not to damage the bearing holder and transmission case.

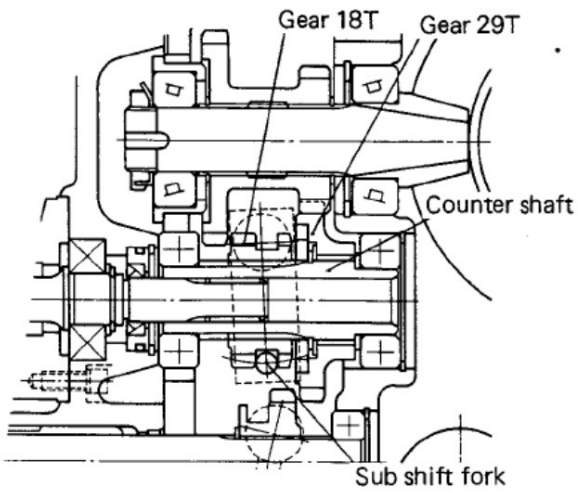
3) Remove the circlip (28mm) securing gear 31-20T from the front of the transmission case. Take out the pinion shaft hitting it with a soft-metal hammer from the front of the transmission case. After pulling out the pinion shaft, take out gear 31-20T.



Removing the counter shaft

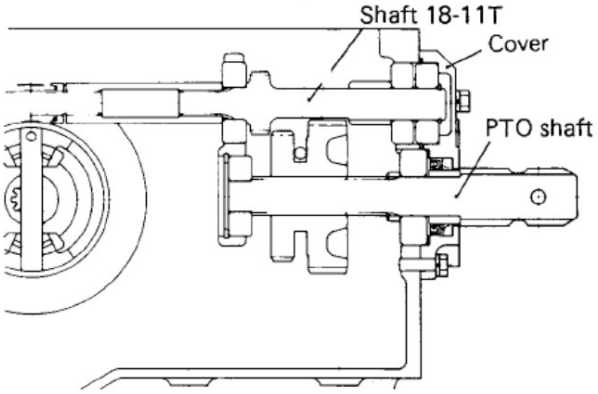
1) Remove the circlip (52mm) from diff-housing end of the counter shaft. Slide gear 18T forward by setting the sub shift lever to "Low' position. Remove the circlip (30mm) from the groove on the counter shaft, and slide it toward the front of the shaft.

2) Holding gear 18T and gear 29T with hands, hit the counter shaft from the front of the transmission with a soft-metal hammer to push it to rear. Disassemble the sub shift fork, if necessary.



Removing the PTO shaft

1) Remove the cover from rear side which is secured by five bolts.
2) Push out the shaft 18-11T ass'y toword rear side hitting shaft 18-11T with a soft-metal hammer from the diff-housing side.
3) Push out PTO shaft from the diff-housing side in the similar way.



Removing the differential gear assembly

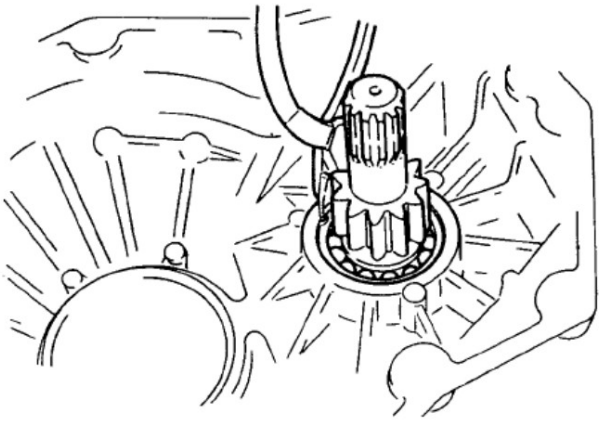
(1) Give match marks to differential gear case and ring gear.
(2) Straighten the lock washers under the heads of bolts securing the ring gear, remove the bolts and take off ring gear.
(3) Pull off locking pin from center pin, draw out the pin, and take out pinion gears, side gears and thrust liners.

Disassembling the final cases

After removing the two final cases from transmission case and detaching brake cover and drum from each, proceed as follows:

<Differential shaft>

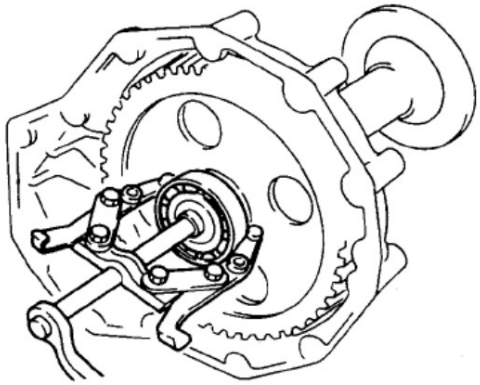
(1) Pick out circlip, remove pinion shaft (it may be necessary to lightly tap on this shaft), and draw out oil seal bushing together with ball bearing.



(2) From the right final case, remove differential lock shifter: loosening the nut allows the shifter to come off.

<Rear wheel shaft>

(1) Draw out ball bearing, and remove collar and final reduction gear.



(2) Pick out two circlips and drive rear wheel shaft out of final case.

Removing the mid PTO shaft

1) Remove the bearing holder, and pull out the mid PTO shaft.
2) Remove 4-wheel drive select shaft ass'y hitting it from the diff-housing side. Remove 4-wheel drive shift fork, if necessary.

REASSEMBLY AND INSTALLATION

(1) Before starting the reassembly work, be sure that all transmission parts are perfectly clean, check to be sure that there is no missing parts, and, when building up sub-assemblies, refer to the specifications and assembly standards to make sure that each sub-assembly is properly built up with respect to gaps, running clearances, plays, backlashes, etc.

(2) Oil or grease sliding surfaces, as necessary, at the time of installing moving parts. Similarly, grease "O" rings, oil seals and the like just before fitting them.

(3) It is advisable but not mandatory that "O" rings, gaskets, packings, oil seals, tab washers and the like be regarded as expendable items and be replaced by new ones upon their removal in disassembly.

(4) Wrap through-bolts with sealing tape just before using them in reassembly.

(5) Have sealant on hand and use it on the mating faces of cases and covers.

(6) Build up the transmission in the following sequence:

(a) Differential gear reassembly

(b) Determination of shim thickness on the basis of pinion shaft cone center measurement

(c) PTO shaft reassembly and installation

(d) 4-wheel drive shaft reassembly and installation

(e) Countershaft reassembly and installation

(f) Pinion shaft installation

(g) Differential gear installation

(h) PTO drive shaft installation

(i) Final case reassembly

(j) Final case installation

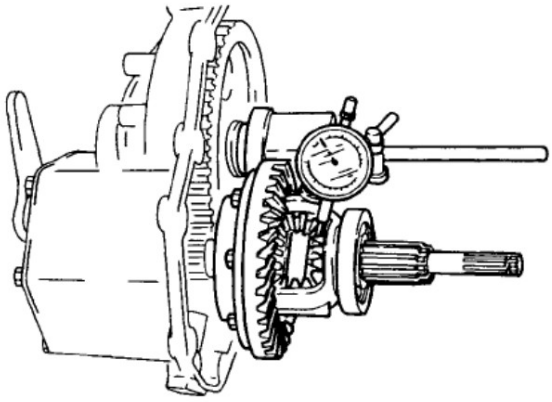
(k) HST unit reassembly and installation

(l) Mid. PTO shaft reassembly and installation

Reassembling the differential gear assembly

(1) Oil thrust liners, fit the liners to the differential gear case, install side gears, position pinion gears in place, together with liners, and insert center pin.

(2) Adjust the thickness of thrust liners, as necessary, to secure a backlash of 0.25 to 0.35 mm (0.010 to 0.014 in.) between pinion gear and side gear.



Backlash	0.25 ~ 0.35 mm (0.010 ~ 0.014 in.)

Shim stock for this backlash adjustment is available in the following thicknesses:

Unit: mm (in.)

Thickness	Part No.
1.2 (0.047)	1135 1408 001
1.4 (0.055)	1135 1409 001
1.6 (0.063)	1135 1411 001

(3) After producing the specified backlash, drive lock pin into center pin to lock the latter pin. Insert differential shaft and rotate the differential by hand to be sure that it rolls smoothly.

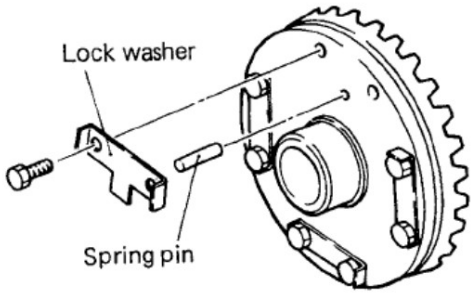
(4) Fit ring gear to the case, as guided by the match marks, setting the gear in its original position, put on lock washers and bolt

the gear to the case, tightening the bolts to this torque value:

Tightening torque	2.5 ~ 3.0 kg-m (18 ~ 22 ft-lb)

NOTE

Lock washer A (Part number 1135 1405 000) has a lug formed as shown. Position this washer in such a way that the lug will cover up the spring pin locking the center spring.



(5) Install ball bearings in the differential case.

Measuring the pinion shaft cone center for shim selection

(1) In the bore provided in the transmission case wall, through which the pinion shaft is to enter, set circlip, and fit the outer race of tapered roller bearing. Be sure to discriminate between the inside end face and the outside end face of this race.

(2) Mount the inner race of tapered roller bearing on countershaft.

(3) Position countershaft in place, install the other tapered roller bearing on the front side, and secure it by tightening sleeve nut. Check to be sure that the pinion shaft so secured has no end play. Remember, cone center measurement with the use of a special tool presumes absence of end play on this shaft. Select the shim thickness, in the manner explained, to obtain this value:

Pinion shaft cone center	77 ± 0.05 mm (3.031 ± 0.002 in.)

How to use the special tool

1) Put the bushing (1982 6011 00X) to the tool A (1135 3905 000).

2) Insert the tool A and bushing together to the transmission housing from the left-hand side of housing.

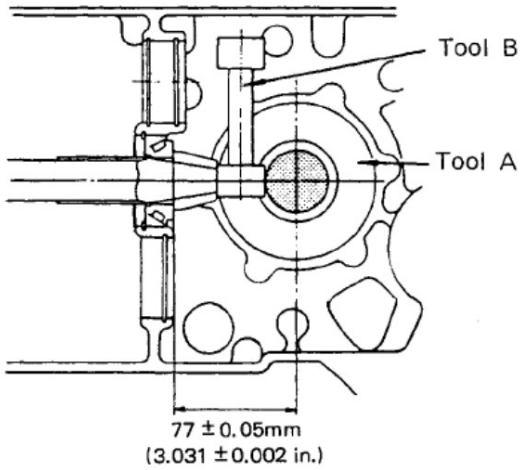
3) Select the shim thickness that permits the small-diameter end of tool B (1135 3908 000) to enter freely and prevents the large-diameter and from etering.
The shim so selected is to be inserted between the outer race of tapered roller bearing and the circlup at the time of reassembling the pinion shaft.

Shim stock for this selection is available in the following thicknesses:

Unit: ,mm (in.)

Thickness	Part No.
0.1 (0.004)	1135 1315 011
0.2 (0.008)	1135 1316 011
0.5 (0.020)	1135 1317 011

The required shim thickness is equal to the clearance which occurs when the small-diameter tool B is placed between pinion gear and tool A.



Ressembling the PTO shaft

1) Set the circlip to the inside wall of the transmission, and assemble the ball bearing.

2) Install the bushing, ball bearing, shims, and collar to PTO shaft from the front, and set them with the circlip.

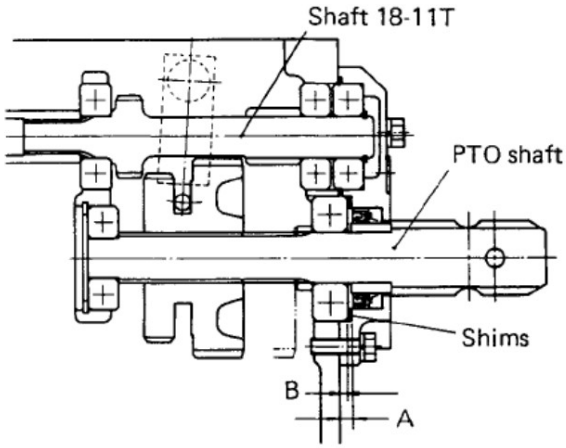
3) Insert the set PTO shaft into the transmission from the rear, and assemble the gear, and then assemble with the bearing.

4) At this time, measure dimensions A and B with slide calipers. A - B = 0.2 (Thickness of shim to be inserted between ball bearing and cover)

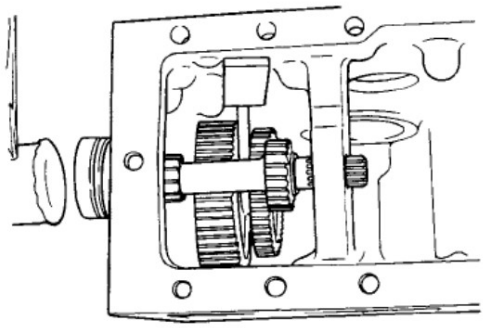
After determining the thickness of shims, reassemble the PTO shaft ass'y with the shims.

Unit : mm (in.)

Thickness	Part No.
Shim set	1021 1318 000
0.15 (0.006)	0730 0006 201
0.40 (0.016)	0730 0006 204
0.80 (0.031)	0730 0006 208



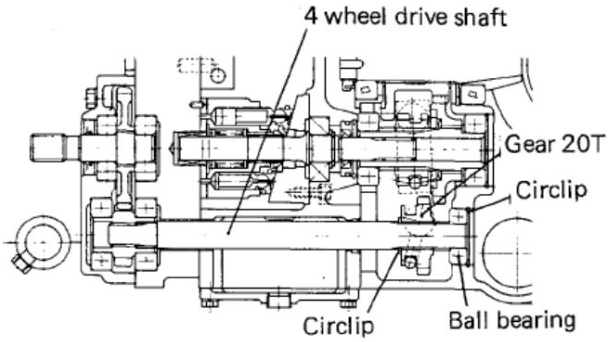
5) After installing shaft 18-11T ass'y, apply liquid packing to the fitting face of the cover, and install the cover to the transmission case.



Reassembling the 4-wheel drive shaft

1) Set the circlip to the inside wall of the transmission on the diff-housing side, and install the ball bearing from the front.

2) Set the circlip to the 4-wheel drive shaft. Set gear 20T to the 4-wheel drive shift fork, and then, install gear 20T and ball bearing in order to the 4-wheel drive shaft.



Reassembling the countershaft

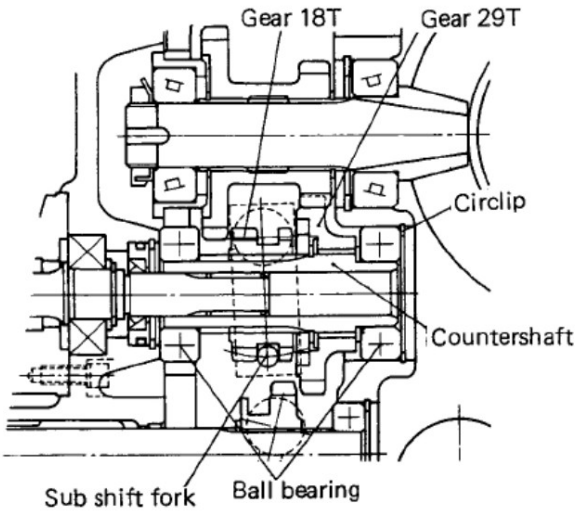
1) Set the circlip to the inside wall of the transmission on the diff-housing side, and install the ball bearing from the front.

2) Set the sub shift lever to low position, and install gear 18T, circlip, liner, gear 29T, bushing, and liner in order from the front. At this point, gear 18T must be installed to the sub shift fork securely. Hit the countershaft into the ball bearing, and set the circlip to the groove of the shaft.

NOTE

If there is the groove on the liner, be sure to set the liner with the grooved face toward the gear.

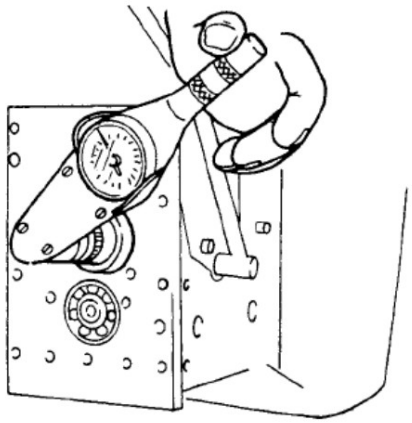
3) Install the ball bearing to the transmission from the front.



Reassembling the pinion shaft

1) Insert the shims (which have been selected on the basis of cone center measurement) between the circlip and the outer race of tapered roller bearing in the wall of transmission case.
2) Insert pinion shaft (to rear end of which tapered roller bearing and cliclip have been mounted) into transmission case through its rear end. At the same time, insert pinion shaft into the gear 31-20T.
3) Set the circlip to the groove on the front portion of the pinion shaft, and secure gear 31-20T.
4) Install the bearing holder, ball bearing, tab washer, and lock nut in order, and adjust the lock nut so that the specified preload on the pinion shaft can be obtained.
   Bend the tab washer to secure the lock nut.

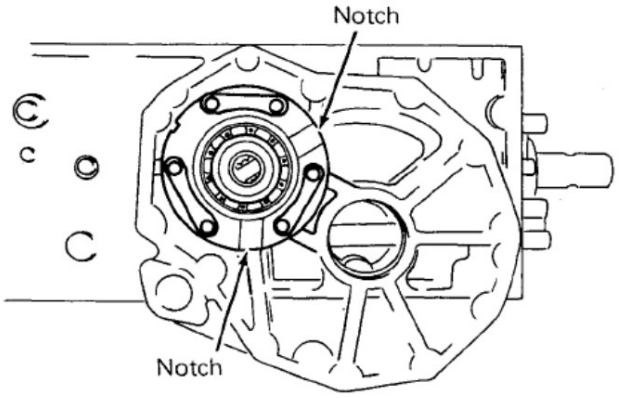
Countershaft preload	0.07 ~ 0.08 kg-m (0.51 ~ 0.58 ft-lb)



Installing the differential gear assembly

(1) The differential gear assembly is already in built-up condition at this stage, complete with the ring gear. Lower it into transmission case, with the ring gear coming on the left side.

(2) Position the two bearing holders (differing in length) in place, seating each holder correctly by matching its notch to the corresponding one formed of case. The long holder comes on the right side, and the short one on the left.



NOTE

Bear in mind that, if the holders are not positioned correctly as dictated by the matching notches, interference occurs between final gear and bearing holder. The final case might break if the case is secured under this condition (interference between holder and gear.)

(3) Tentatively tighten the two bearing holders in place, right and left, on transmission case, making their securing bolts snug-tight. Be sure that stopper washers are used on these bolts.

(4) Using the below-indicated sizes (thicknesses) of shim stock (liner), adjust the ring gear backlash to the specification in the manner hereunder described:

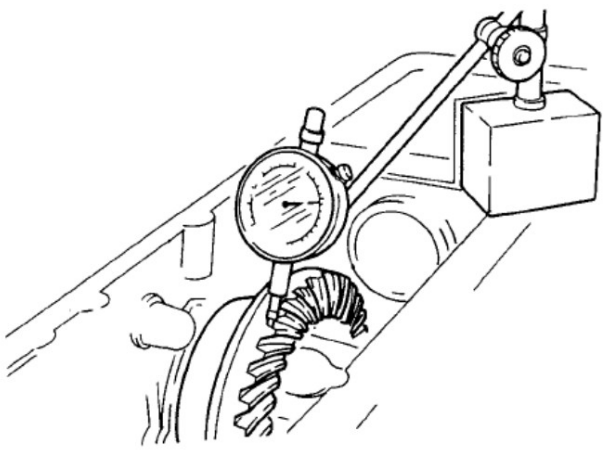
Ring gear backlash	0.25 ~ 0.35 mm (0.01 ~ 0.014 in.)

Shim stock for ring gear backlash adjustment
Unit: mm (in.)

Thickness	Part No.
0.2 (0.008)	1135 1419 000
0.3 (0.012)	1135 1421 000
0.5 (0.020)	1135 1422 000

(a) Insert the liner between transmission case and left-side bearing holder. Be sure that the individual shims (each consisting of one or more sheets) of the liner are equal in thickness. This requirement is met by using the same number of shim sheets. The liner here is tentative and need not be exact in thickness, but make sure that the clearance is filled up uniformly all around.

(b) Tighten the left-side holder (which is now sided by the tentative liner) good and hard, but leave the right-side holder in snug-tight condition. Take a backlash reading, as shown, to see if the backlash is within the specified range indicated above; if not, loosen the left-side holder and increase or decrease the thickness of the liner there.



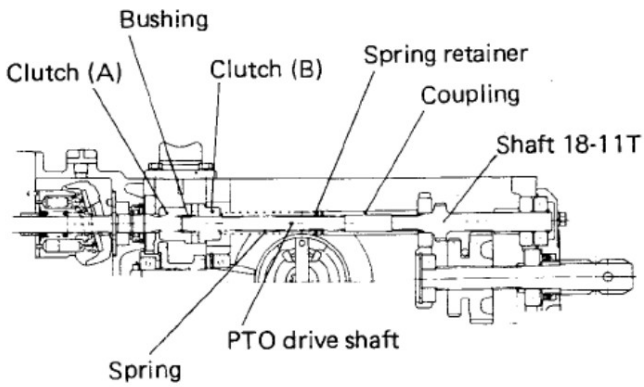
(c) A proper backlash having been secured, measure the clearance between the right-side holder and case, and fill the clearance with another liner equal in thickness to the reading. This liner, too, is to be formed in the same way as above. Put on stopper washers and tighten the right-side holder.

(d) Tap lightly on the differential gear case in place, directing the tapping force leftward and rightward to be sure that this case has no end play. Re-check the backlash and, upon noting that it is within the specified range, lock the bolts securing the bearing holders, right and left, by bending stopper washers sharply. The holder bolts are to be tightened to this torque value:

Tightening torque	2.5 ~ 3.0 kg-m (18 ~ 22 ft-lb)

Installing the PTO drive shaft

Set the circlip to PTO drive shaft, and install the spring retainer, spring clutch (B), bushing clutch (A) in order to PTO drive shaft. Connect PTO drive shaft and shaft 18-11T with the coupling.



Reassembling and installing the final case

(1) Grease oil seals, and fit the seals to those parts of final case admitting differential shaft and final shaft. For the final shaft, however, a washer must be installed before fitting the oil seal.

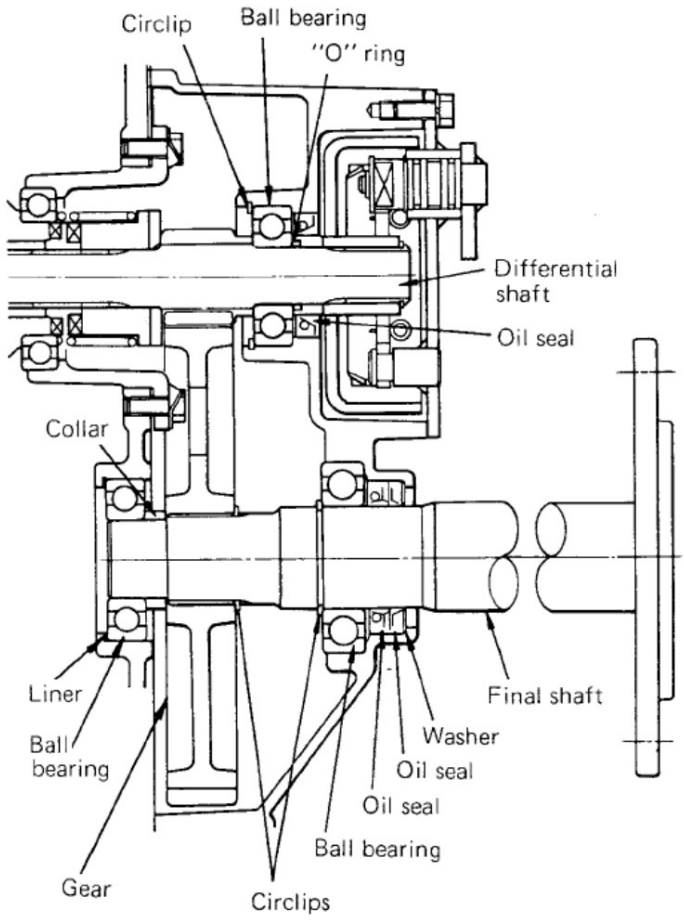
(2) Press ball bearing onto differential shaft. Grease "O" ring and fit it to oil seal collar. Feed the collar onto differential shaft, with its "O" ring coming next to the ball bearing.

(3) Insert differential shaft into final case, and set it in place by fitting circlip.

(4) Position final shaft in final case, fit ball bearing by pressing, and retain the bearing by installing circlip.

NOTE

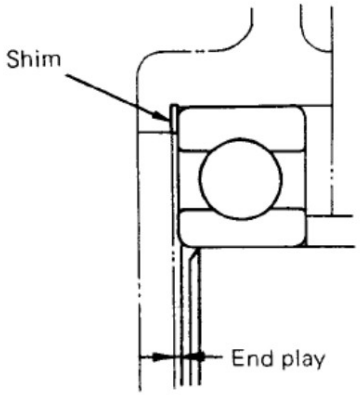
When forcing the bearing in, be sure to apply the push to its inner race.



(5) Install circlip (for final gear stopper) on final shaft, mount final gear and collar, and press in ball bearing.

(6) Take two measurements: 1) height of ball bearing face above the seat formed of transmission case for final case, and 2) distance from transmission case face to ball bearing holder. On the basis of these two measurements, determine the shim (liner) thickness necessary for giving an end play of 0.12 to 0.4 mm (0.005 to 0.016 in.) to final shaft. The liner with the determined thickness is to be used on ball bearing holder.

Final shaft end play	0.12 ~ 0.4 mm (0.005 ~ 0.016 in.)



(7) Apply sealant to the mating face of final case, fit the case to transmission case, and secure it by tightening its bolts to this torque value:

Tightening torque	5.0 ~ 6.0 kg-m (36 ~ 43 ft-lb)

NOTE

The right-side final case must be complete with differential lock shifter and lock sleeve: the shifter must be installed before inserting differential shaft into the case.

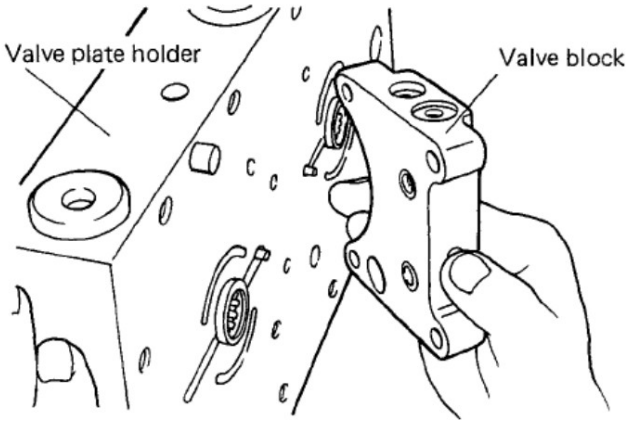
Reassembling and installing HST unit

Assemble and install HST unit according to the following procedure.

NOTE

Before assembling the parts, wash them with cleaning oil. Do not assemble the parts in dirty or dusty place. Assemble them on a clean table.

1) Install the left and right check valves to the valve block, and install the valve block ass'y to the valve plate holder with the hexagon socket head bolts.



NOTE

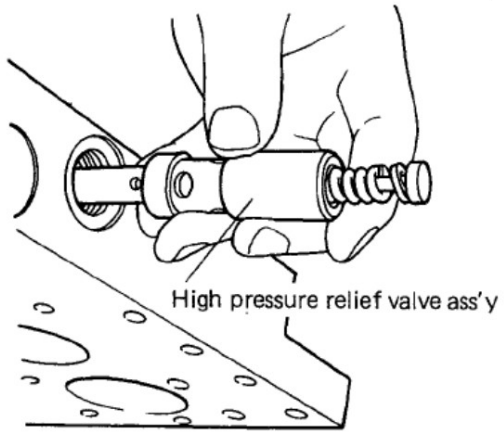
Be sure to install O-ring to the valve block before assembly.

2) Clean disassembled parts of neutral valve. Clean the bore of valve body as well. Spool should move smoothly in the case when installed in it (to the extent that falls down with own weight).
3) Assemble the neutral valve in reverse order of the disassembly procedure.

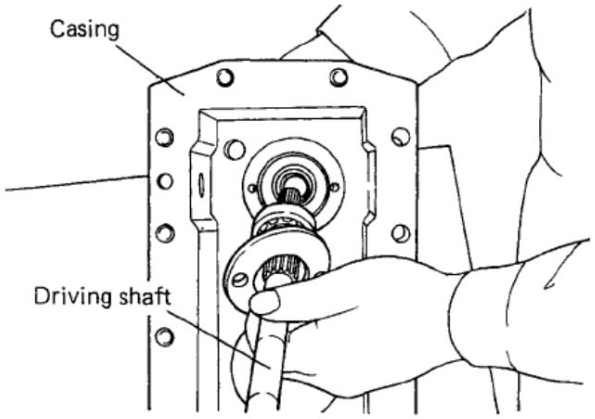
NOTE

Do not insert the plate too deeply but leave it to the extent that collar, spring, etc. will be pushed in when valve plug is tightened. V-groove of plate should come inside.

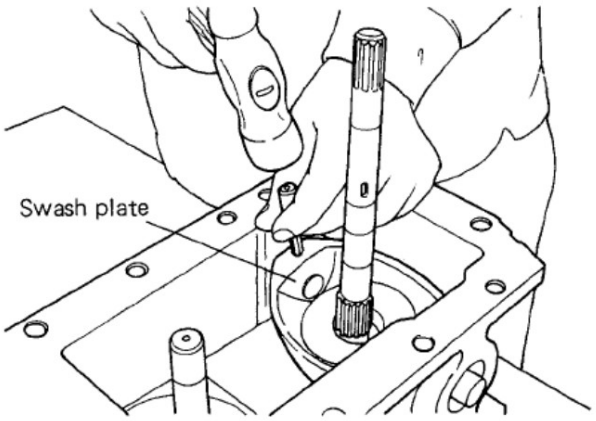
4) Install the low pressure relief valve to the valve plate holder.
5) Assemble the parts into the high pressure relief valve ass'y at first, and then, install the high pressure relief valve ass'y to the valve plate holder.



6) Install the bearing to the driving shaft, and install them to the casing. Install the plate from the inside of the casing with two hexagon socket head bolts.



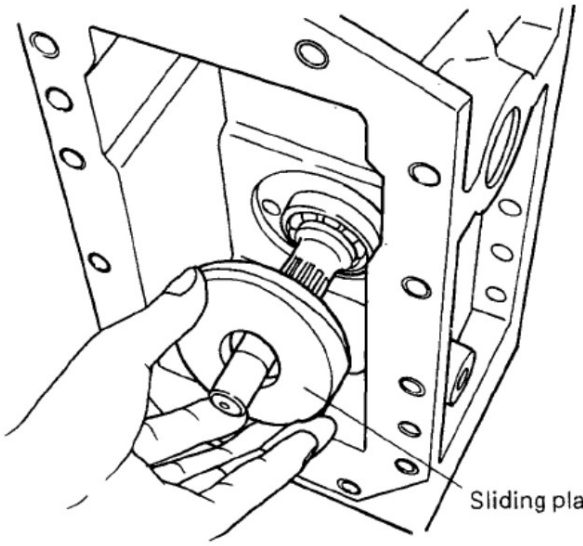
7) Install the pin and HST control shaft from the outside of the casing, and secure the swash plate with spring pin.

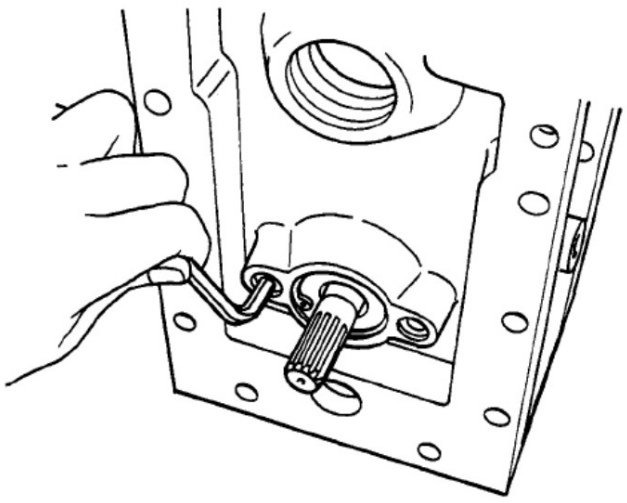


NOTE

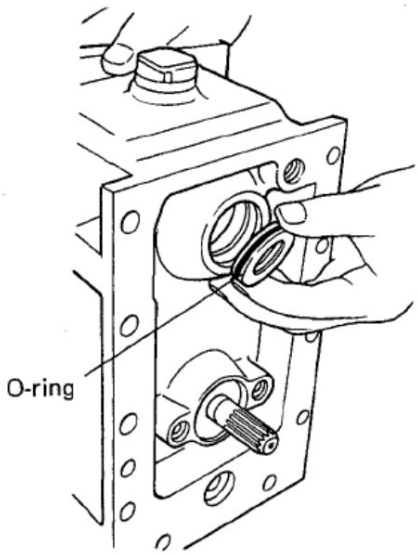
On HST control shaft side, two spring pins are used.

8) Install the bearing to the driven shaft, and install them to the casing body, and then, install the sliding plate. Secure the sliding plate from the outsude of the casing with the hexagon socket head bolts.

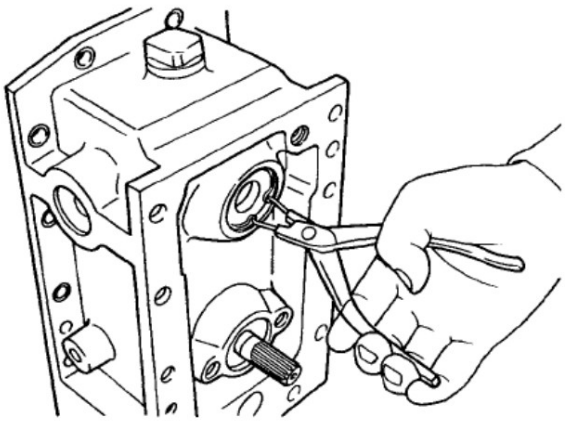




9) Install the oil seal and O-ring to the oil seal holder, and install them to the casing (on both of driving shaft and driven shaft).

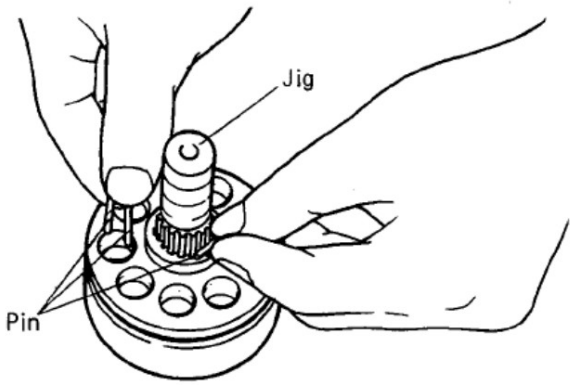


10) Secure the oil seal holder with the circlip (on both of driving shaft and driven shaft).

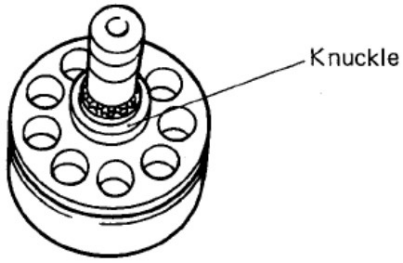


11) Assemble the rotating part assembly.

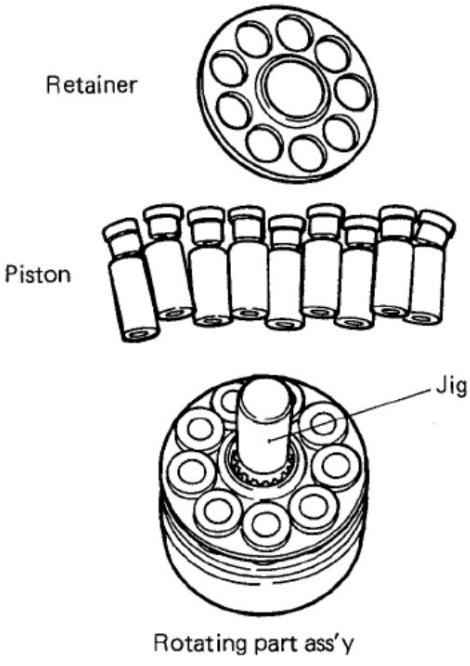
a) Insert the jig into the cylinder block, and push in three pins.



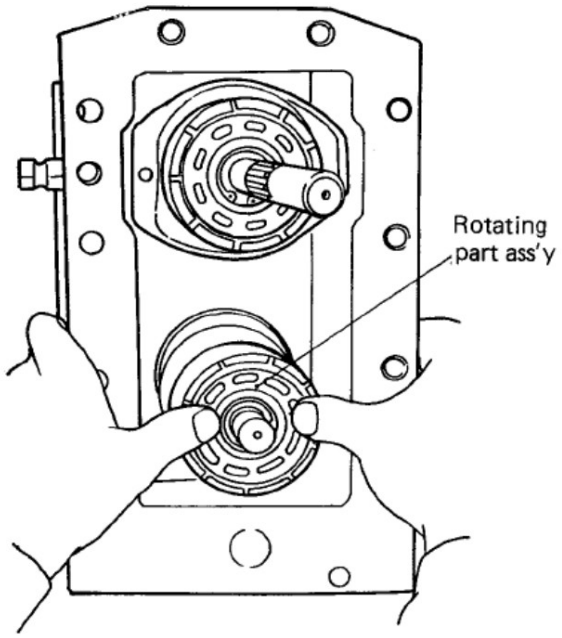
b) Assemble the knuckle.



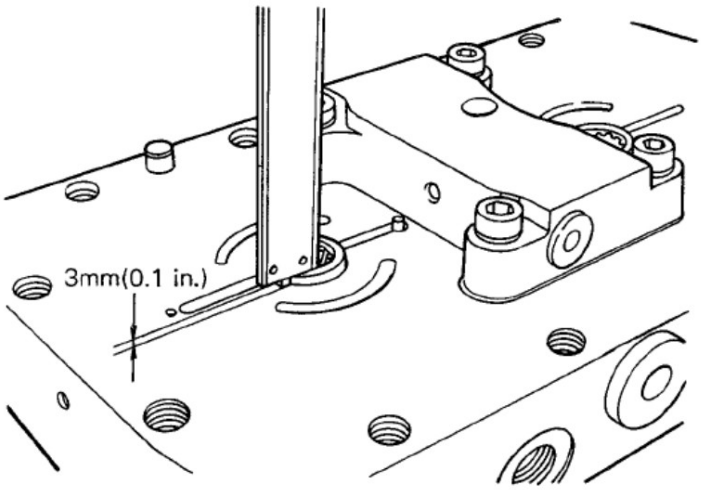
c) Place the piston and retainer.



d) After assembling the rotating part assembly, pull out the jig slowly, and install the rotating part assembly to the driving shaft and the driven shaft.



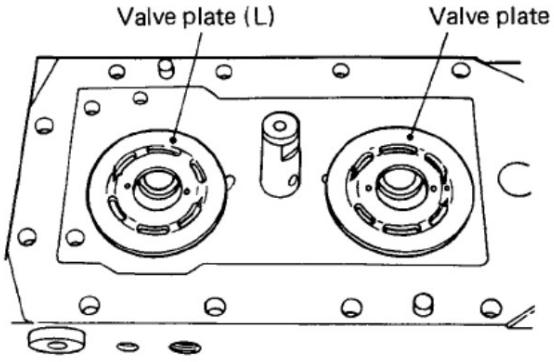
12) Fit the needle bearing to the valve plate holder forcedly.



NOTE

Confirm that the bearing is projected 3mm (0.1 inch) from the surface of the valve plate holder.

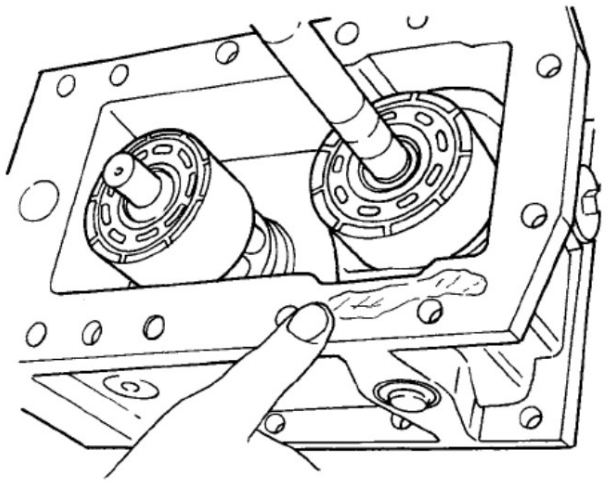
13) Fit the valve plate (L) to the needle bearing on the driving shaft side, and the valve plate to the needle bearing on the driven shaft side.



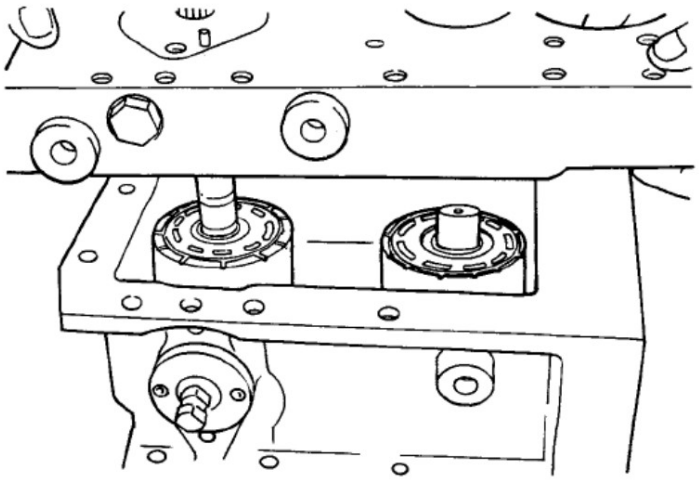
NOTE

Only one side of the valve plate (L) on the driving shaft is notched.

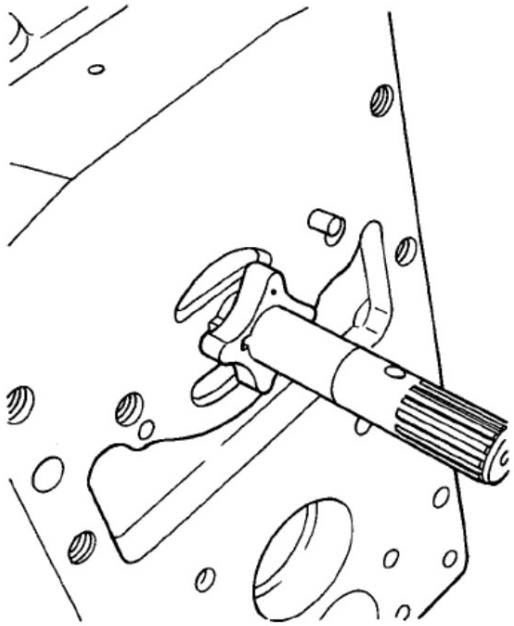
14) Apply sealant to the fitting faces of the casing and valve plate holder.



15) Assemble the valve plate holder ass'y and the casing ass'y.

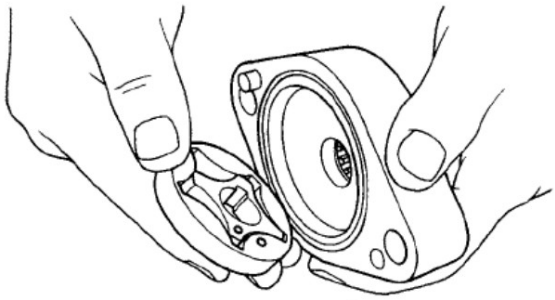


16) Install the vane to the driving shaft.



NOTE

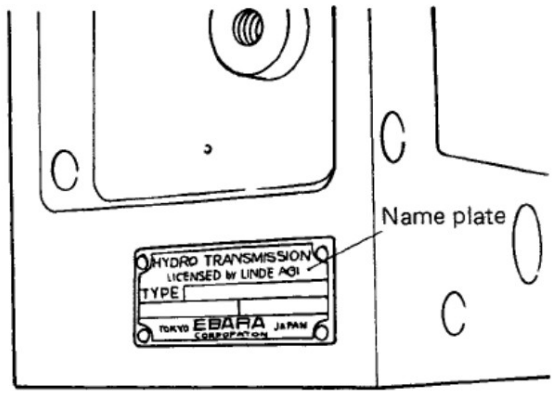
Assemble the vane and rotor with their point marks toward the casing side of the charge pump.



17) Install the oil seal cover, bearing, and rotor to the casign, and isntall them to the driving shaft.

NOTE

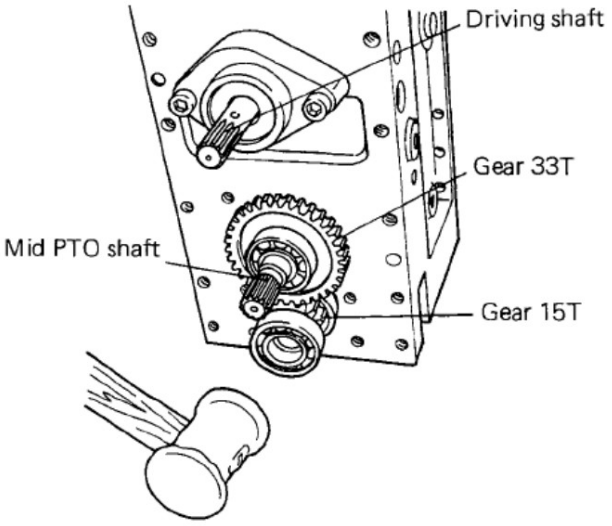
After disassembling and reassembling, take the record of serial No. on the name plate of HST unit.



18) Apply sealant to the fitting faces of HST unit and the transmission case, and assemble them.

Reassembling the mid PTO shaft

Install the ball bearing and gear 15T to the 4-wheel drive shaft in order from the front of HST unit. Install the ball bearing to HST unit. Assemble the mid PTO shaft, and install gear 33T and ball bearing in order to the shaft. Then, install the ball bearing to gear 15T on the 4-wheel drive shaft side, and install the bearing holder, on which the oil seal has been isntalled, with six bolts.



LINK ADJUSTING PROCEDURES FOR NEUTRAL POSITION OF HST

1. With ④ removed, separate the control link and HST control lever ⑥.
2. Make sure that ball is properly in the neutral position set plate hole ⑨.
3. Start engine and place sub-shift lever in L. Then gradually raise engine speed from to high speed.
4. If tractor moves forward or backward, return the engine to idling speed and with three bolts ⑩ loosened, move the control shaft lever back and forth, and stop it at approximate center of neutral zone, then tighten three bolts evenly.

NOTE

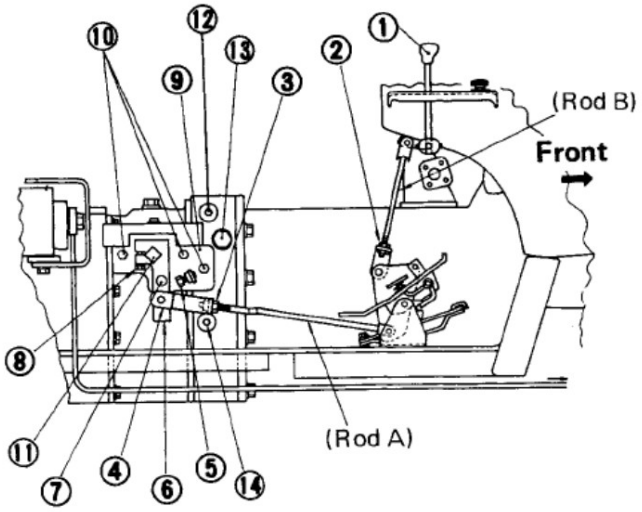
Lever should be operated by hand with the ball properly remaining in plate hole. It should not be operated with excessive force that causes the ball to fall out of the fall.

5. Run the engine at high speed again to make sure that the tractor stands still.
6. If it still moves, repeat adjustment per step (4) above.
7. Place HST foot control pedal in neutral position.
8. Interlock adjust rod A and control shaft lever by means of ④. Adjust rod length with nut ③ loosened so that rod A has equal amount of play in front and back.
9. For interlocking with hand control lever, place hand lever in neutral position of the lever guide and adjust the length of rod B with the nut ② loosened so that interlocking holes are aligned.

NOTE

External View-Right Side shows the link under manual operation.

Right side view]



1 HST control hand lever
2 Nut
3 Nut
4 Joint
5 Backward speed adjusting stopper
6 HST control lever
7 Poppet ball case
8 HST lever set bolt
9 Neutral position set plate
10 Set plate attaching bolt
11 HST control shaft
12 Neutral valve plug (R.H)

How to measure hydraulic pressure

The qaulity of HST unit can be judged by measuring the hydraulic pressure for the pump in HST unit.

1) Measuring hydraulic pressure in neutral valve

a) When setting HST control lever to the forward position, remove the plug, and install the high pressure gauge [Measuring range to be 0 - 350kg/cm² (4978psi)] to right side of the neutral valve. Install the low pressure gauge [Measuring range to be 0 - 40kg/cm² (568.8 psi)] to left side.

NOTE

When installing the pressure gauges to HST unit, be sure use sealing tape to prevent oil leakage.

When measuring on high pressure side of neutral valve:

i) Apply the parking brake to secure the tractor.

ii) Set the engine speed to 1,000rpm, and move HST control lever toward forward position slowly.

iii) Watch the engine speed, and read the hydraulic pressure when the engine speed starts to lower.

Hydraulic pressure at high pressure side of neutral valve	265 ~ 290 kg/cm² (3769 ~ 4125 psi.)

(Oil temp: 50±5°C/122±41°F)

When measuring on low pressure side of neutral valve:

i) Apply the parking brake to secure the tractor.

ii) Set the sub gear shift lever to neutral, and set the engine speed to 2,600 - 2,700rpm. Read the pressure gauge at this point.

Hydraulic pressure at low pressure side of neutral valve	4 ~ 6 kg/cm² (56.9 ~ 85.3 psi.)

(Oil temp: 50±5°C/122±41°F)

b) When setting HST control lever to the reverse position, the high and low pressure sides are reversed. Therefore, the pressure gauges must be installed in opposite way to the forward position. The hydraulic pressure on the high and low pressure sides can be measured as described in a).

NOTE

The pressure gauges must be set to the correct positions, and HST control lever must be moved correctly.

If the low pressure gauge is set to high pressure side, it may be damaged.

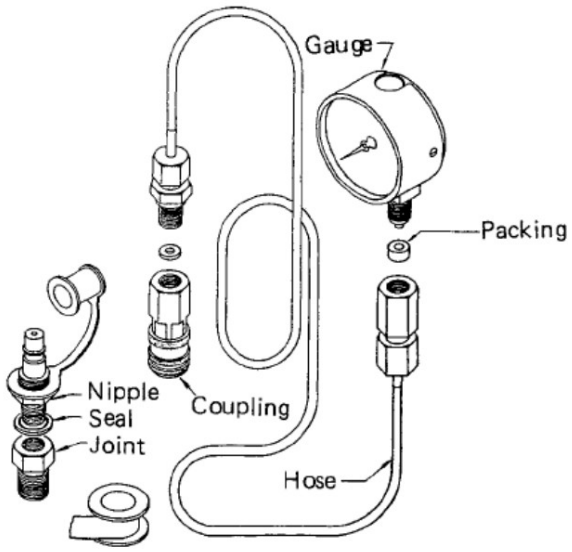
2) Measuring the suction pressure of charge pump.

Remove HST inlet pipe from HST unit. Remove the union bolt, and install the

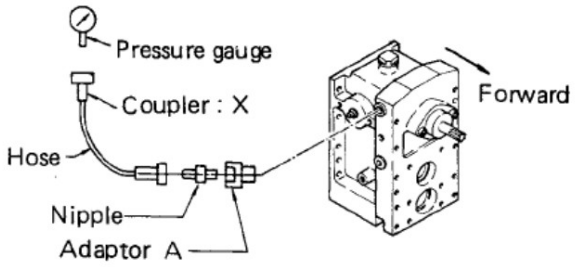
pressure gauge instead using the adapter B (Measuring range to be -1 to 1.5 kg/cm² (-14.2 to 21.3 psi)). Apply the parking brake to secure the tractor, and set the sub gear shift lever to neutral, and then start the engine. Set the engine speed to 2,600 - 2,700rpm, and read the suction pressure.

Suction pressure of charge pump	–0.2 kg/cm² or more (–2.84 psi or more)

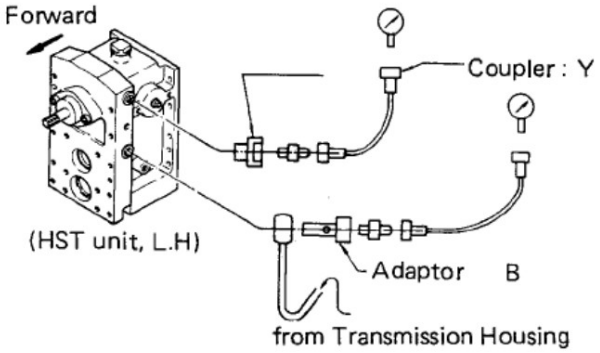
(Oil temp: 50±5°C/122±41°F)



Measuring tools



(HST unit, R.H.)



(HST unit, L.H.)

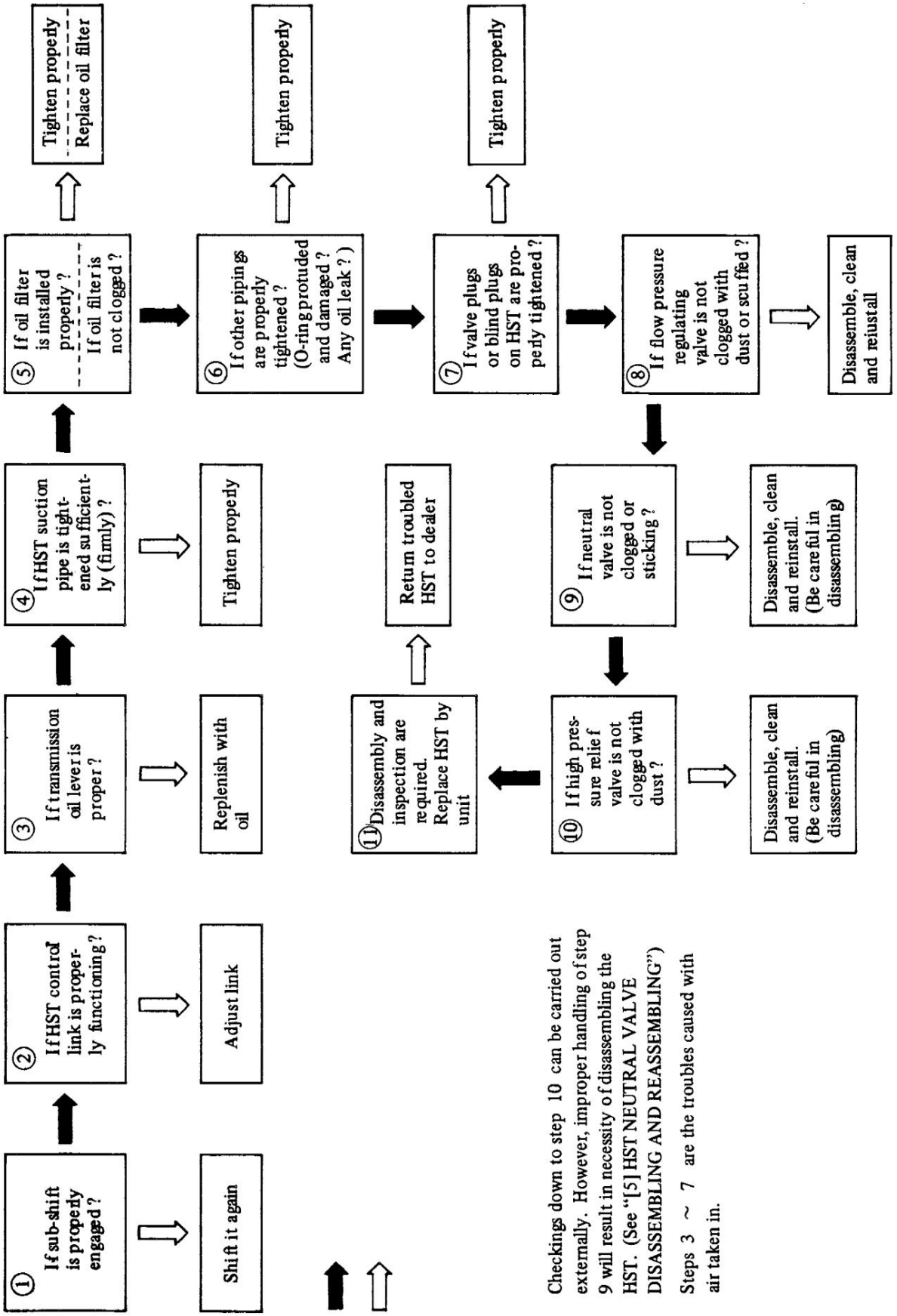
Piping for measuring the hydraulic pressure

[STARTING-UP THE HST TRACTOR AND TROUBLE SHOOTING]

Engine starting and travelling procedures

No.	OPERATION	RESULT
1	Place sub-shift in neutral	Turn on the start safety switch
2	Open throttle fully	Engine gets ready for start (Fuel injection increases)
3	Depress clutch all the way	HST driving load not applied
4	Turn on starter switch	Cranks the engine
5	After engine has started, return throttle lever to 1000 ~ low idling range	(For safety purpose)
6	Slowly return clutch pedal	Drives HST
7	Run the engine as it is for 3 ~ 5 mimutes	Supplys oil to HST circuit and waits for air to escape
8	Disengage clutch and move sub-shift lever to L or H	Power train connected to axle (HST drive is off)
9	Return clytch pedal	(Drive HST)
10	Increase engine speed appropriately	(Secures required drive force)
11	Moving HST lever slowly forward causes the tractor to travel forward. (Vice-versa)	HST power transmitted
12	To bring tractor to stop, return HST lever to neutral. (Returning it suddenly causes jerky stopping)	HST is brought to neutral and stops.
Remark : Stops 6 and 7 may be skipped unless it is immediately after an oil replacement. (Example: After pipe has been removed or filter has been replaced.)		

Checking procedures to follow if tractor does not move



Checkings down to step 10 can be carried out externally. However, improper handling of step 9 will result in necessity of disassembling the HST. (See "[5] HST NEUTRAL VALVE DISASSEMBLING AND REASSEMBLING")

Steps 3 ~ 7 are the troubles caused with air taken in.

Trouble shooting

	TROUBLE	CHECKING PROCEDURE
1.	Operating HST control lever does not cause tractor to move.	Check in accordance with procedures shown in "[2] CHECKING PROCEDURES TO FOLLOW IF TRACTOR DOES NOT MOVE"
2.	Tractor travels but does not again speed.	Is link lever properly tightened ? → (OK) → Is link lever deformed ? → (OK) → Is foreign matter in linkage ? → (OK) → HST control lever shaft loosened ⇩ Adjust or retighten. ⇩ Correct or replace. ⇩ Remove it. ⇩ Retighten.
3.	Does not travel normally (travels and stops against intention).	Check in accordance with steps ② and down shown in
4.	Stops by slight load. * (Engine speed does not drop but HST noise gets greater and stops.)	① Check in accordance with steps ② ~ ⑦ in [2]. ② If OK, check with [2] ⑩⇨⑧⇨⑨, in that order. Note) If adjustment is proper and air has not been taken in, it is highly probable that dust is in the high pressure safety valve.
5.	Travels only in one direction, (forward or reverse)	Check the control link → Disassemble and check the spool valve. (for dust or sticking) ⇩ Tighten, adjust ⇩ Clean and relative
6.	Even if HST co trol lever is moved slowly tractor makes jerky start only.	Same as above 5.
7.	Does not stop even with HST control lever returned to neutral.	With HST control lever in neutral, is control lever poppet ball on HST case end properly in its hole ? (OK) → Remove external link and loosen guide plate of lever on HST end, and adjust. (NO) ⟹ Disassemble and check spool valve. After cleaning and reinstallation, adjust in reversed procedure. ⇩ (External link adjustment)
8.	Vibration betwenn charge pump and filter or HST noise is great.	①Check in accordance with steps [2] ② ~ ⑦ . Note) If it has been working normally until just before, clogging of oil filter is suspectable.
9.	Oil temperature increases.	Oil cooler / Radiator } Clogged (OK) → Fan belt loosended or damaged. (OK) → Oil cooler damaged or clogged. (OK) → Ask dealer for disassembly and repair of HST. ⇩ Clean ⇩ Adjust tension or replace. ⇩ Clean or replace.

Remarks: *1. In case setting location of control lever is close to neutral position, travelling speed may fall or tractor may stop due to travelling load. If such is the case, adjust the speed by moving the HST control lever toward the direction where the speed increases. (Change of travelling speed according to load is the characteristics of HST and does not represent any trouble.)

REMARQUES

CHAPTER 6
BRAKE SYSTEM

6

REMARQUES

TABLE OF CONTENTS

REMARQUES

DESCRIPTION

The brake system for the MITSUBISHI MT160/D, MT180/D and MT180H/HD is of a mechanical internal expansion type.

When the foot pedal is depressed, a cam rotates, the brake lining is pressed against the inside of the brake drum and brake is applied. Brakes are installed in right and left final cases.

Two brake pedals are provided to brake right and left wheels independently. It is an essential requirement for an agricultural tractor that one wheel can be locked completely to make a sharp turn in a confined space or in the corner of the field. Both right and left wheels can be braked at the same time by linking right and left brake pedals with a connecting plate.

The brake drum is installed on the differential shaft which rotates at higher speed than the rear wheels do, to ensure high braking efficiency.

High braking efficiency both in forward and reverse is also provided by its internal expansion type structure where the lining of brake shoe is pressed against the inside of the brake drum by means of the cam.

The brake system is completely enclosed, which eliminates trouble due to water or dust even when the tractor works in paddy fields or very dusty places.

CONSTRUCTION

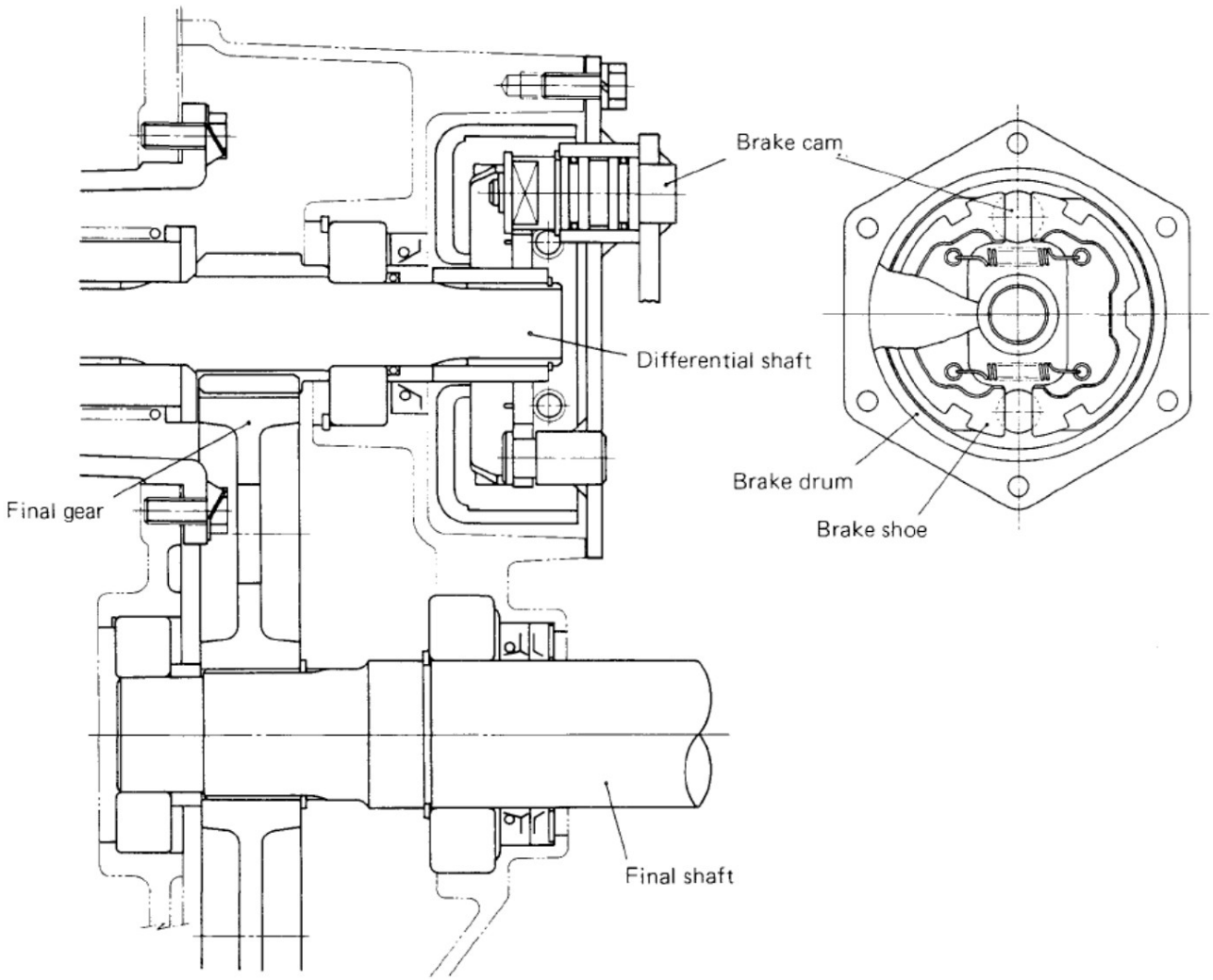
The brake drum is installed at the end of the differential shaft mounted on the differential side gear. In the middle of the shaft, a gear is provided to drive a final shaft.

The brake drum is covered with a brake cover attached to the final case and completely enclosed in the brake cover in which the brake shoe is incorporated.

Anchor pin, cam shaft and brake shoe with a lining are fitted to the brake cover. Brake cam arm is installed in the outside of the brake cover to rotate the cam. The brake pedal is fitted to the cross shaft mounted on the lower part of the clutch housing. Brake cam arm and brake pedal are connected by brake rod and when the pedal is depressed, the cam is rotated via the brake cam arm and the lining is pressed against the brake drum, thus brake is applied.

When the connecting plate is released, right and left wheels can be braked independently and used selectively depending on the work and field conditions.

Parking brake is applied by connecting right and left brake pedals with the connecting plate and lock the brake pedals with the parking brake lever on the clutch housing side.



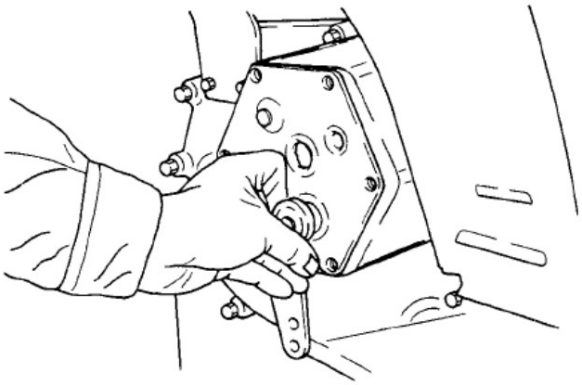
DISASSEMBLY

Disassembling the brake cover and brake drum

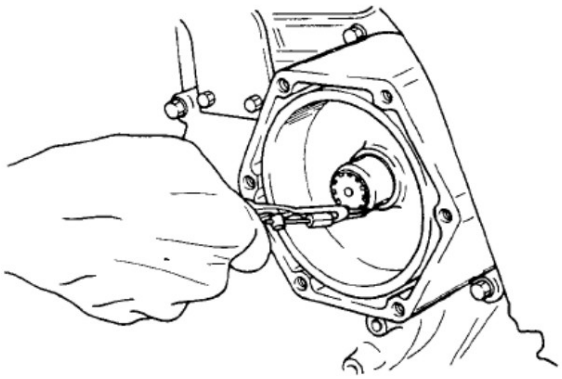
Place a jack under the transmission case and take up the weight of the case with the jack to such an extent that the rear wheels will become slightly airborne. Apply parking brake, and loosen rear wheel bolts; remove the rear wheels and release the parking brake.

(1) Remove brake rod from brake cam shaft.

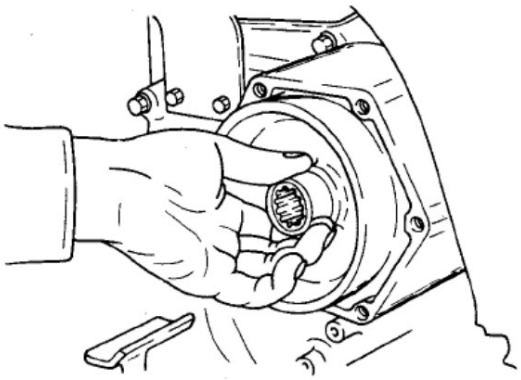
(2) Loosen the six M8 × 20 bolts securing the brake cover, and remove the cover.



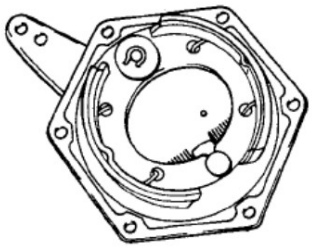
(3) Remove circlip on differential shaft.



(4) Remove brake drum.



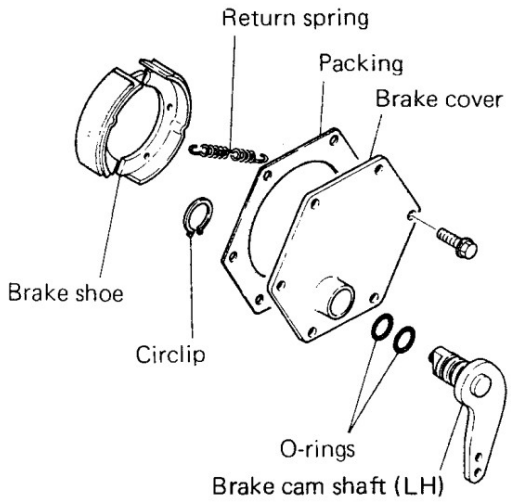
(5) Remove brake shoes from brake cover, as required.



NOTE

To replace differential-shaft oil seals and ball bearings, remove final case from transmission case in order to permit their replacement. How to remove the final case is explained in "Disassembly of the final case."

(6) Remove circlip on cam shaft, and take off cam shaft.

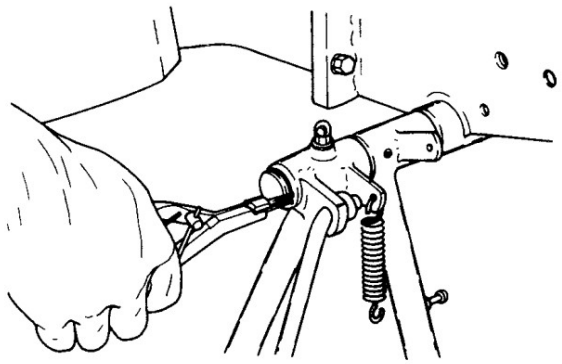


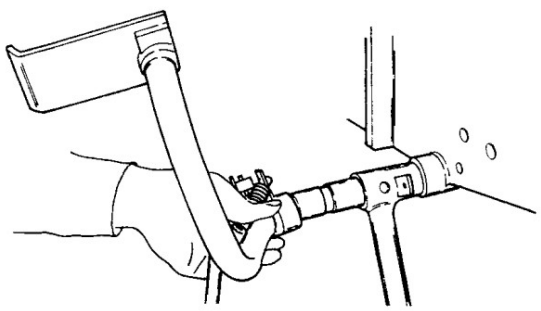
Disassembling the brake pedals

If brake pedals alone have to be removed, it is not necessary to remove both steps, right and left: remove the right-side step only. The left-hand step, too, must be removed if brake cross shaft is to be disassembled.

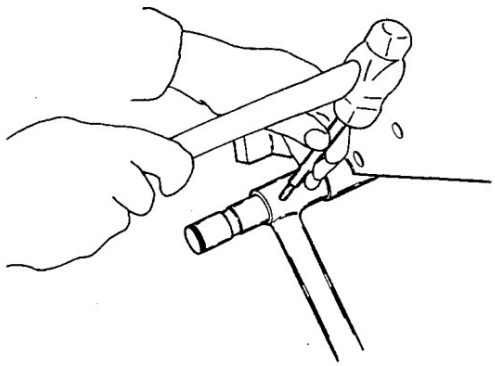
(1) Remove brake cam and brake rod.

(2) Pick out circlip on the right-hand end of brake cross shaft, and remove brake pedal on the right.

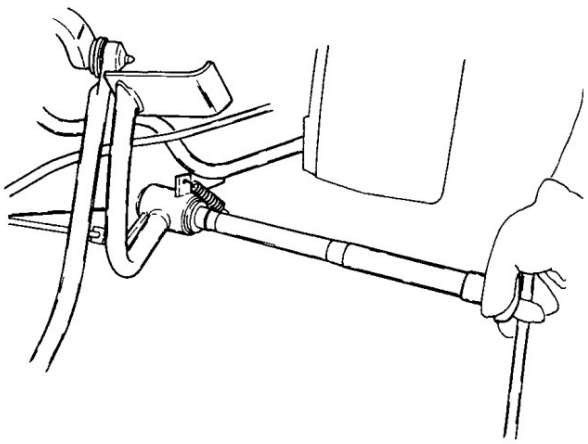




(3) Draw out spring pin from left-hand brake pedal, and remove brake pedal.



(4) Remove brake cross shaft by drawing it out to the left.



INSPECTION AND MAINTENANCE

(1) Check the brake cam shaft O-ring, and if scratched, replace.

(2) If the brake shoe is excessively worn, replace.

(3) Check for oil or grease on the brake shoe.

(4) Check the oil seal for oil leakage.

(5) Check the brake cam shaft for excessive wear.

(6) Check the return spring for fatigue.

(7) Check the brake cross shaft and brake pedal for rust or streaks.

Inspection	Maintenance	Service limit
Worn brake lining	If the thickness of lining is more than 2.5 mm (0.10 in.), use it again.	If it is less than 2.5 mm (0.10 in.), replace.
Uneven brake lining contact	Grind the surface.	If it is 2.5 mm (0.10 in.) in thickness after grinding, replace.
Oil on brake lining	If only a little, correct it with sandpaper.	If a lot of oil is attached, replace the shoes.
Brake drum	If it is scarred, grind it.	If the drum inner diameter exceeds 114.5 mm (4.508 in.), replace.
Return spring		If it is weakened, replace.
Brake pedal free play	Adjust it with brake rod.	20 ~ 30 mm (0.79 ~ 1.18 in.)
Parking brake	Apply oil to ensure that lock plate operates properly.	
Oil leakage in brake	Check it for leaking parts.	If oil seal is faulty, replace it.
Foreign particles in drum	Check "O" ring and packing	If "O" ring and packing are faulty, replace them.

REASSEMBLY

Reassemblying the brake drum and brake cover

(1) Install greased O-ring to the cam shaft, and apply grease to the grease groove. Install the cam to the brake cover, and set it with the circlip.

(2) Hook the spring to the brake shoes and install them to the brake cover.

(3) Install the brake drum to the differential shaft, and set it with the circlip.

(4) Fit packing to brake cover; place the cover on final case, move cam shaft to spread out brake shoes against drum; and, while centering brake cover, tighten bolts to this torque value:

Tightening torque	2.0 ~ 2.5 kg-m (14 ~ 18 ft-lb)

Reassembling the brake pedals

(1) Grease the brake cross shaft mounting boss under the clutch housing, and insert the brake cross shaft into the boss.

(2) Push in the left-side brake pedal, and install the spring pin.

(3) Push in the right side brake pedal, and install the circlip.

(4) Install both right- and left-side brake rods, and set them with cotter pins.

(5) Install the step, and install the return spring.

NOTE

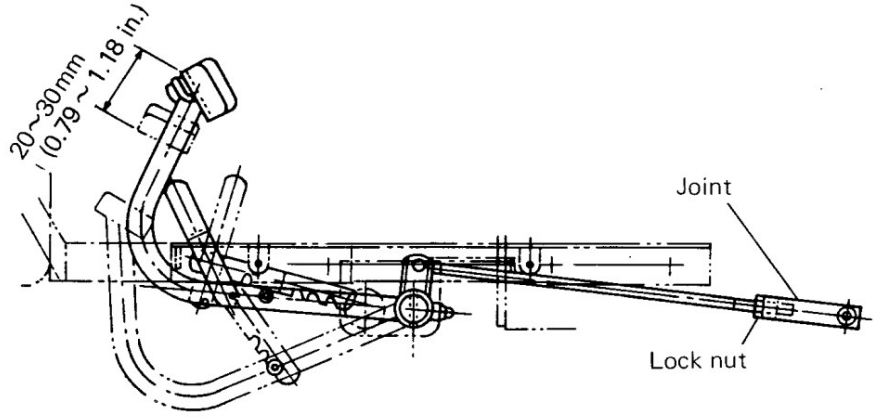
Make sure that brake pedals move smoothly.

ADJUSTMENT

Adjusting the brake pedals

Free play of the brake pedal must be maintained within the correct range, otherwise, accidents may occur or power will be lost.

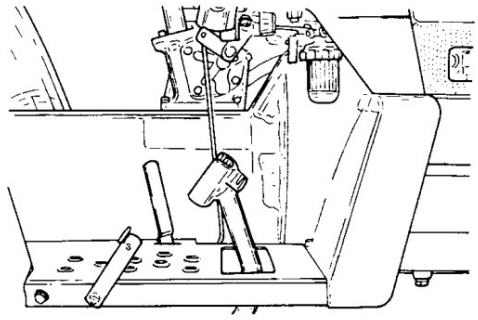
Before the brake on one side becomes unadjustable even by means of brake rod, caused by premature wear of the brake lining due to its more frequent use than the other, periodically interchange the right and left brake shoes. Special care should be taken in the case where the brake on one side only is frequently used.



(1) Loosen lock nut and rotate the joint piece to produce a free play of 20 to 30 mm (0.79 to 1.18 in.) at the brake pedal. With this much play obtained, tighten the lock nut.

(2) Confirm that the right and left brakes operate simultaneously by running the tractor. If not, adjust both of them by means of the brake rod.

(3) Make sure that the parking brake operates correctly.



TROUBLESHOOTING

Poor braking

Possible cause	Remedy
Too much pedal free play	Adjust with brake rod.
Worn brake lining	Adjust with brake rod or replace brake shoes.
Uneven lining contact	Grind with sandpaper.
Burnt lining	Replace brake shoes.
Oil on brake lining	Repair oil leakage and replace brake shoes.

Brakes remain ON

Possible cause	Remedy
Not enough pedal free play	Adjust with brake rod.
Loose brake spring	Replace.
Loose return spring	Replace.
Cross shaft and holder sticking	Disassemble, correct and apply grease.
Brake shoes seized with rusts	Remove rusts.

Abnormal noise

Possible cause	Remedy
Defective brake cover centering	Loosen bolts securing cover, and retighten them while moving cam lever.
Foreign particles in drum	Clear away.
Damaged lining	Replace brake shoes.
Damaged return spring	Replace.
Brake shoes seized with rusts	Remove rusts.

SPECIFICATIONS

Type	Foot operating internal expansion water-proof dry type
Brake pedal	Separate with interlocking device, foot operating type
Parking brake	Main brake used hand operating lock type
Lining material	Specially woven fabric
Lining dimension (length × width × thickness)	119 × 28.5 × 4.0 mm (4.7 × 1.12 × 0.16 in.)
Number of linings	4
Drum inner diameter	$114\ ^{+0.1}_{0}$ mm ($4.49\ ^{+0.004}_{0}$ in.)
Braking position	Differential shaft
Brake pedal free play	20 ~ 30 mm (0.79 ~ 1.18 in.)

REMARQUES

ISO

CHAPTER 7-1
HYDRAULIC SYSTEM

7-1

REMARQUES

TABLE OF CONTENTS

REMARQUES

DESCRIPTION

The hydraulic system in MITSUBISHI MT160 and MT160D is simple in construction; its operation is accurately controlled form an easy-to-operate control lever.

For the source of hydraulic pressure, a gear pump of pressure-balanced type is used. The pump is mounted on the timing gear case of the engine, and is driven through gears inside the case. Thus, as long as the engine is running, hydraulic pressure is available.

For the hydraulic actuator to raise and lower the hitched implement, such as the rotary and plow, a single-acting cylinder is used.

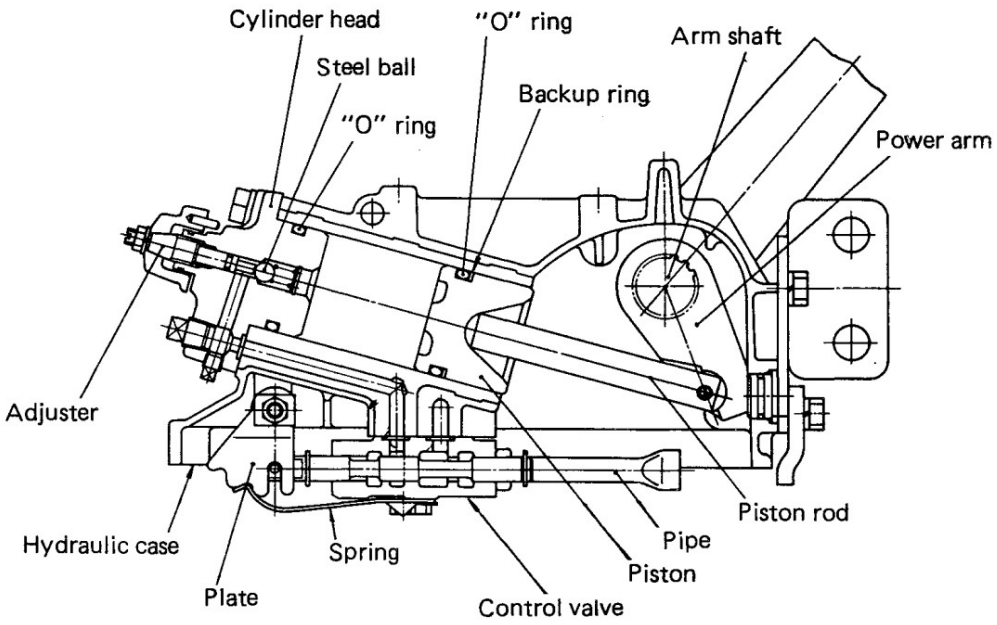
It is the oil in the transmission case that the oil pump draws and delivers to the hydraulic circuit. A high-performance oil filter keeps the oil clean for the hydraulic system. A provision is made in the discharge side of the pump to make the pressurized oil available for driving an external hydraulic device, a feature made possible by the high capacity of the pump.

The hydraulic control valve is a three-way spool valve and, as such, is a precision-machined component. It is a compact unit installed in the hydraulic case. The lowering speed control lever is installed on the cylinder head of the hydraulic case.

The control lever is so linked to the lift arm that, when the hitched implement reaches a certian elevation in lifting action, the lever returns by itself to its neutral position, thereby unloading the pump.

There is no need to drain the transmission in order to permit removal of the hydraulic case.

CONSTRUCTION



Schematic diagram of hydraulic system

The oil pump draws oil in the transmission oil sump through the oil filter. The discharge line of the pump is tied to the oil inlet of the control valve.

In the control valve, oil from the pump is directed to the hydraulic cylinder or to the return line, depending on the position of the spool.

Moving the control lever to "LIFT" position directs the oil to the hydraulic cylinder to push out its piston, whose outward movement is transmitted through piston rod to the lift fork. This fork then rotates the ram shaft to turn up the lift arm, thereby lifting the hitched implement.

As the lift arm rises to a predetermined elevation, another arm (auto-return arm) pulls back the control lever to "NEUTRAL" through a link rod; and when this occurs, the spool traps the oil in the line extending to the hydraulic cylinder, so that the lift arm is prevented from turning down, thereby holding the hitched implement in lifted position.

With the spool in "NEUTRAL," the incoming oil returns to the transmission and the pump runs in no-load condition.

Moving the control lever to "DOWN" position pushes the spool all the way, communicating the hydraulic cylinder to another return line. Consequently, the piston (on which the weight of the implement is acting through the arms) moves inward to force the oil out. The displaced oil flows through the flow control valve and returns to the transmission oil sump. In other words, "DOWN" motion is gravity but "braked" by the flow control valve.

As an optional feature, another control valve may be provided elsewhere, preferably at the hitched implement to drive an additional hydraulic ram.

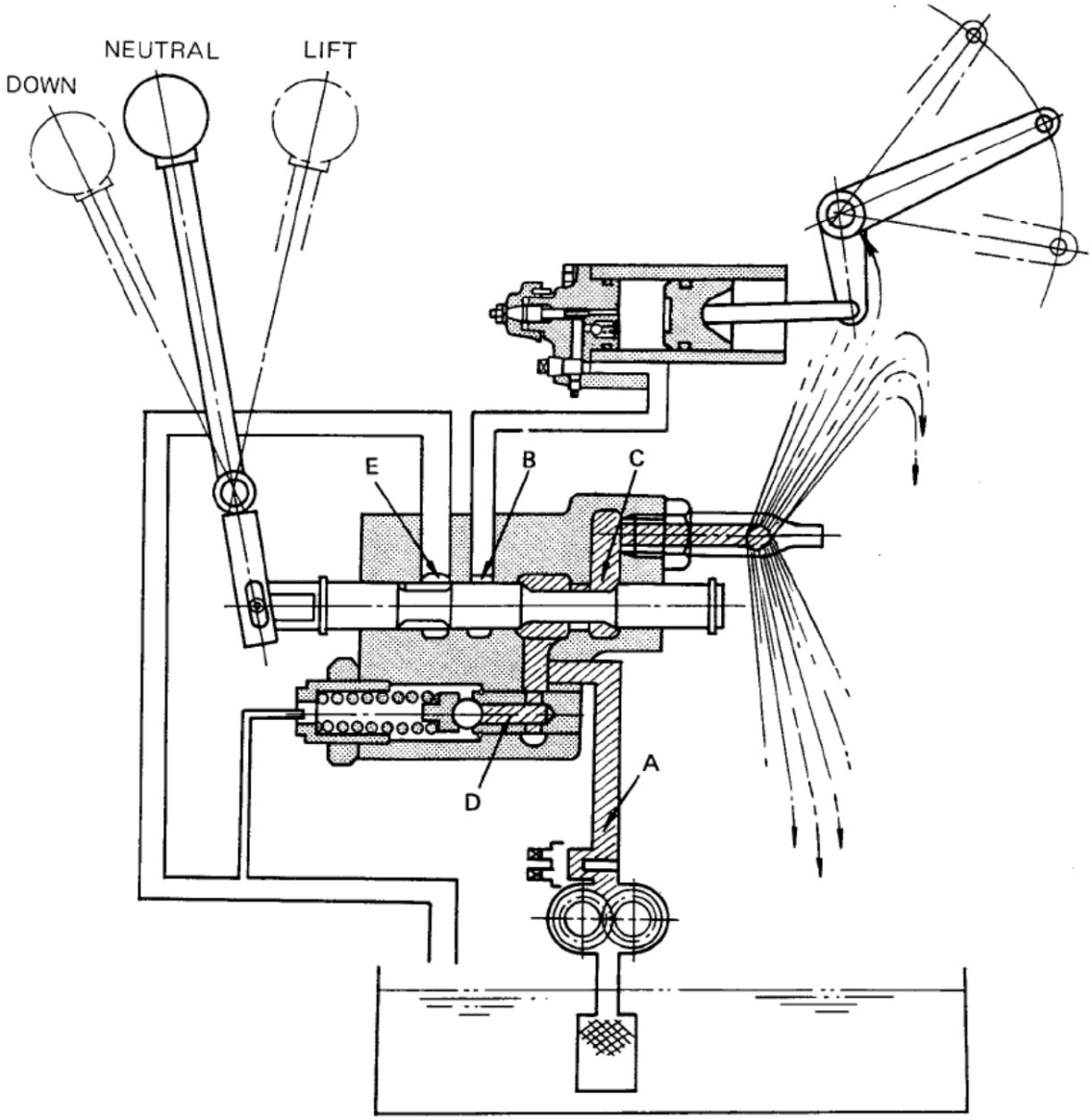
And also an additional single-acting hydraulic ram can be provided and operated from the hydraulic control valve. These are what are referred to as an external service.

OPERATING PRINCIPLES

NEUTRAL

With the spool in "NEUTRAL" position, pressurized oil enters control valve through port A and returns to the transmission case through port C. All return oil is spread from the return line to the piston rod and ram shaft to lubricate them.

Port B is blocked by the spool land, so that the oil in the line to the hydraulic cylinder remains trapped. Thus, the hitched implement is held rigidly in its current vertical position. Needless to say, the pump under this condition supports no load.

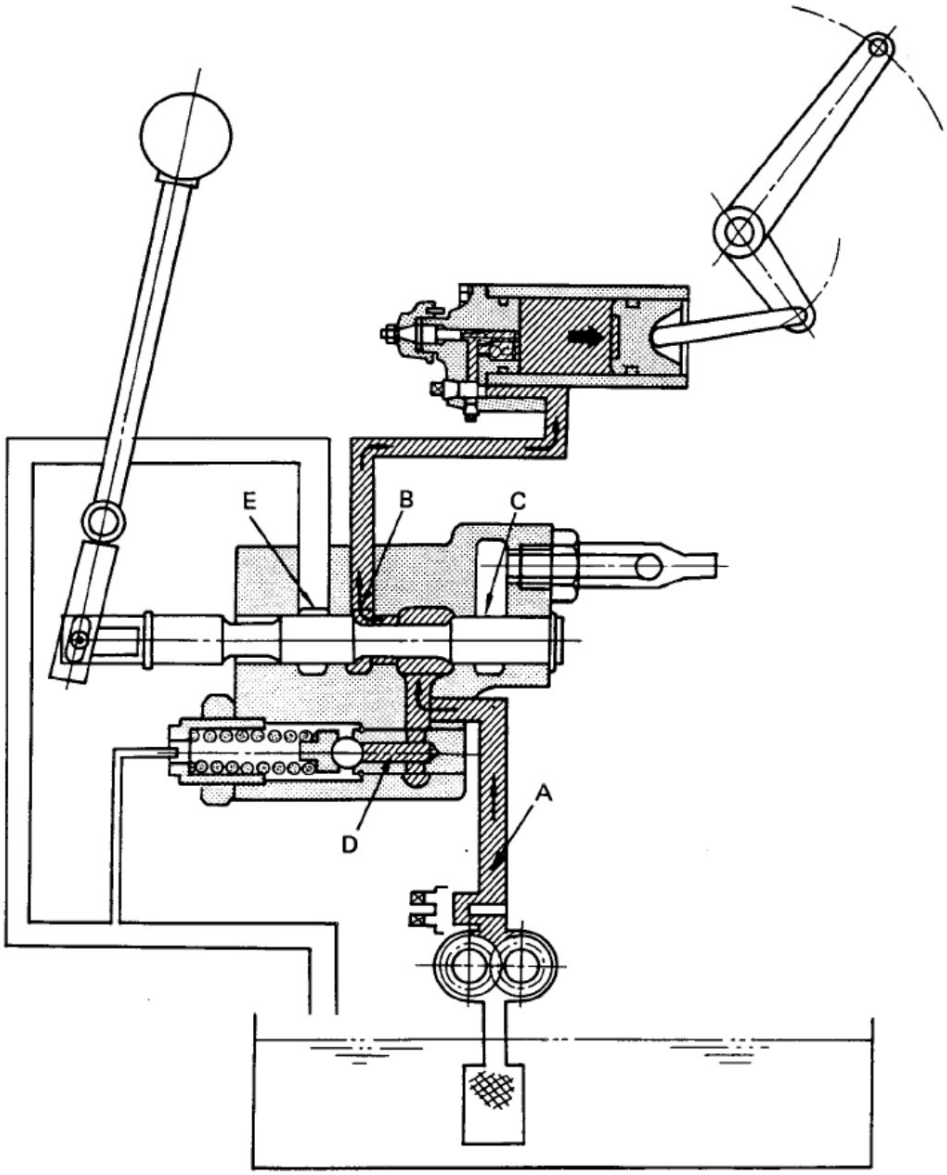


LIFT

With the spool in "LIFT" position, port C is blocked while port B is opened. The oil pushes on the piston in the hydraulic cylinder to do the work already explained.

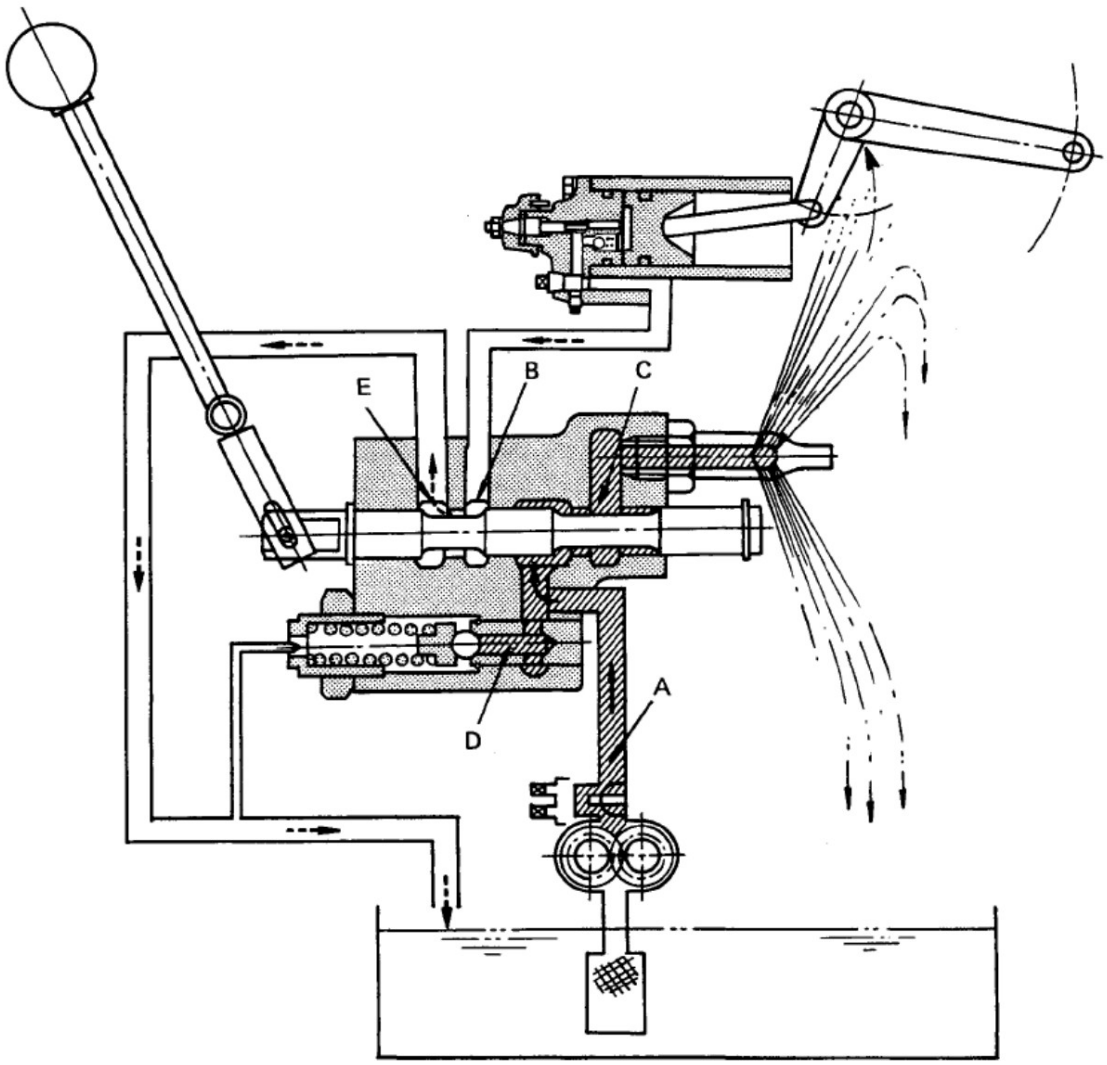
As the hitched implement rises to the limited elevation, the spool gets pulled back by the control lever as actuated through linkage from the auto-return arm, and halts at "NEUTRAL" position.

In the event the hitched implement offers abnormally large resistance to the lifting force, oil pressure in the pump discharge line will build up or peak. In such a case, excess pressure is bled out through port D in the safety valve.



DOWN

Moving the control lever forward, that is, to "DOWN" relocates the spool to communicate port B to port E, keeping port C open to allow the discharged oil to return to the sump in the transmission. As explained previously, the oil flows out of the hydraulic cylinder through the flow control valve (acting like a brake) and returns through port E to the sump, so that the hitched implement goes down by its own weight.

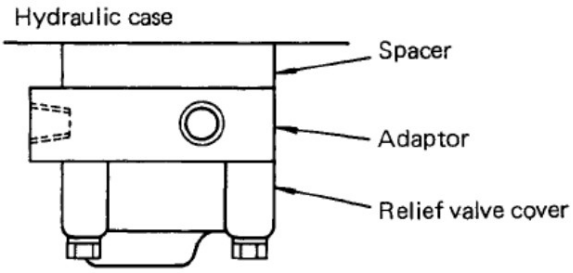


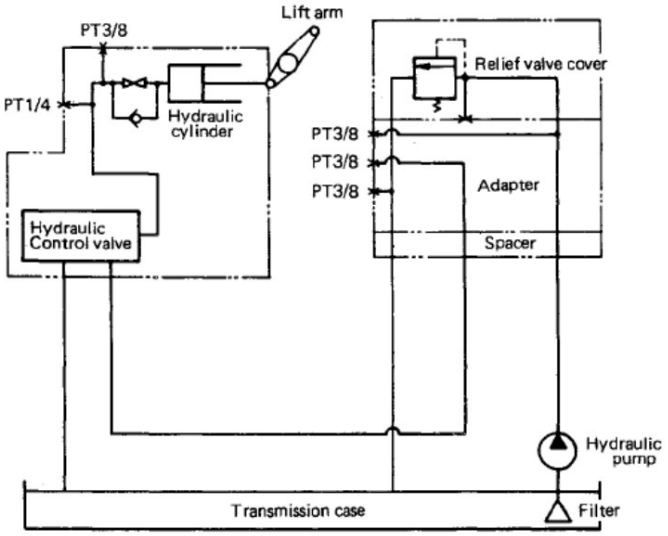
HYDRAULIC POWER TAKE-OFF FOR EXTERNAL SERVICE

There are two ways as under on the hydraulic external service. Select it according to the kind of control valve attached to the implement.

NOTE

External service cannot be done for the machine which is equipped with control valve for use of 3-point linkage of tractor.





Remove the cover (relief valve) on the left side of hydraulic case and secure the spacer, adaptor plate and cover to the hydraulic case. Pass a hose or pipe to IN port of the control valve installed on the implement side from OUT port of the adaptor plate. Pass a hose or pipe to IN port of the adaptor from OUT port of the control valve to make a hydraulic circuit. The implement can be operated by acuating the lever of control valve attached to the implement.

NOTE

1) Thread size of adaptor plate is PT-3/8.
2) In order to do the hydraulic external service, never use the external port located in the hydraulic cylinder head as it may cause trouble in the hydraulic system.

HYDRAULIC CASE ASSEMBLY

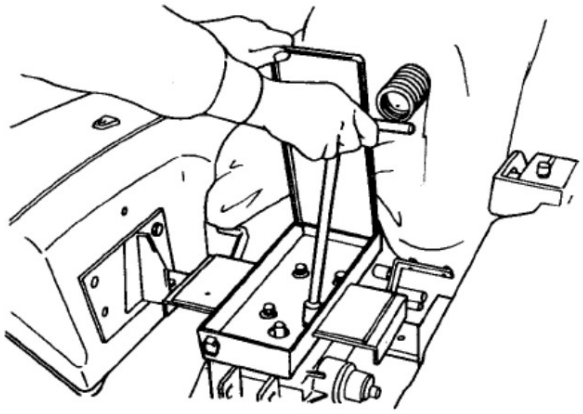
Causes necessitating hydraulic system disassembly may be regarded as occurring in three areas: 1) hydraulic case, in which the control valve is mounted, 2) oil pump, and 3) oil piping inclusive of the oil filter.

Whenever trouble develops, a rough check must be made on each area to pinpoint the suspected part or component. Disassembly of parts and components in sound condition should be avoided and can be avoided by viewing the hydraulic system as consisting of the three groups.

Disassembling the hydraulic case

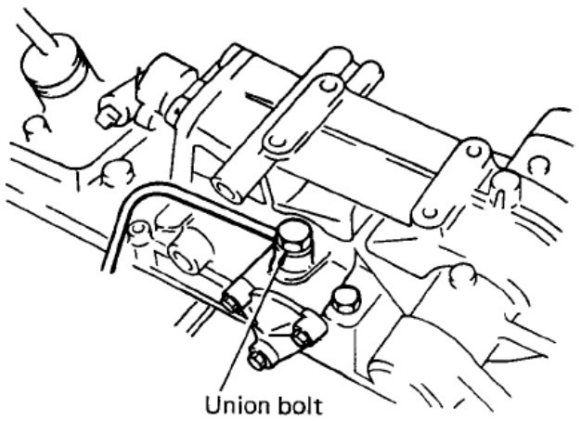
It is not necessary to drain the transmission in order to permit removal of the hydraulic case.

(1) Remove seat and tool box.

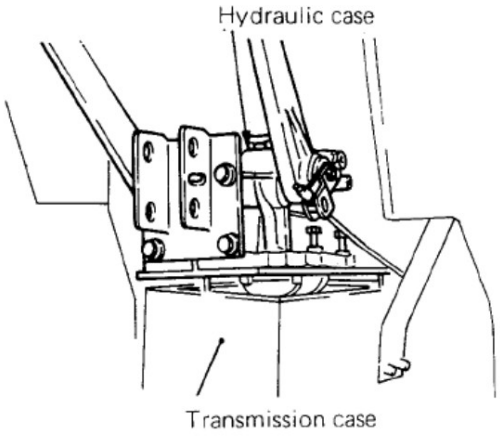


(2) Remove fender bracket and left-had cover.

(3) Remove union bolt securing the pimp pressure pipe to hydraulic case.



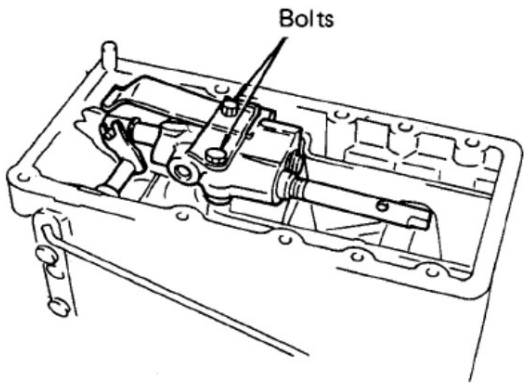
(4) Remove 8 bolts securing the hydraulic case to transmission case, and take off the case.



NOTE

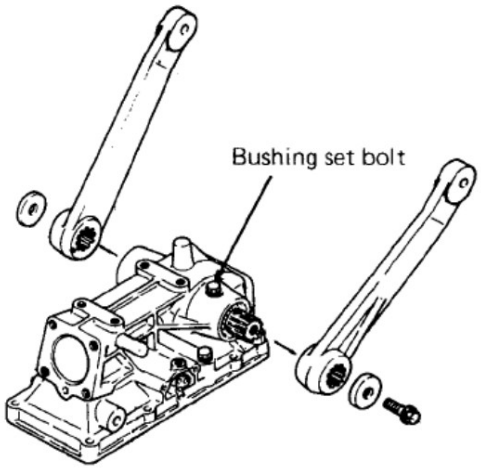
Because of sealant used in the joint of hydraulic case and transmission case, the hydraulic case may not come off easily; if so, loosen the joint by poking with the tip of plain screwdriver, taking care not to damage the case, and remove it by lifting it straight off. Remember, the hydraulic case is made of an aluminum alloy and is not so resistant to shock load as are steel or cast-iron parts.

(5) Straighten the lock plate under the heads of bolts securing the control valve, loosen the bolts and remove the control valve. Be sure to pick out "O" ring.



(6) Pull off cotter pin from the tip of control lever to free the auto-return feedback rod, loosen the bolt on the right-side lift arm, and remove the feedback rod.

(7) Remove right-side lift arm. Loosen the bolt on the left-side lift arm, and remove this arm, too.



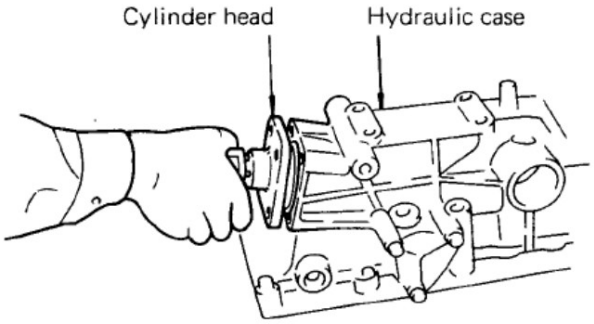
(8) Remove the bushing set bolts, move ram shaft to and fro by driving on its two ends alternately and remove bushings and oil seals. Draw ram shaft out.

NOTE

When pulling ram shaft out, hold the lift fork by hand so that the shaft comes off smoothly.

(9) Remove lift fork and piston rod.

(10) Loosen M10 bolts on cylinder head, and remove the head.



(11) Push piston out into hydraulic case, and take out piston.

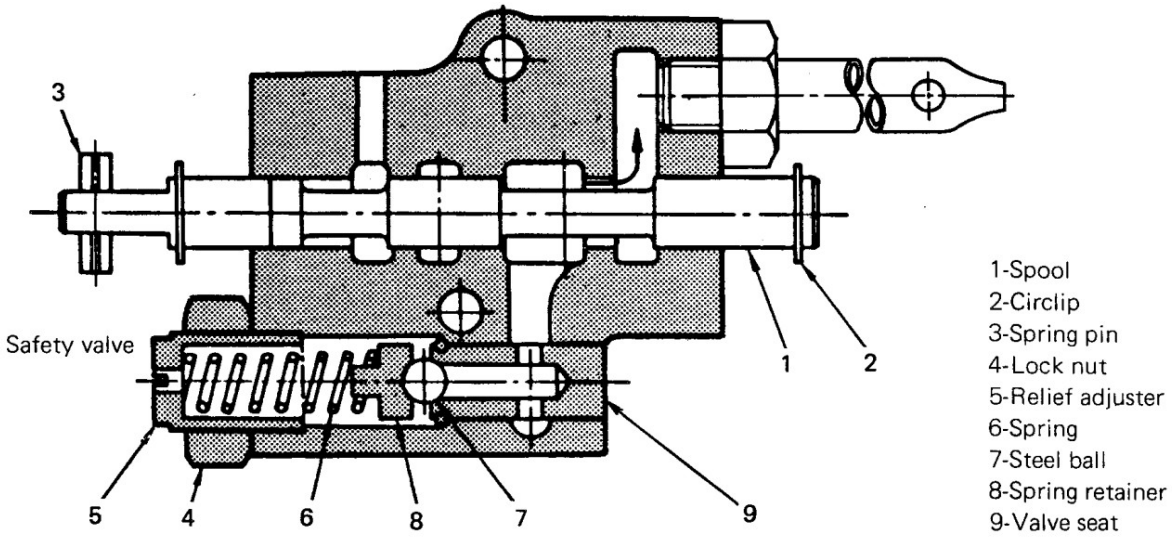
(12) Loosen the nuts on plate and arm by which control lever is held in place, remove the plate and arm, and take off control lever.

Disassembling the control valve

The control valve is a precision-machined component and should not be disassembled in the field unless its disassembly is absolutely necessary. Select a clean place, free from any dust, to perform its disassembly. Upon removal of its spool, exercise utmost care not to damage it even in the slightest way. The bore, too, must be similarly protected. Be sure to adhere to the following instructions:

- If the spool is found in defective condition to require replacement, replace the valve body, too. The spool and body must be handled as a set.

- Do not disassemble the safety valve unless a facility for measuring oil pressure is available. This is because, after its reassembly, it must be tested and set for the specified relieving pressure.



The disassembling procedure is as follows:

(1) Pick out circlip on that end of spool opposite to the part where spring pin is fitted, and draw the spool out of the body.

(2) Loosen the lock on the lock nut of safety valve, and remove the lock nut.

(3) Loosen relief adjuster, and take out spring, spring retainer and ball.

(4) Drive valve seat off the body by lightly tapping on the seat from outer side.

Inspection of control valve

(1) Inspect valve seat and seating face of steel ball for damage. Be sure that the seat and seating face are both perfectly free of any dent, nick or scratch mark.

(2) Inspect spool and bore for evidence of scuffing, galling, etc.

Reassembling the control valve

Have all parts washed clean and dried. Oil them and reassemble in sequential order which is reverse of disassembling sequence, making sure that no part picks up dust.

The specified relieving pressure for the safety valve is 135 kg/cm² (1920 psi) in full-flow condition.

Disassembling the cylinder head

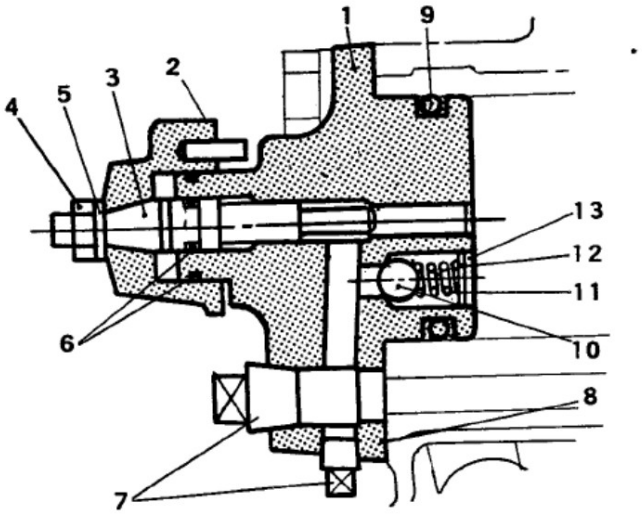
After removing the cylinder head from hydraulic case, proceed as follows:

(1) Remove nut securing the knob, lightly tap on the knob and remove it from the tapered portion of adjuster.

(2) Remove the adjuster.

(3) Pick out circlip, and take out spring and steel ball.

(4) As necessary, remove "O" rings.



1-Cylinder head
2-Grip
3-Adjuster
4-Nut
5-Spring washer
6-"O" ring
7-Plug
8-"O" ring
9-"O" ring
10-Steel ball
11-Spring
12-Washer
13-Circlip

Reassembling the hydraulic case

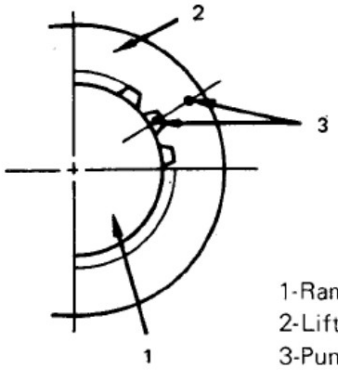
When reassembling the hydraulic case, the following steps must be taken.

- Thoroughly wash all parts with cleaning oil.
- Blow all washed parts with compressed air to dry them. Do not use cloth to wipe them.
- As for valves and related parts, they should be kept dipped in gear oil SAE #80 after being washed.
- Avoid re-using "O" rings, backup ring and gaskets. Always use new ones. Before installing "O" rings, coat them with good quality grease. Apply grease sparingly.
- Always use new cotter pins.
- Do not put on gloves while reassembling operations.
- Before starting reassembly, make sure that the place is clean.
- When re-using the used oil after reassembly is over, avoid using the lower part of the oil. Add new oil to make up for the amount of discarded oil (about one-tenth of the total oil amount).
- Do not stretch "O" rings so that they will not permanently deformed.

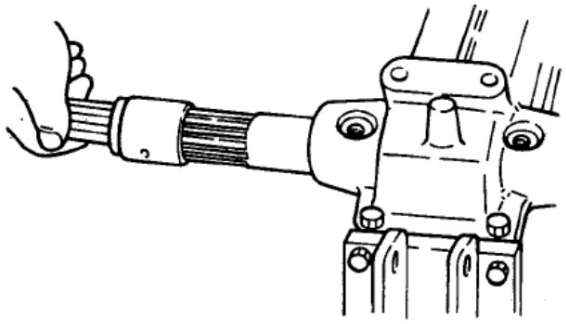
The reassembling procedure is as follows:

(1) Connect the piston rod to lift fork and set with cotter pin.

(2) Place lift fork in hydraulic case, and align the punch mark on ram shaft to the punch mark on lift fork.



1-Ram shaft
2-Lift fork
3-Punch mark



(3) Hold the bushing with its chamfered side facing inward, and put set bolt into bushing while paying attention to the set bolt position.

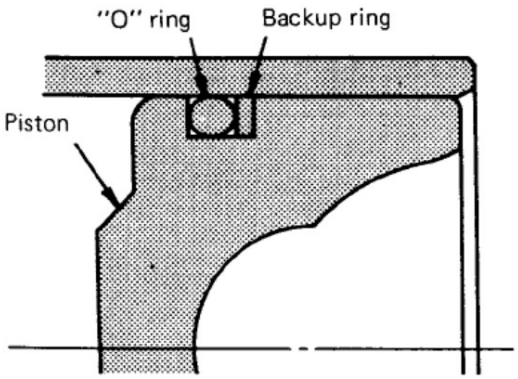
Secure ram shaft by tightening set bolt (around which a seal tape is wound) from the top of the case.

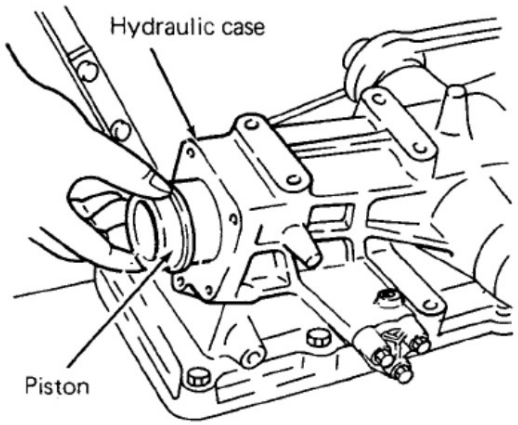
Tightening torque	6.0 ~ 7.0 kg-m (43.3 ~ 50.6 ft-lb)

(4) Grease oil seal, and tap it in until it contacts the bushing.

(5) Install backup ring (fully damped with oil) and "O" ring to the piston.

Oil the cylinder, and install piston.





(6) Reassemble cylinder head as follows:

NOTE

If the plug has been removed, be sure to wrap it with sealing tape or to apply sealant to it before re-fitting. Make certain that neither pieces of sealing tape nor crumby particles of sealant, whichever is the case, will not get into oil.

(a) Grease "O" rings, and fit them to adjuster, setting the rings neatly in the groove.

(b) Run adjuster into cylinder head.

(c) Grease "O" ring, and fit the ring to the front side of culinder head.

(d) Into cylinder head, insert steel ball, followed by spring and washer, and put on circlip.

(e) Grease large "O" ring, and fit it to cylinder head.

(7) Fit small "O" ring to the cylinder head thus far assembled, position it in hydraulic case and secure it by tightening its bolts to this torque value:

Tightening torque	8.5 ~ 9.5 kg-m (61 ~ 68 ft-lb)

(8) Attach the grip, in which spring pin has been inserted, to adjuster, put on spring washer and fasten it down tentatively by tightening its nut snugly.

(9) Grease oil seal and fit it to that part of hydraulic case for holding control lever, and install control lever.

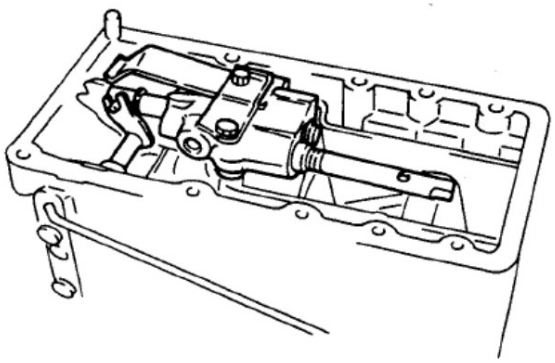
(10) Fit arm, plate and lock washer, in that order, to control lever, and secure them by tightening the nut. Lock the nut.

(11) Fit "O" ring to control valve, insert spool, and position the spool in such a way that the spring pin in the forward end of spool will fit into the notch provided in the arm and plate of control lever.

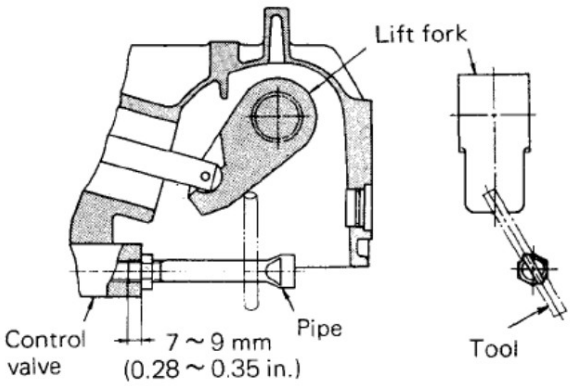
(12) Put on lock plate, taking into account the direction of spring, and secure the control valve by tightening the bolts to this torque value:

Tightening torque	2.5 ~ 3.0 kg-m (18 ~ 22 ft-lb)

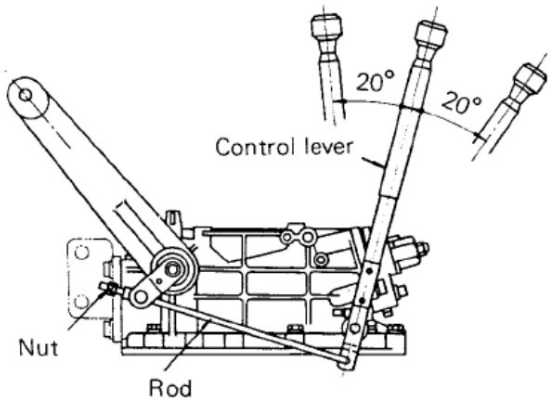
Lock the bolts with lock plate.



(13) If the lube oil pipe for lift forks has been disconnected from the rear end of control valve, reconnect the pipe by running it in about 7 to 9 mm (0.28 to 0.35 in.) or by an amount equal to 5 or 6 threads, and tighten the lock nut with the pipe hole pointing to the lift fork center.



(14) If the lever has been removed from control lever, check to be sure, after installing the lever, that the lever moved to the front and rear meets a stop and that the distances from the "NEUTRAL" position of the lever to the "LIFT" position and to the "DOWN" position are equal.



(15) Install two lift arms, right and left, positioning both arms to align their match marks to the punch marks provided on ram shaft. Attach auto-return arm to the right-side lift arm, and tighten the bolt to this torque value:

Tightening torque	5.0 ~ 6.0 kg-m (36 ~ 43 ft-lb)

(16) Connect auto return rod to control lever and to the arm attached to the right-hand end of ram shaft, and lock the connections by inserting cotter pins. Fit collar and spring to the rear side of rod and make the two nuts snug-tight temporarily.

(17) Fit "O" ring to the plate, position the plate and cap on the left-hand side of hydraulic case, and secure them by tightening to this torque value:

Tightening torque	2.5 ~ 3.0 kg-m (18 ~ 22 ft-lb)

(18) Clean the seat (for hydraulic case) on transmission case, apply the sealant to the cleaned seat, and fit hydraulic case to the seat. Secure the case by tightening its bolts to this torque value:

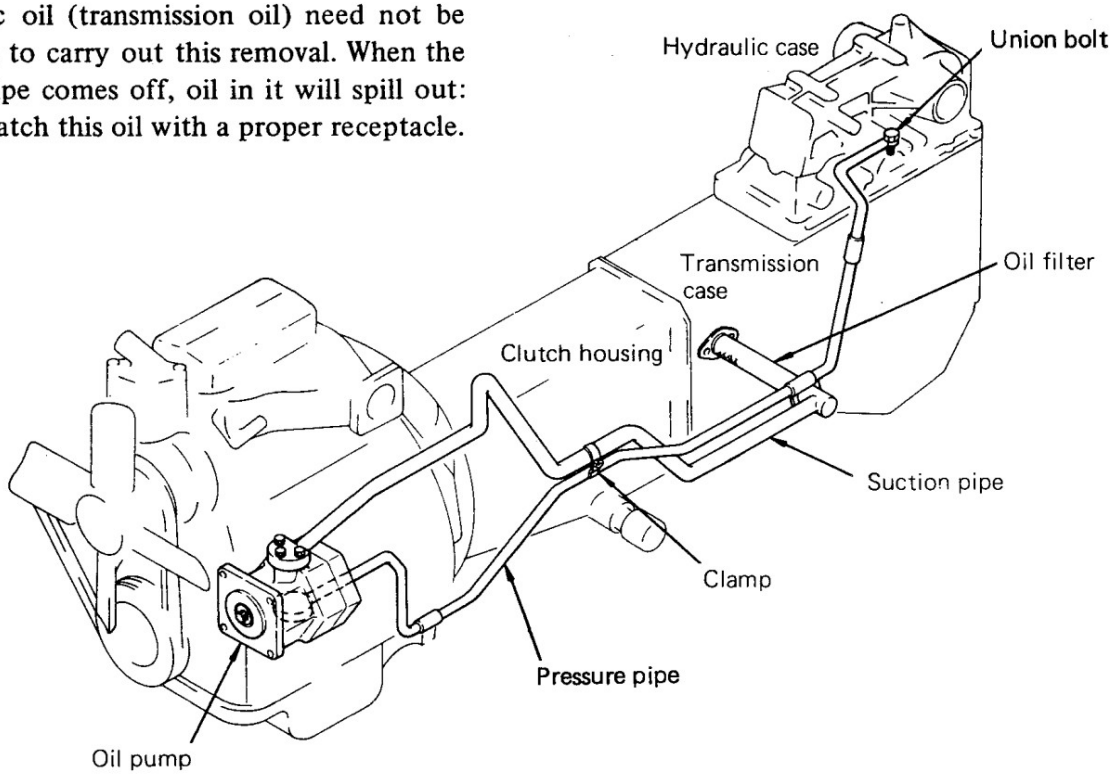
Tightening torque	5.0 ~ 6.0 kg-m (36 ~ 43 ft-lb)

(19) If top link bracket has been removed, install it.

HYDRAULIC PIPES AND OIL FILTER

Removing the discharge pipe

Hydraulic oil (transmission oil) need not be drained out to carry out this removal. When the discharge pipe comes off, oil in it will spill out: be sure to catch this oil with a proper receptacle.



(1) Remove pipe clamp on the left-hand side of clutch housing.

(2) At the same side, loosen union bolt on the left-hand side of hydraulic case and leave it screwed in just a few threads.

(3) Remove 4 bolts securing the pressure pipe to the underside of oil pump. Be sure to pick out "O" ring.

(4) Take off the union bolt mentioned above, and sever pressure pipe. Be sure to recover seal washers.

Removing the suction pipe

It is necessary to drain hydraulic oil, making the transmission empty of oil, in order to carry out this removal. Drain by removing the drain plug on the bottom of transmission case.

(1) Remove step board on the left.

(2) Remove pipe clamp on the left-hand side of clutch housing.

(3) At the same side, remove union bolt on the left-hand side of hydraulic case securing the pressure pipe, and take off seal washers.

(4) Open the bonnet.

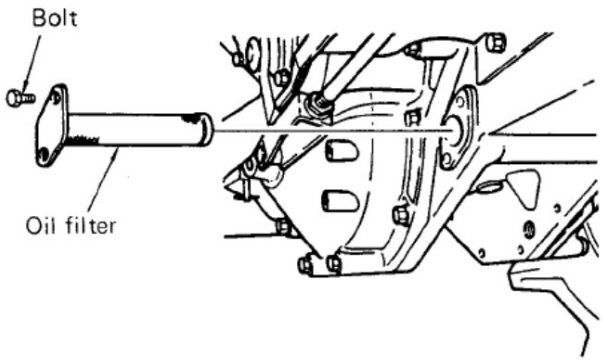
(5) Remove safety cover on the left.

(6) Disconnect suction pipe from the lower left-hand part of transmission case by removing its bolts.

(7) Similarly disconnect suction pipe from the above oil pump.

Removing the oil filter

Have hydraulic oil (transmission oil) drained out, and remove bolts securing the oil filter to transmission case at its lower right-hand part. The oil filter can now be taken out.



Inspection of oil filter

(1) Do not re-use "O" rings, seal washers and the like that have been removed in disassembly unless they are in perfectly good condition. It is advisable to use new ones when reconnecting the pipes.

(2) Inspect the connecting ends of each pipe and also the full length of pipe. Be sure that pipes are free of any evidence of cracks and their connecting end faces are smooth and free from any damage. Cracked pipes must be replaced. Repair or replace pipes whose ends are in faulty condition.

(3) Inspect the filtering element (gauze-like element) of the oil filter for signs of rupture and, as necessary, replace the element.

Installing the pipes

Before installing a pipe, be sure to have "O" rings and seal washers ready for use if they are needed for the pipe. Some pipe connections need such sealing parts while others do not.

The reconnecting procedure is reverse of the removal procedure for each pipe, and install the pipes, starting with the one last removed.

When positioning the oil filter in place, check to be sure that its forward end is accurately attached to the suction pipe.

Tighten connections to the following torque values:

Suction pipe at pump	1.0 ~ 1.2 kg-m (7.0 ~ 8.7 ft-lb)
Suction pipe at transmission	2.5 ~ 3.0 kg-m (18 ~ 22 ft-lb)
Pressure pipe at pump	1.0 ~ 1.2 kg-m (7.0 ~ 8.7 ft-lb)
Pressure pipe at hydraulic case	4.5 ~ 5.5 kg-m (33 ~ 40 ft-lb)
Oil filter	2.5 ~ 3.0 kg-m (18 ~ 22 ft-lb)

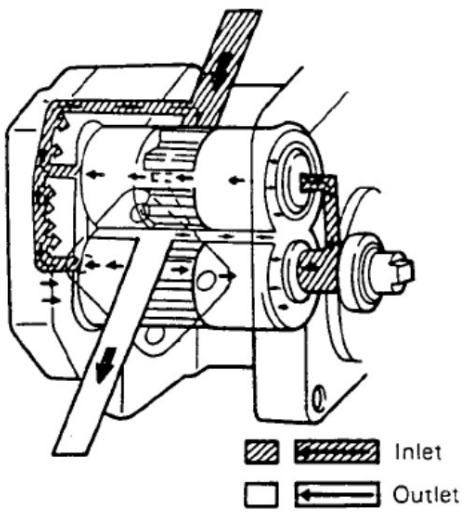
OIL PUMP

Construction

This oil pump [Nachi–GP-3607A] is of the gear type, employing the pressure loading system. The pressurized oil is forced out to the rear side of bearing bushing, and the minimum clearance is maintained between the gear teeth and bushing to minimize internal leakage, thereby securing a high volumetric efficiency even at high-pressure-low-speed operation. (The bearing bushing serves as a pressure loading component and casing at the same time.) The bearing bushing is of movable design, and, as a result, it is able to maintain a proper clearance whether the bushing swells due to heat or is worn due to protracted low-temperature operation.

The bearing bushing is designed to be lubri cated by low pressure oil which is forced fed, independently of the pressurized oil on the outlet side. This prevents the seizing-up of the bearing and the damage of the oil seal.

As far as the oil is clean, 90 percent of the specified volumetric efficiency can be secured for a long period. The pump has been tested for 4000 hours continuous operation and proven to maintain high-performance.



NOTE

a) The pump oil seal is made of synthetic resin, and therefore, mineral oil should be used for lubrication. Use of acid and alkaline oil, kerosene, and high octane vegetable oil is not allowed. Extremely high temperature oil may cause corrosion to the oil seal.

b) The oil should be gear oil SAE 80. For details, refer to the Instruction Book.

Removal

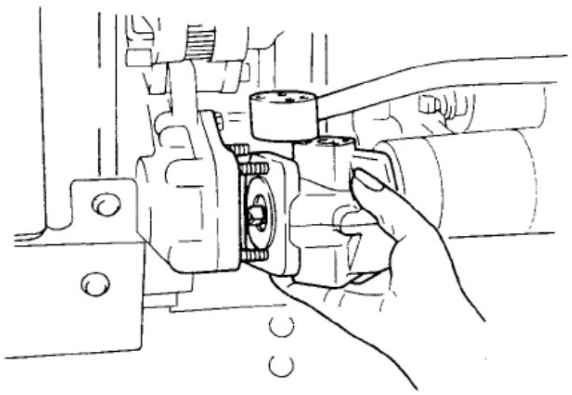
Hydraulic oil (transmission oil) need not be drained out for this removal.

(1) Open the bonnet.

(2) Remove safety cover on the left.

(3) Loosen bolts securing pressure and suction pipe connections. Recover "O" rings.

(4) Loosen nuts securing the pump to timing gear case, and take out the pump.



Disassembly

NOTE

The oil pump should be disassembled in a clean place, and the tools must be also clean. All disassembled parts are blown with compressed air for drying, after being washed. Do not use rags.

Take care not to damage the body and cover, because they are made of aluminum alloys.

For this disassembly work, refer to the exploded view.

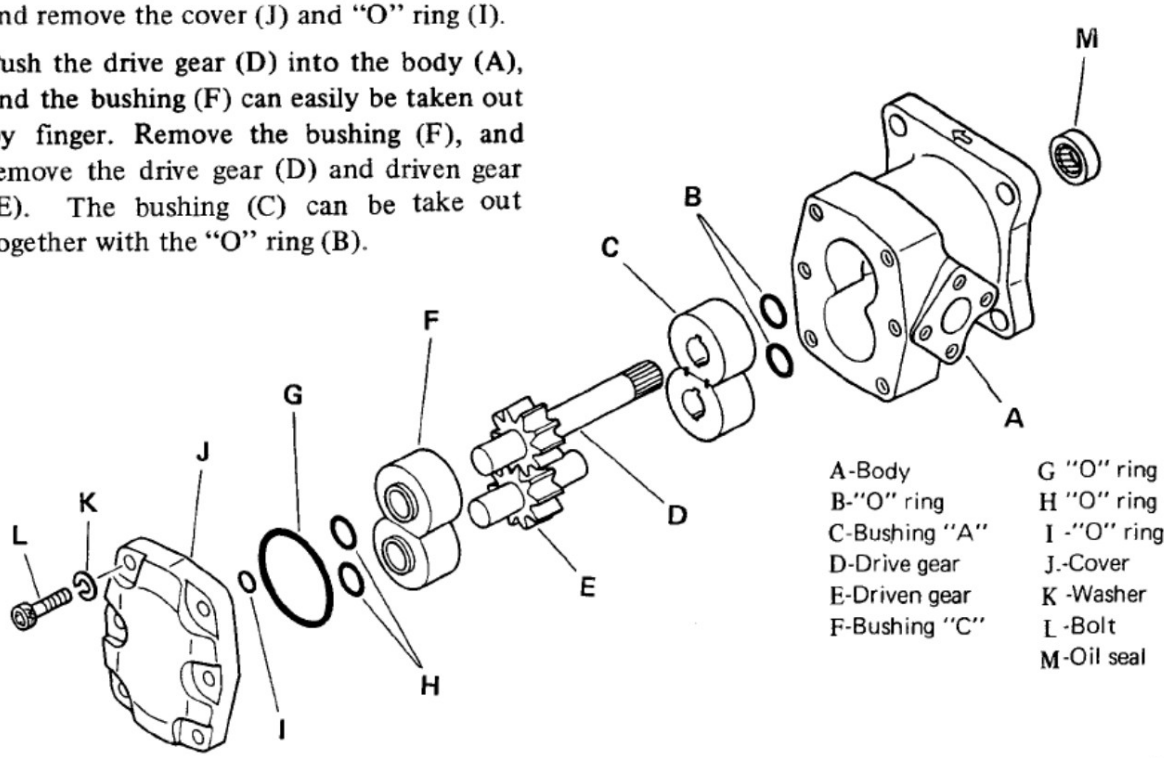
(1) Loosen the bolt (L) with a hexagon hole, and remove the cover (J) and "O" ring (I).

(2) Push the drive gear (D) into the body (A), and the bushing (F) can easily be taken out by finger. Remove the bushing (F), and remove the drive gear (D) and driven gear (E). The bushing (C) can be take out together with the "O" ring (B).

The disassembled parts should be arranged in order. As for the shafts and bushings, their positions should be correctly memorized.

When installing bushings, take care not to confuse the bushing (C) for bushing (F) in relation to their positions.

Each bushing has a mark A or C stamped on its end. A bushing having mark A should be installed on the cover side. (e.g. A indicates clockwise rotation, and C denotes counterclockwise rotation.) The oil seal (M) should not be removed unless otherwise broken. When pulling out the oil seal (M) from the body, take special care not to scratch the housing bore.



A-Body
B-"O" ring
C-Bushing "A"
D-Drive gear
E-Driven gear
F-Bushing "C"
G "O" ring
H "O" ring
I -"O" ring
J.-Cover
K -Washer
L -Bolt
M-Oil seal

Inspection

Replacement of worn or damaged parts should be done with special care. In order to increase pumping efficiency, the gear rotates with its teeth in slight contact with the pump casing. The contact is evidenced on the low pressure side of the pump. After a long period of use, the oil will become dirty, and bushing holes and journal bearings will be worn. As a result, the casing wall begins to show wear. If the amount of wear exceeds 0.05 mm (0.002 in.), the clearance between the gear teeth and the casing wall will be excessive, and oil leakage will increase. This will reduce the performance of the pump. Replacing the bushing will not be effective to improve the performance. The use of a worn bushing is not recommended except when the pump is operated under low pressure and with special care.

In general, working parts are subject to wear after a long period of use, and there will be not a big difference in wear between them. It is advisable, therefore, that when any component parts show an excessive wear, the pump itself should be replaced, instead of replacing worn parts. It will be more economical.

Each part should be washed with kerosene and blown with compressed air. All removed "O" rings should also be replaced. Check the gears and gear shafts for scratches and broken teeth. The contact ratio in a pair of gears in mesh should be even. Measure the shaft diameter with an outside micrometer calipers. If the measurement shows a smaller value than Nachi – 13.96 mm (0.550 in.) , replace the shaft.

Check the bushings for deformed bore and scratches. If any discoloring of a gear can be considered to be related with a defective bushing, check for the relief valve and related oil passages. If the length of a bushing is shorter than the value as shown below, it should be replaced.

16.80 mm (0.661 in.)

Any discolored gear should also be replaced. Measure the clearance between the shaft and bushing. If the measurement is larger than the following value, the bushing should be replaced.

0.177 mm (0.006 in.)

Reassembly

Make sure that all parts are clean. If the oil seal (M) has been removed, it should be replaced. To install the oil seal, use a press. (The seal lip must face inward.)

(1) Place the "O" ring (B) on the bushing (C), and coat it with good quality of mineral grease. Insert it in the body (A) and push it in further. A pair of bushings must be true and coat it with good quality of oil. Insert it in the body (A) and push it in further. A pair of bushings must be true fitted in place without requiring force. If the bushing has a scratch on its surface, it will not move smoothly. In this case, pull out the bushing and smooth down the raised part with oil stone. Make sure that the surface of the bushing is smooth. For this check, use a surface plate. After using oil stone, be sure to wash the bushing. Oiling the bore will make it easy to install the bushing. Make sure that, after installation, the "O" rings are in place.

The "O" ring must be located between the bushing and the bottom of body. The leading gear type is greatly affected by the result of reassembly. Make sure that the escape groove in the bushing surface is not inclined. Incorrect reassembly will not provide the pressure balance effect, and as a result, the bushing in the bore will be deformed by pressure.

(2) When inserting the drive gear (D) into the body (A), take care not to damage the oil seal with the stepped (machined) part of the gear shaft. Insert the drive gear (D) and the driven gear (E) into the body (A).

(3) Fully grease the bushings (F) in pair, and insert them in the body. Place the "O" rings (H) on the bushing (F).

(4) Place the "O" rings (G) and (I) on the cover, and place the cover, Finally tighten the bolt (L) with a hole by using a hexagon wrench. Tightening torque is 0.8 kg-m (5.77 ft-lb). Lock the bolt head with center punch and feed a small quantity of oil through the port.

(5) Make sure that the reassembly is done perfectly by turning the drive gear (D) with an open end wrench. If the gear turns smoothly, the assembly is correct. If too tight, correct it.

Installation

(1) Align the pump shaft with the pump drive shaft, and install it to the engine timing gear case.

(2) Set the "O" ring correctly, and install the suction pipe and delivery pipe to the pump.

Test

Special care should be taken for test run, particularly when bushings, gears and body have been replaced. Test run should be continued at least for 30 minutes. First, make sure that the engine oil, cooling water, transmission oil and other components of the tractor are all perfect. Run the engine with no-load at idling speed, and when oil temperature rises as specified (engine water 82°C or 180°F), increase the engine speed to increase the pump delivery. Operate the control lever for hydraulic control, and give load to the pump.

In particular, while operating the pump, check the temperature of the pump. If the temperature is excessively high (about 80°C or 176°F), reduce the engine speed temporarily, and continue no-load operation until working parts are fully run in.

NOTE

The disassembly and reassembly of the pump are relatively easy, but it should not be unnecessarily disassembled because of trouble of the hydraulic system, of which causes are unknown. Avoid performing disassembly for repair in the field, because it is very difficult to prevent dust and dirt from entering the pump. Parts may also be scratched.

ADJUSTMENT

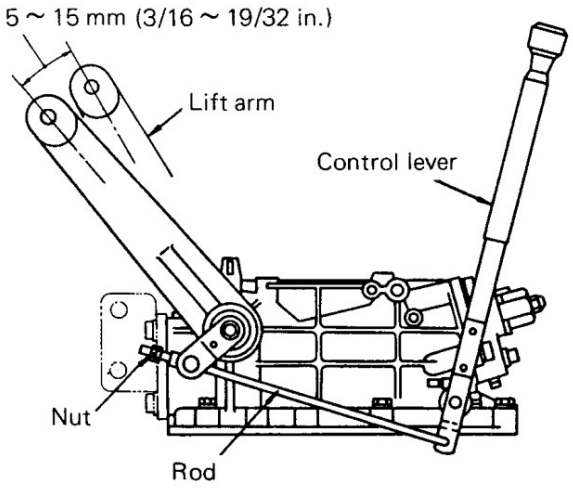
The hydraulic mechanism of BEAVER III and BUCK tractors is so designed that when the implement is moved up to the highest position of full stroke, the hydraulic control lever moves back to the neutral position automatically. If the control lever will not return, as above, after reassembly, adjust as follows:

(1) Disconnect the lift rod from the lift arm.

(2) Turn the flow control grip all the way counterclockwise.

(3) Run in the nut on the auto-return rod until the control lever automatically returns to "NEUTRAL" position and, with the lever in that position, the lift arm has a free play of 5 ~ 15 mm (3/16 ~ 19/32 in.) as measured at the tip of the arm, as shown below.

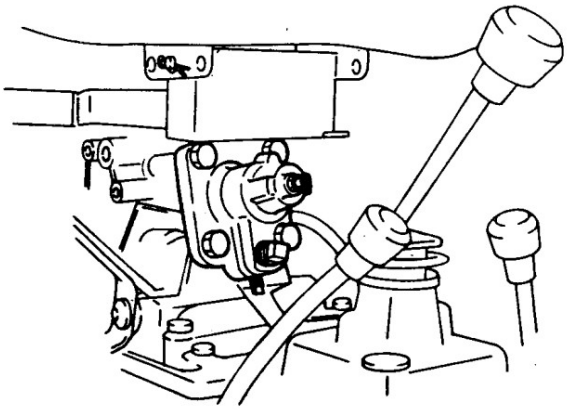
(4) Where it is necessary to limit the end of upward stroke of lift arm to any desired height, run in the nut until the control lever automatically returns to "NEUTRAL" position when the arm reaches the desired height.

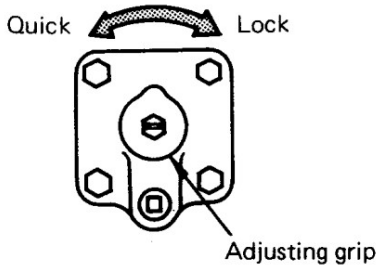


Flow control grip

Loosen nut securing the flow control grip: this nut is in snug-tight condition. Remove the grip, and run in the adjuster all the way by turning it clockwise. Restore the girp, positioning it in such a way that its spring pin meets the clockwise end of the pin guide groove provided in the cylinder head. With the grip so positioned, put on spring washers and secure the grip by tightening the nut.

Start up the engine, and check to be sure that the grip is at locking position when the hitched implement is raised by operating the control lever. With the grip at this position, move the control lever to "DOWN" and see if the hitched implement refuses to go down and stays in its current raised position; if not, that is, if the implement goes down, it means that the adjuster is set improperly and needs to be repositioned further in clockwise direction. The grip is properly set when the hitched implement becomes held up under the above operating conditions.





TROUBLESHOOTING

This paragraph describes the troubleshooting procedures on the hydraulic system used on SATOH BEAVER III and BUCK tractors. It lists the various troubles that might be blamed on the hydraulic system together with their possible causes, the checks to be made, and the corrections needed.

Implement will not lift at all when control lever is placed in LIFT

Possible cause	Remedy
a) Excessive load on ends of lower links	a) Reduce load.
b) Oil pump "O" ring damaged or oil seal slipped out of position	b) Replace.
c) Broken pump drive shaft	c) Replace.
d) Improper relief pressure setting	d) Adjust to 135 kg/cm² (1920 psi). (Full flow)
e) Cracked piping or damaged or weakened "O" ring	e) Replace.
f) Control lever plate to control valve spring pin broken	f) Replace.

Implement is not raised quickly

Possible cause	Remedy
a) Scratched or leaky relief valve seat	a) Replace as an assembly.
b) Pump not delivering enough oil	b) Replace.
c) Suction strainer clogged	c) Wash strainer and replace oil.
d) Implement too heavy	d) Reduce weight.
e) Broken piping or damaged "O" ring	e) Replace.
f) Improper relief pressure setting	f) Adjust to specification

Implement lowers during NEUTRAL

Possible cause	Remedy
a) Broken or leaky "O" ring	a) Replace.
b) Worn spool valve	b) Replace spool and body as a matched set

Implement will not lower when control lever is placed in DOWN

Possible cause	Remedy
a) Flow control valve kept closed due to loosened lock nut	a) Readjust and secure with lock nut positively
b) Flow control lever not properly set	b) Readjust.

Oil temperature is excessively high

Possible cause	Remedy
a) Oil pump seized	a) Replace. (Check for presence of foreign particles in oil)
b) Pump not delivering enough oil	b) Replace.
c) Relief valve at fault	c) Adjust to 135 kg/cm^2 (1920 psi).
d) Leaking relief valve seat due to damage	d) Replace.
e) Relief valve stuck open	e) Readjust auto-return.

Abnormal noise

Possible cause	Remedy
a) Pump seized	a) Replace.
b) Pump not sucking enough oil	b) Check oil level in tank or clogged suction filter.
c) Air leaking into suction pipe or past oil seal	c) Repair.
d) Deteriorated oil	d) Replace.
e) Clogged strainer	e) Clean.
d) Relief valve stuck open	d) Readjust auto-return.

SPECIFICATIONS

Specification \ Tractor	MT160 and MT160D
Control	3-position control – lift., down and flow control
Type of cylinder	Single action cylinder
Diameter of piston	60 mm (2.36 in.)
Stroke of piston	71 mm (2.80 in.)
Pressure for relief valve setting	135 kg/cm² (1920 psi)
Maximum lift power at ends of lower links	500 kg (1102 lb)
Type of hydraulic pump	Pressure loading gear type
Output of hydraulic pump (at 2700 engine rpm)	12.9 liter/min. (3.4 GPM)
Control valve type	Spool valve 3-port 3-position
Name and model of hydraulic pump	NACHI: GP - 3607A
Oil lock valve	Oil lock valve (adjustable flow control)
Strainer mesh	#42 × 100 mesh
Hydraulic oil	SAE #80 gear oil (same as transmission oil)
External service	PT3/8 tap
Hydraulic adaptor plate	Optional

ISO

CHAPTER 7
HYDRAULIC SYSTEM

(Position Control)

REMARQUES

TABLE OF CONTENTS

REMARQUES

DESCRIPTION

The hydraulic system in MITSUBISHI MT180/D and MT180H/HD is unique in design, compact in size. Its component parts are built in a single case.

The functions the system provides are position control, flow control and lift lock. By installing sub control valve or adaptor plate, hydraulic pressure can be taken off for external service.

The hydraulic pump is mounted on the timing gear case of the engine, and is driven through gears inside the case. Thus, as long as the engine is running, hydraulic pressure is available for actuating the implement.

It is the oil in the hydraulic case that the pump draws through the strainer and delivers to the control valve.

The lift lock valve is mounted on the front side of hydraulic case. By operating its control lever, the implement can be locked and its lowering speed can be adjusted.

Hydraulic pressure can be taken off for external service by installing the adaptor plate between the hydraulic case cover and relief valve installed on the left side of hydraulic case.

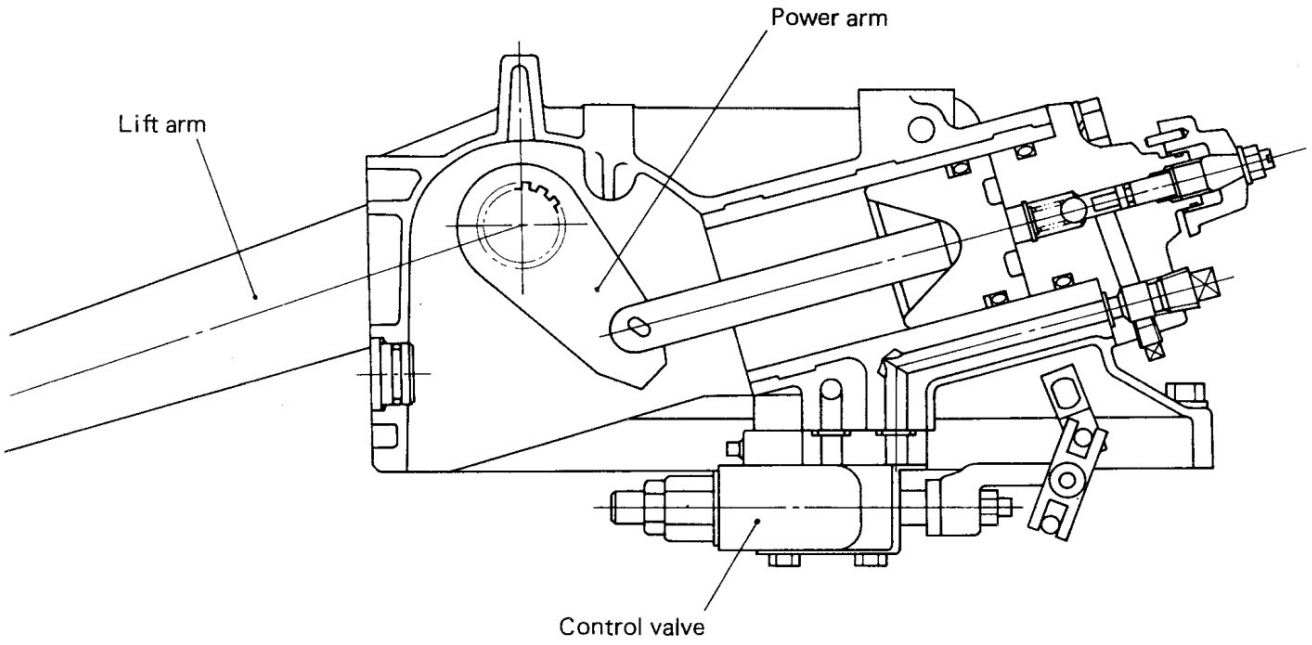
CONSTRUCTION

Hydraulic case

The hydraulic case is made of cast iron which is enough intensive. The cylinder is made of accurately processed steel pipe and of construction capable of being removed.

The cylinder in which piston and connecting rod are built, power arm, ram shaft and control valve are installed in the hydraulic case.

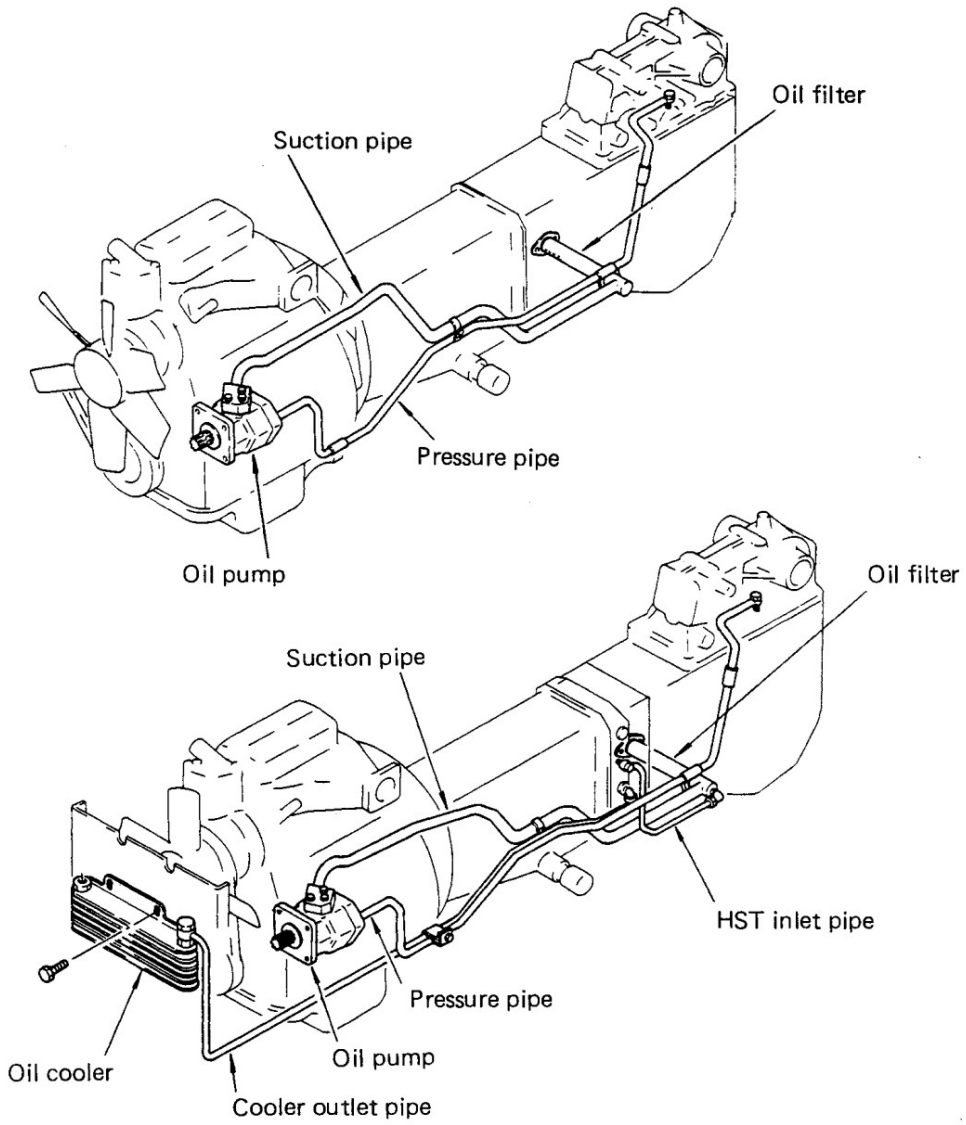
This case is bolted to the top of diff-housing.



Pipe line

The hydraulic pump draws the oil through the strainer and suction pipe and delivers it to the control valve through the high-pressure pipe. Between the pump and control valve is provided a relief valve which protects the pump and piping against overloading. This safety valve is also effective for the external service hydraulic line.

The suction pipe is connected with rubber hose at the center parts. It is easy to remove the pipe by loosening the clamp to slide the rubber hose.



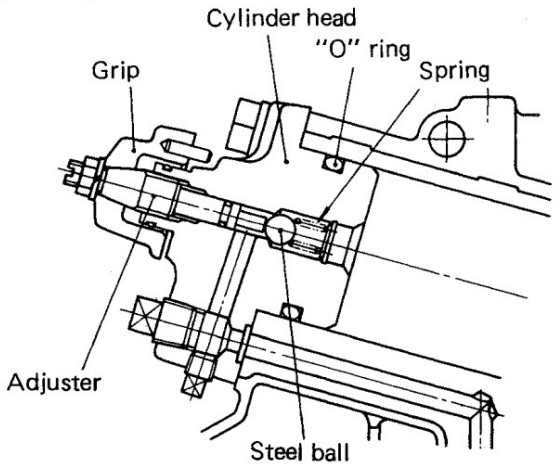
Control valve

The control valve is mounted under the hydraulic lift lock valve and has a linkage connected to the control lever. In this valve are built the spool valves, check valve, unloader valve and poppet.

Lift lock valve

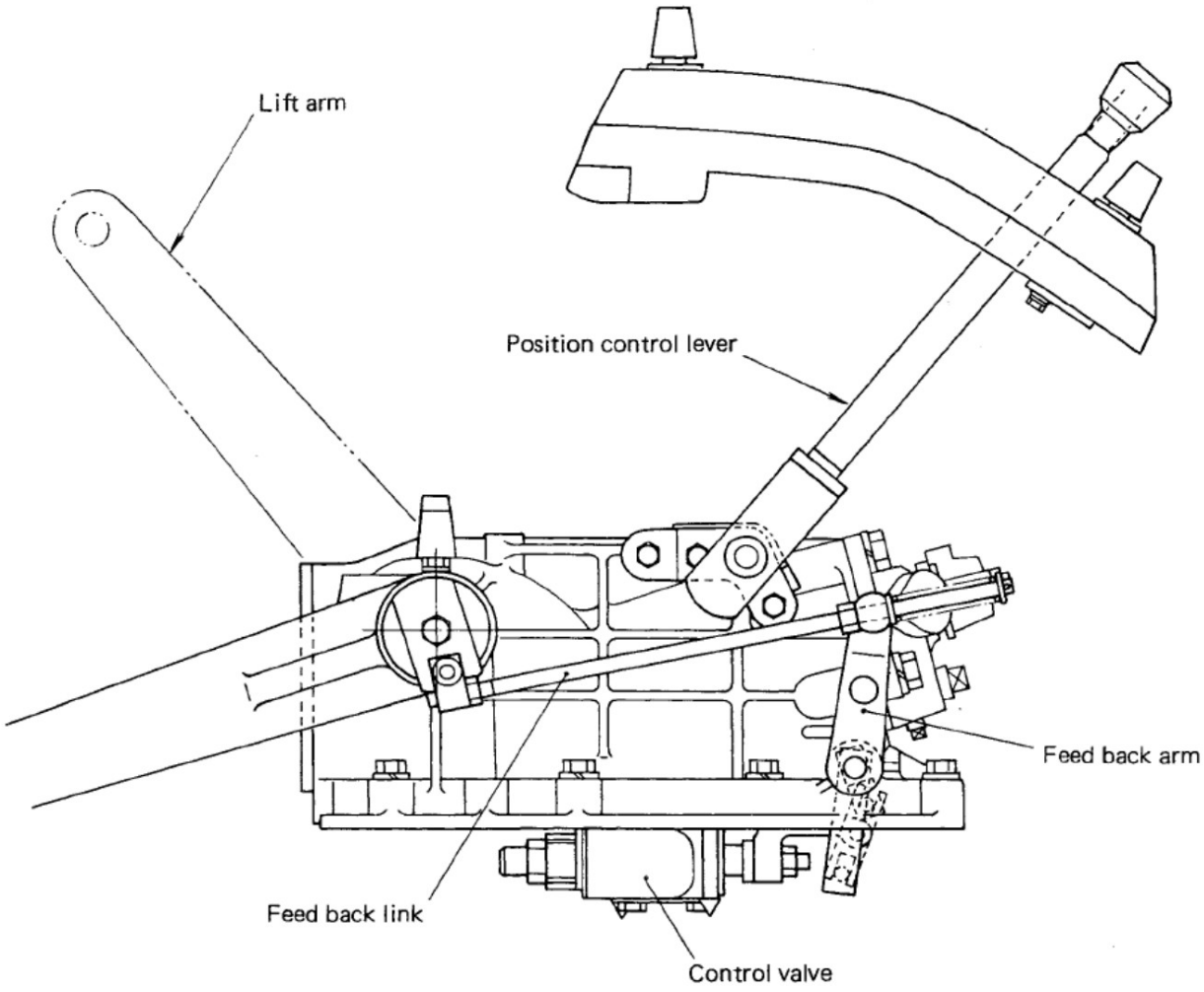
The lift lock valve is an in-line check valve. When the oil enters the cylinder, it pushes the lock valve to open. Once the oil enters the cylinder, it forces the lock valve against the seat by means of the pressure generated by the weight of the implement and spring pressure.

Accordingly, the heavier the weight of the implement, the greater the pressure against the lock valve. While in farming operations, the lock valve opening can be easily adjusted by the lever. This makes it possible to regulate the implement lowering speed ranging from "slow down" (while seeding) to "quick down" (while plowing).



Control lever

The control lever is mounted on the right side of hydraulic case. By operating it as guided by the quadrant mounted on the fender, the control linkage is moved to perform control function.



Hydraulic pump

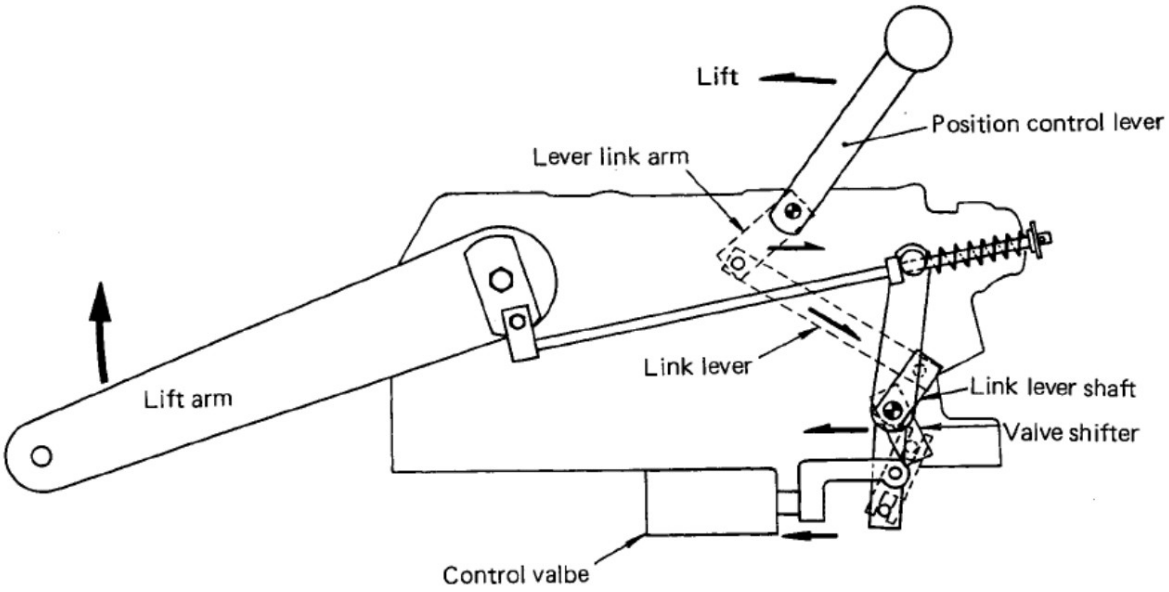
A high-efficiency gear pump of pressure loading gear type is used. The pump is mounted on the engine timing gear case, and, as long as the engine is running, it delivers the oil to the control valve. Thus, the hydraulic system of MITSUBISHI tractor is live type.

OPERATION

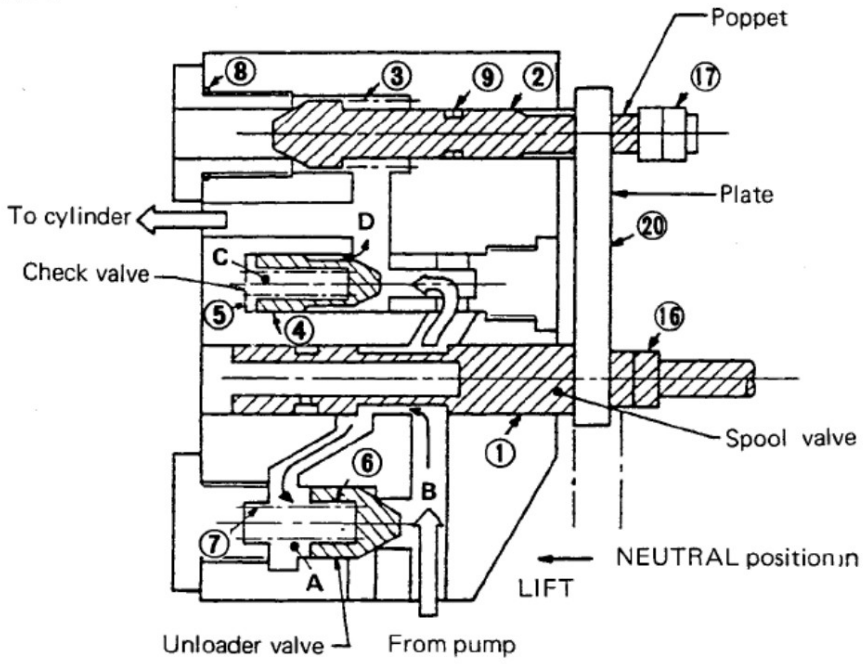
POSITION CONTROL

LIFT

After engine starts, move the position control lever in the direction of raising up, and the spool valve (1) of control valve moves in the direction of raising up by the action of valve shifter fixed at link lever shaft which is connected with link lever on the left side of the hydraulic case.

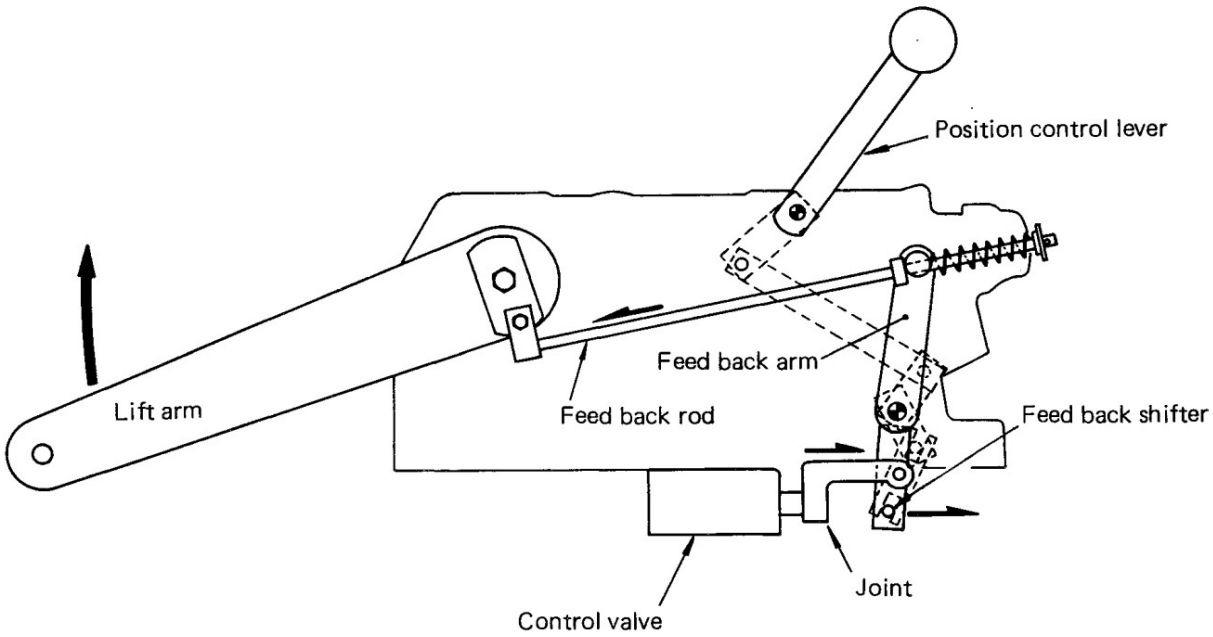


LIFT

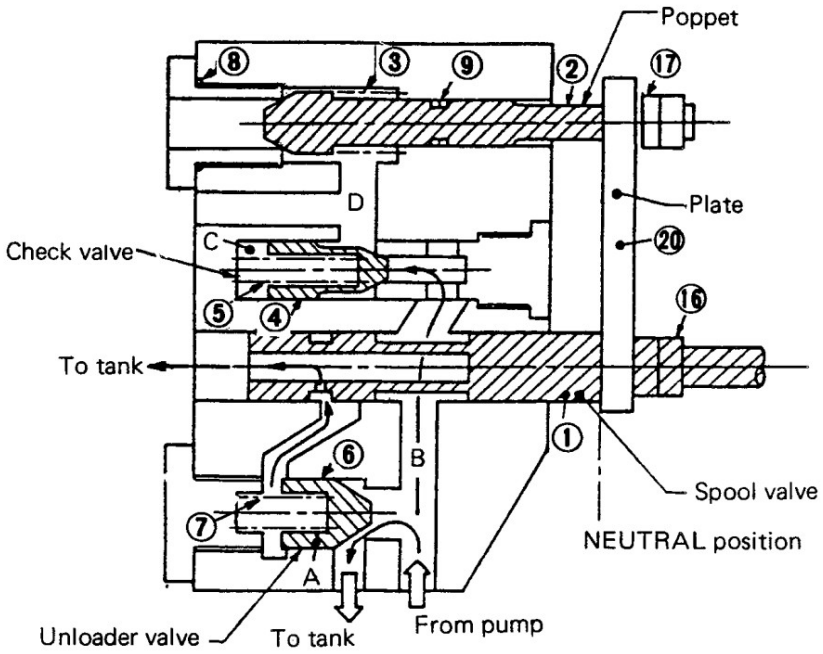


The oil from the pump flows to the rear side (A) of unloader valve (6) through the passage (B). Then the pressure of this oil and the force of spring (7) close the unloader valve (6). Under this condition, the oil pushes down the check valve (4) and enters the circuit (D) leading to the cylinder.

The implement is lifted up by the action of the lift arm as the piston is pushed down by filling the cylinder with oil The spool valve (1) is returned to NEUTRAL position by the action of the feed back shifter through the feed back arm HL which is moved by the feed back HL rod as the arm installed at the lift arm works. Consequently, the implement is held at the position where corresponds to the position of control lever.



NEUTRAL

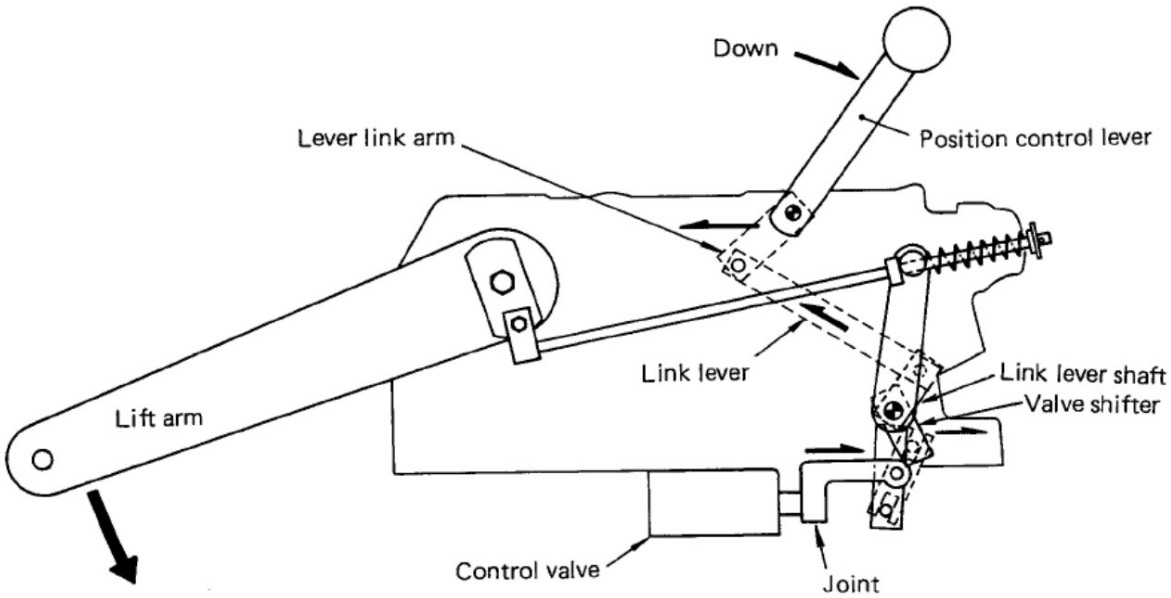


NEUTRAL

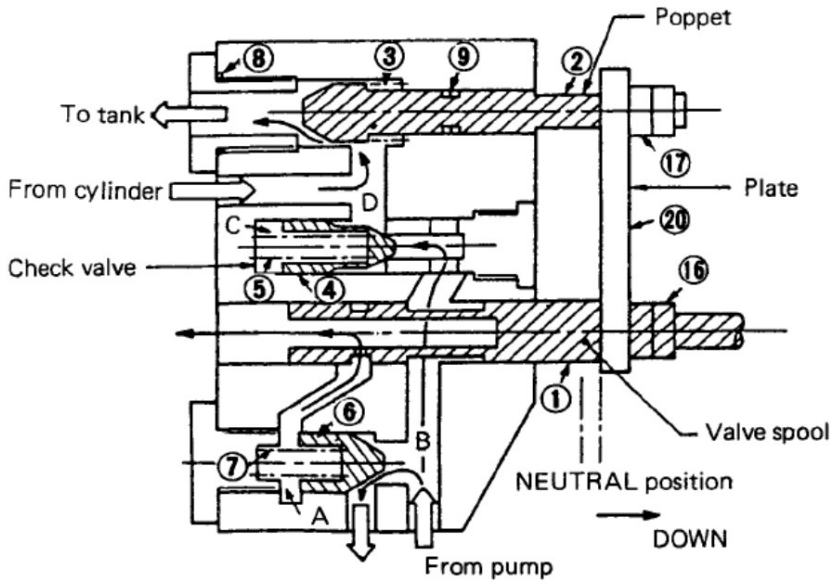
The oil from the pump flows through the passage (B) in the control valve to the unloader valve (6). The check valve (4) is kept in closed position by the force of its spring (5) and the pressure exerted by the weight of implement mounted on the 3-point linkage, which are applied to the rear side (C) of the valve (4). For this reason, the return circuit from the cylinder is blocked to hold the implement. On the other hand, the rear side (A) of unloader valve (6) is connected through the spool valve (1) to the tank, and as the pressure of the oil from the pump is higher than the pressure exerted by the unloader valve spring (7) the oil pushes down unload valve (6) to open the tank port, thus returning the oil to the tank, which makes the pump operate unloaded.

DOWN

In case the control lever is located at the position of DOWN, the spool of unloader valve (6) moves in the direction of opening by the action of valve shifter on the link lever shaft connected with the link lever.



DOWN



Now the poppet (2) is pulled by the plate locked to the spool valve (1) to open the port (D) leading to the tank, causing the oil to flow into the tank port for lowering the implement.

When the implement starts to go down, the spool valve (1) is returned to NEUTRAL position by the action of feed back shifter through the feed back arm which is moved by the feed back rod as the arm installed at the lift arm works.

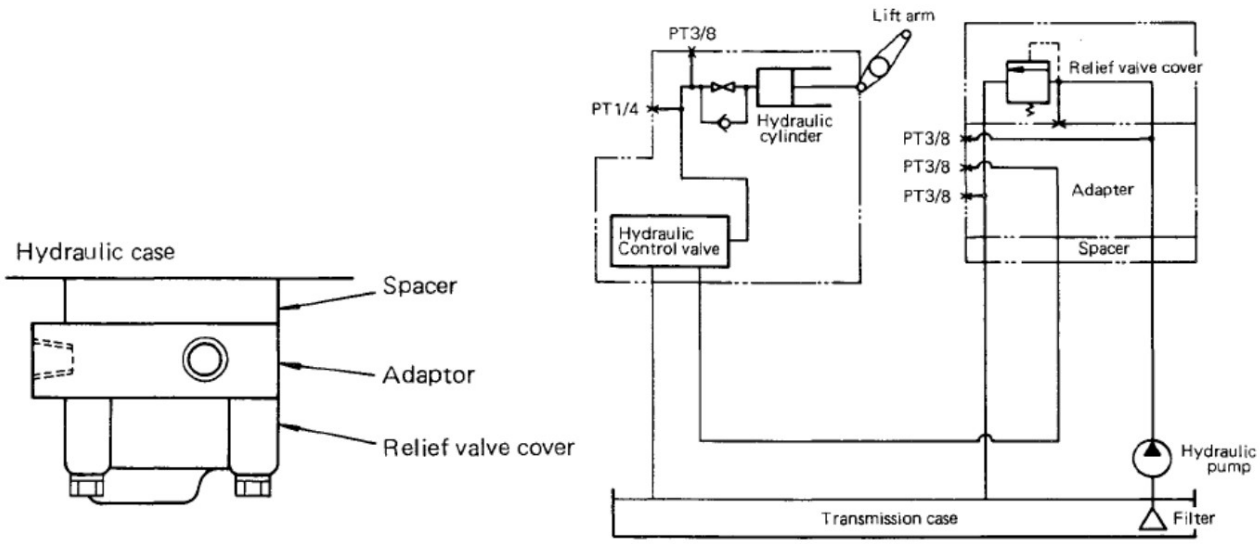
The implement is held at the position where the spool valve is located at NEUTRAL.

Hydraulic external service

There are two ways as under on the hydraulic external service.
Select it according to the kind of control valve attached to the implement.

NOTE

External service cannot be done for the machine which is equipped with control valve for use of 3-point linkage of tractor.



Hydraulic circuit for front loader, etc.

Remove the cover (relief valve) on the left side of hydraulic case and secure the spacer, adaptor plate and cover to the hydraulic case. Pass a hose or pipe to IN port of the control valve installed on the implement side from OUT port of the adaptor plate. Pass a hose or pipe to IN port of the adaptor from OUT port of the control valve to make a hydraulic circuit. The implement can be operated by acuating the lever of control valve attached to the implement.

NOTE

1) Thread size of adaptor plate is PT-3/8.
2) In order to do the hydraulic external service, never use the external port located in the hydraulic cylinder head as it may cause trouble in the hydraulic system.

DISASSEMBLY AND REASSEMBLY

Disassembling the hydraulic system

Causes necessitating hydraulic system disassembly may be regarded as occurring in three areas: 1) hydraulic case, in which the control valve is mounted, 2) oil pump, and 3) oil piping inclusive of the oil filter.

Whenever trouble develops, a rough check must be made on each area to pinpoint the suspected part or component. Disassembly of parts and components in sound condition should be avoided and can be avoided by viewing the hydraulic system as consisting of the three groups.

Disassembling the hydraulic case

It is not necessary to drain the transmission in order to permit removal of the hydraulic case.

(1) Remove the 3-point linkage from tractor.

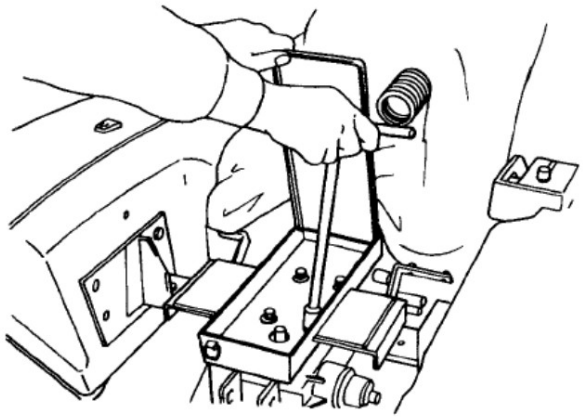
(2) Remove the seat.

(3) Disconnect wirings from each connector.

(4) Remove the knobs from the control lever.

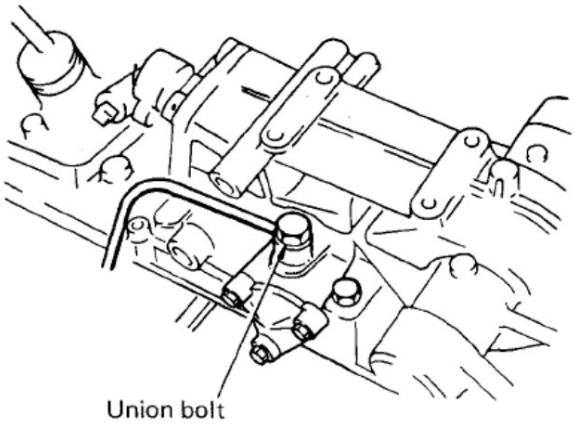
(5) Unscrew bolts both of the left and right that fasten the fender to the step and the cover to the step.

(6) Remove the tool box by means of loosening four tool box fixing bolts.



(7) Remove fenders.

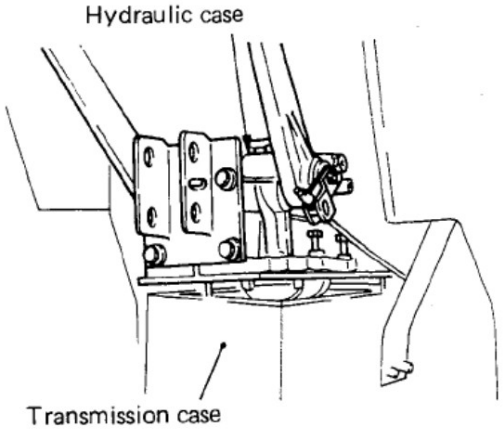
(8) To remove the pipe from the hydraulic case, loosen the union bolt of the pressure pipe.



NOTE

As the union bolt heat is not thick enough, be sure to use socket wrench. Using open wrench will give damage to union bolt head.

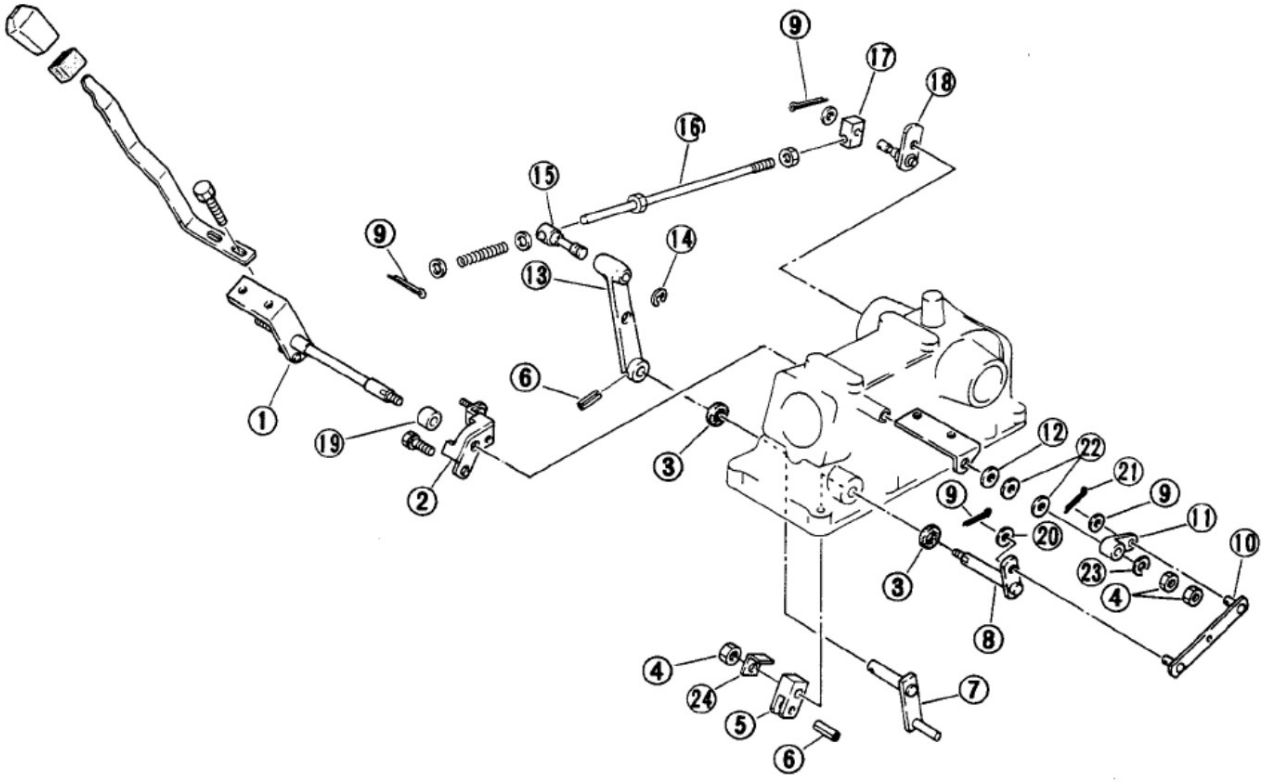
(9) Loosen the bolts securing the hydraulic case to the diff-housing, and remove the hydraulic case assembly.



NOTE

Because of sealant used in the joint of hydraulic case and diff-housing, the hydraulic case may not come off easily; If so, loosen the joint by poking with the tip of plain screwdriver, taking care not to damage the case, and remove it by lifting it straight off.

Disassembling the hydraulic control linkage



1-Control lever
2-Lever bracket
3-Oil seal
4-Lock nut
5-Valve shifter
6-Spring pin
7-Feed back shifter
8-Link lever shaft
9-Cotter pin
10-Link lever
11-Lever link arm
12-Plate
13-Feed back arm
14-E-type circlip
15-Joint pin
16-Feed back rod
17-Joint
18-Plate
19-Collar
20-Washer
21-Disk spring
22-Washer
23-Washer
24-Plate

(1) Loosen the lock nuts (4) at the end of control lever (1) and link lever shaft (8). Remove the assembly of link lever shaft (8), link lever (10) and lever link arm (11).

(2) Pull out the cotter pin (9) of plate (18) at the right side of arm shaft and remove the joint(17).

(3) Pull out the spring pin (6) that connects the feed back arm (13) with feed back shifter (7).
Remove the related parts from the feed back rod (16) as required.

(4) Pull out the control lever (1).
And remove the assembly of feed back arm (13) and feed back rod (16).

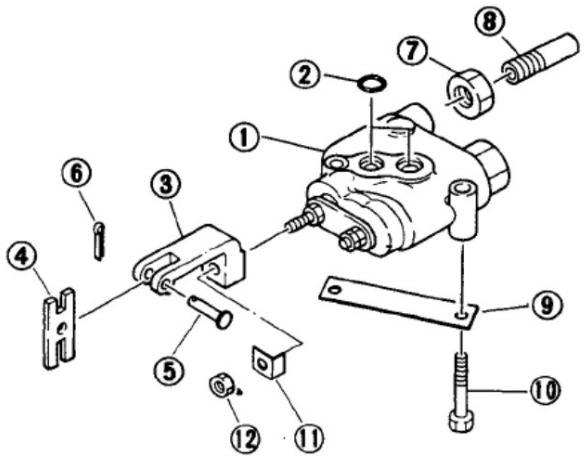
(5) Remove the feed back shifter.

NOTE

Remove the oil seal and other parts from the hydraulic case as required.

Removing the control valve

(1) Pull out the cotter pin (6) of clevis pin (5) which sets the valve link (4) to the fork (3) and then take out clevis pin (5).



1-Control valve	6-Cotter pin	11-Lock washer
2-"O" ring	7-Nut	12-Nut
3-Fork	8-Pipe	13-Taper plug
4-Valve link	9-Spacer	14-Washer
5-Clevis pin	10-Bolt	

(2) Straighten the lock plate (9) under the heads of bolt (10) securing the control valve (1), loosen the bolt (10) and remove the control valve (1). Be sure to pick out "O" rings (2).

(3) Unlock the lock washer (11), loosen nut (12) and remove fork (3).

Removing the power arm

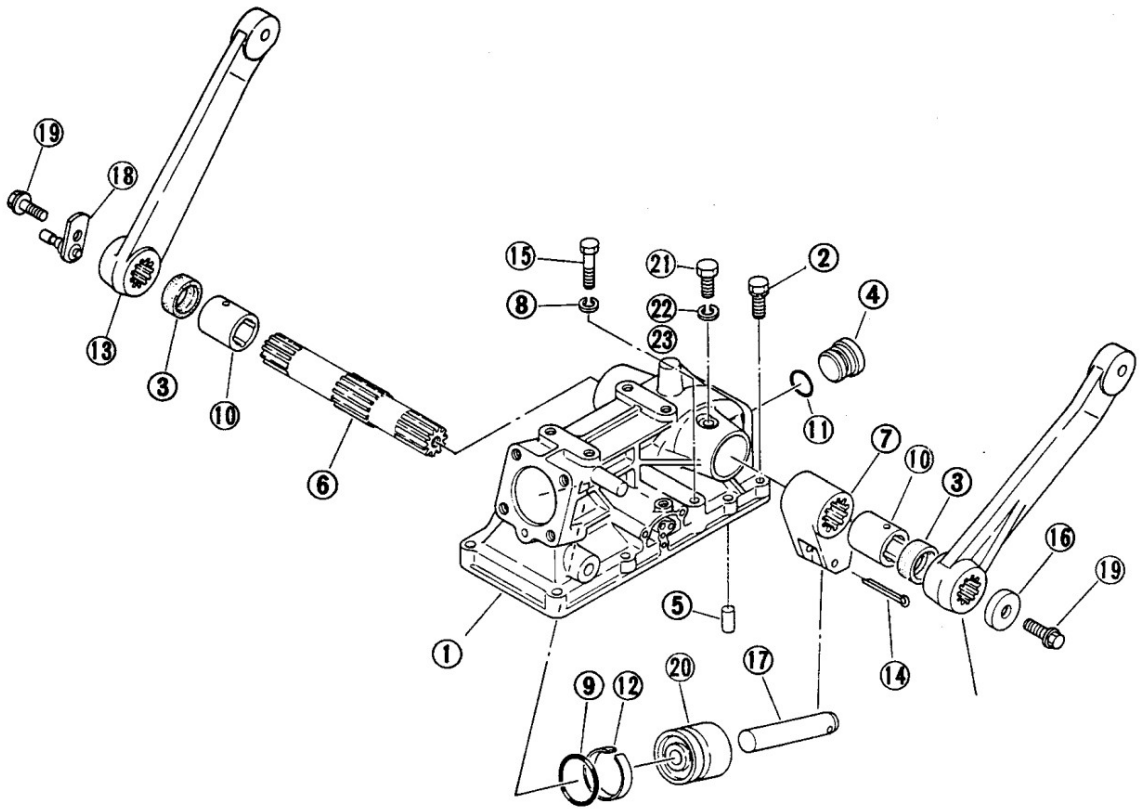
(1) After loosening bolts (19) of lift arms (13), remove both lift arms(13) and washers (16).

(2) Loosen bushing set bolts (21), and then remove oil seals (3) and bushings (10).

(3) Remove the ram shaft (6).

(4) Remove the power arm (7) keeping it incorporated a piston rod (17).

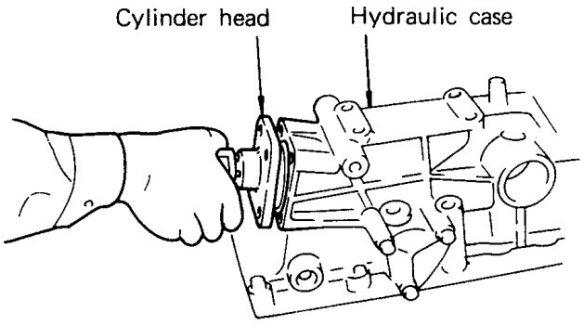
(5) Remove the piston rod (17) from the power arm (7) as required.



1-Hydraulic case
2-Bolt (M10 x 45) w/washer
3-Oil seal
4-Plug
5-Dowel pin
6-Ram shaft
7-Power arm
8-Spring washer
9-O-ring
10-Bushing
11-"O" ring
12-Back up ring
13-Lift arm
14-Cotter pin
15-Bolt (M10x100)
16-Washer
17-Piston rod
18-Plate
19-Bolt w/spring washer (M10x25)
20-Cylinder
21-Bushing set balt
22-Washer
23-Seal washer

Removing the lift lock valve

(1) Loosen M12 bolts on cylinder head, and remove the head.

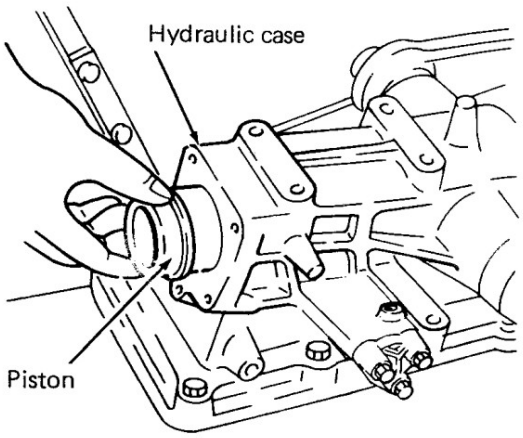


(2) Push piston out into hydraulic case, and take out piston.

(3) Remove the lift lock valve as required.

Disassembling the cylinder

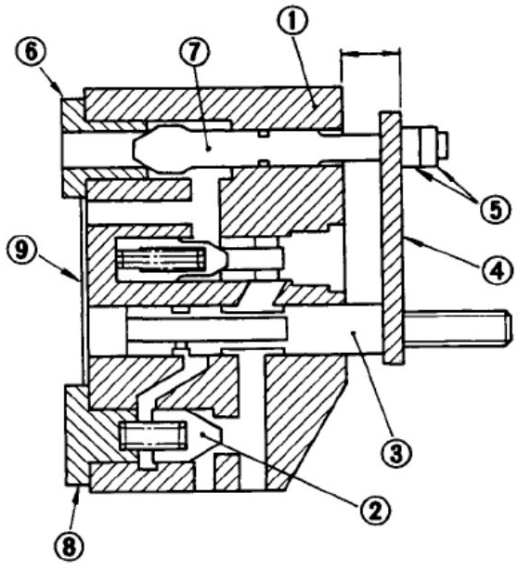
Remove the hydraulic cylinder from hydraulic case while paying attention to "O" rings.



Disassembling the control valve

The hydraulic system including the control valve is almost trouble-free if the oil filter is cleaned and the oil is changed at the specified intervals.

Should the control valve become defective, disassemble it in a clean place in a careful manner.



1-Body	5-Nut
2-Unloader valve	6-Valve seat plug
3-Spool valve	7-Poppet
4-Plate	8-Valve seat plug

NOTE

Before disassembling the control valve, measure the body and plate, and make a note of the measurements which will be used when reassembling the control valve.

- **Disassembling**

Remove the control valve from the hydraulic case, and proceed as follows:

(1) Remove nut (5) and the valve seat plug (6) with 26 mm socket.

(2) Remove valve seat plug (8) and plate (9).

(3) Pull out the spool valve (3) and poppet (7) to the left hand side.

NOTE

As the plug and seat head is not thick enough, be sure to use box wrench. Using open wrench will give damage to plug and seat head.

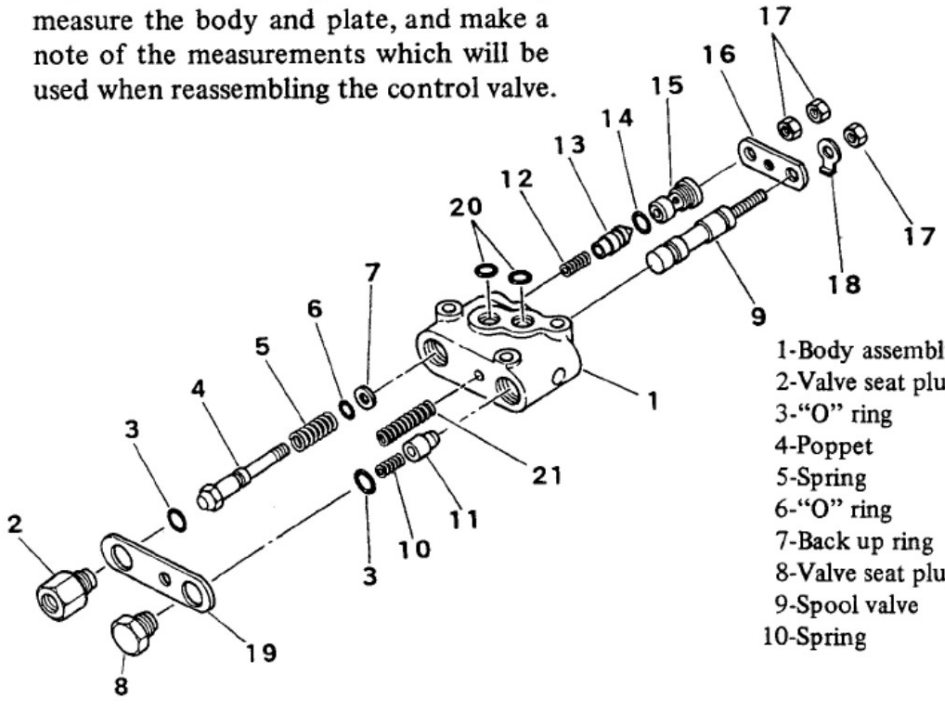
- **Inspection**

(1) Wash the disassembled parts in cleaning oil and dry them with air. Correct or replace defective parts with scratches or damages.

(2) Be sure to replace the body and spool as a set. All the other parts can be replaced as a single piece each.

- **Assembling**

Be sure to replace "O" rings with new ones. When assembling, apply clean oil and assemble carefully. Pay a special attention to the inclination of the spring and movement of each valve.



1-Body assembly	11-Unloader valve
2-Valve seat plug	12-Spring
3-"O" ring	13-Check valve
4-Poppet	14-"O" ring
5-Spring	15-Seat plug
6-"O" ring	16-Plate
7-Back up ring	17-Nut
8-Valve seat plug	18-Stopper plate
9-Spool valve	19-Plate
10-Spring	20-"O" ring
	21-Return spring

(1) Fit an "O" ring and back-up ring to the poppet and install the poppet to the body together with a spring. Fit an "O" ring to the seat and install it to the body with plate (21). Install the "O" ring to the poppet side and back-up ring to the screw side.

Tightening torque	7 ~ 9 kg-m (50.6 ~ 65.0 ft-lb)

(2) Fit an "O" ring to the check valve seat. Install the spring first and then check valve and fasten with a seat plug. Lock the seat plug after punching.

Tightening torque	5 ~ 7 kg-m (36.1 ~ 50.6 ft-lb)

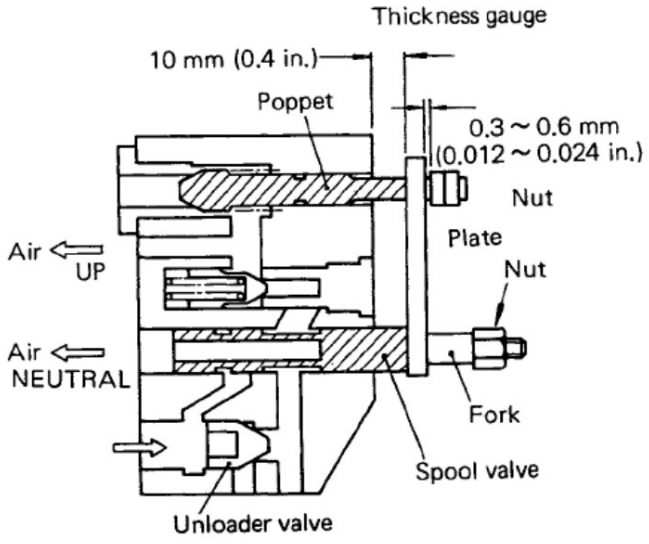
(3) Install the plate to the spool valve, install a stopper plate and fork fasten with a nut.

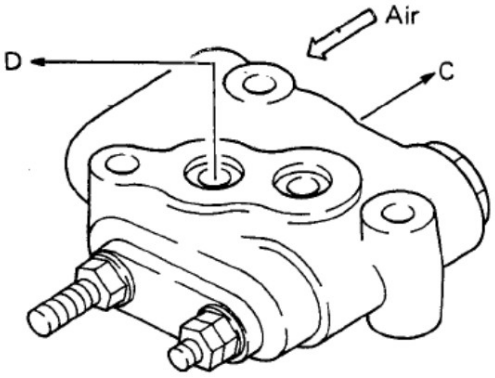
Tightening torque	1.2 ~ 2.2 kg-m (8.684 ~ 15.9 ft-lb)

(4) Insert the spool valve into the body, and install the plate to the poppet. Set the body and plate according to the measurements taken before disassembly, and tighten the nut.

(5) Install the unloader valve.

- **Control valve adjustment**





(1) With the unloader valve installed, blow air into the unloader plug hole.

(2) Insert the thickness gauge, as shown in figure between the plate and the double nut, and confirm the followings:

(a) When inserting the thickness gauge of 0.3 mm (0.1 in.), air comes out of the hole C of the spool valve – at NEUTRAL position.

(b) When inserting the thickness gauge of 0.6 mm (0.2 in.) air comes out of the pump port D, or no air leakage is noticed anywhere – at UP position.

(3) If such a case is not applicable, loosen the double nut and adjust it so as to meet the requirement shown by the item (a) and (b).

(4) In case of adjusting, punch the outer nut for preventing looseness after finishing adjustment.

(5) Insert the spring into the unloader valve and tighten the plug with "O" ring.

Tightening torque	7 ~ 9 kg-m (50.6 ~ 65.0 ft-lb)

Pump relief valve (cover)

Pump relief valve is installed in the pipe line connected to the pump and control valve. It has been designed to operate properly even when a sub control valve is installed.

- **Relief valve (disassembling the cover)**

When the relief valve is disassembled completely, pressure should be adjusted. Never disassemble it without special reason.

After removing the hydraulic case, proceed as follows:

(1) Remove the plug, and take out the shim, "O" ring, spring seat, spring, poppet and valve seat.

(2) Pressure can be adjusted by changing the thickness of the shims.

Relief set pressure	135 kg/cm² (1920 psi)

- **Inspection**

Wash the components in cleaning oil and inspect it carefully for damages. Replace with new one if a remarkable flaw is found. Especially check the poppet and seat face carefully.

- **Assembling**

Wash components cleanly to remove dust or dirt. Check to see that no damage is involved, apply oil and assemble carefully.

Be sure to replace "O" rings with new ones, and apply grease thinly before assembly.

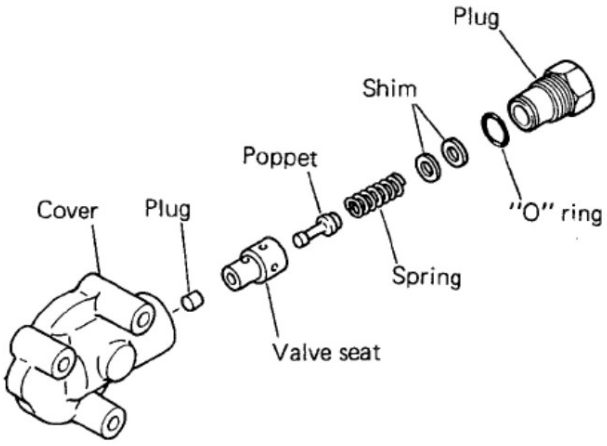
Fit an "O" ring to the plug, install a seat, poppet and then spring to the body. Install a spring seat to the plug and mount it to the cover.

- **Relief set pressure adjustment**

If the relief set pressure is less or more than the specified, or the cover is disassembled, it is necessary to measure the relief pressure. If no measuring facilities are available, measurement can be taken with the valve installed. For measurement, proceed as follows:

(1) Install a compression gauge to the 1/8 tap of the hydraulic case cover.

(2) Start the engine, move the control lever over the finger guide toward LIFT so that the relief valve is actuated. Read the pressure gauge. If the pressure is high, decrease the thickness of the shim. If low, increase the shim thickness. Pressure will change.



Reassembling the hydraulic case

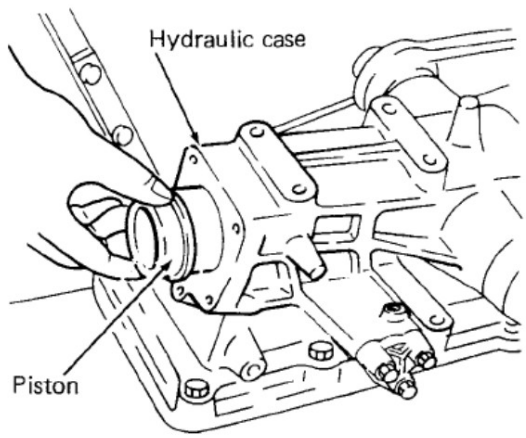
When reassembling the hydraulic case, the following steps must be taken.

- Thoroughly wash all parts with cleaning oil.
- Blow all washed parts with compressed air to dry them. Do not use cloth to wipe them.
- As for valves and related parts, they should be kept dipped in gear oil SAE 80 after being washed.
- Avoid re-using "O" rings, back-up ring and gaskets. Always use new ones. Before installing "O" rings, coat them with good quality grease. Apply grease sparingly.
- Always use new cotter pins.
- Do not put on gloves while reassembling operations.
- Before starting reassembly, make sure that the place is clean.
- When re-using the used oil after reassembly is over, avoid using the lower part of the oil. Add new oil to make up for the amount of discarded oil (about one-tenth of the total oil amount).
- Do not stretch "O" rings so that they will not permanently deformed.

Assembling the cylinder

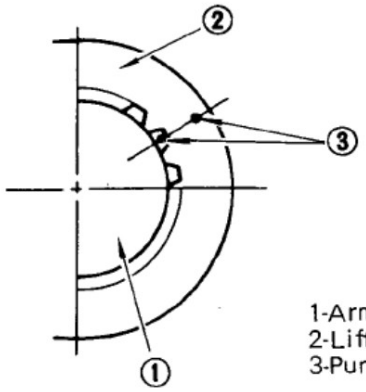
(1) Apply the oil to the "O" ring, and install this "O" ring to "O" ring groove.

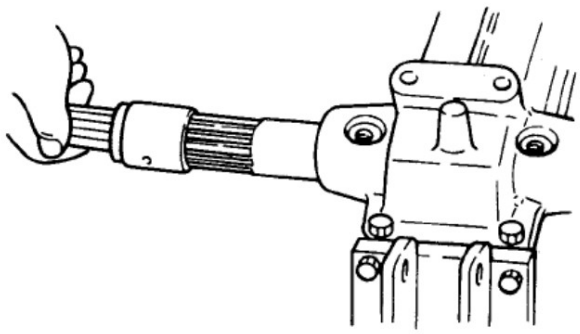
(2) Install the cylinder to the hydraulic case.



Assembling the ram arm and lift arm

Fix the piston rod to the power arm with a cotter pin.





(1) Install the power arm to the hydraulic case.

(2) Install the ram shaft to suit punch mark of the power arm.

(3) Install bushings coated with oil on both sides of the ram shaft. Put bushing set bolts into bushings while paying attention to the bushing set bolt position. And then tighten them.
Set oil seals coated with grease to both sides of the ram shaft.

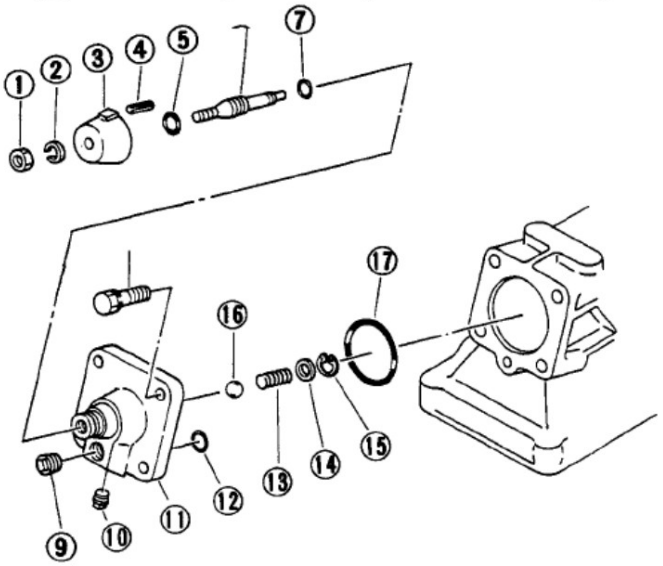
(4) Install the lift arm to suit punch mark of the ram shaft, and set it with a bolts.

NOTE

Make sure that the ram shaft arm moves smoothly.

Assembling the cylinder head

(1) Wash each parts cleanly before assembling.



1-Nut
2-Spring washer
3-Grip
4-Spring pin
5-"O" ring
6-Adjuster
7-"O" ring
8-Bolt w/washer (M12x45)
9-Taper plug(PT=3/8)
10-Taper plug (PT=1/8)
11-Cylinder head
12-")" ring
13-Spring
14-Washer
15-Circlip
16-"O" ring
17-Steel ball

(1) Grease "O" rings (5) (6), and fit them to adjuster. (6), setting the rings (5) (6) neatly in the groove.

(2) Run adjuster (6) into cylinder head (11).

(3) Grease "O" ring (12), and fit the ring (12) to the front side of cylinder head (11).

(4) Into cylinder head (11), insert steel ball (17), followed by spring (13) and washer (14), and put on circlip (15).

(5) Grease large "O" ring (16), and fit it to cylinder head (11).

NOTE

(1) If the plugs (9), (10) have been removed, be sure to wrap them with sealing tape or to apply sealant to them before re-fitting. Make certain that neither pieces of sealing tape nor crumby particles of sealant, whichever is the case, will not get into oil.

(2) Adjustment of flow control valve must be done after completing assembly or installing of both hydraulic case and diff-housing.

Assembling the hydraulic control linkage

(1) Apply thin grease to oil seals (3) and set each of them to the hydraulic case.

(2) Install a lever bracket (2) on the hydraulic case.

(3) Set a collar (19) to the control lever (1), and install the shaft coated with oil on the hydraulic case.

(4) Install link lever (10) on both link lever shaft (8) and lever link arm (11).

(5) Install the feed back shifter (7) from the inside of hydraulic case.

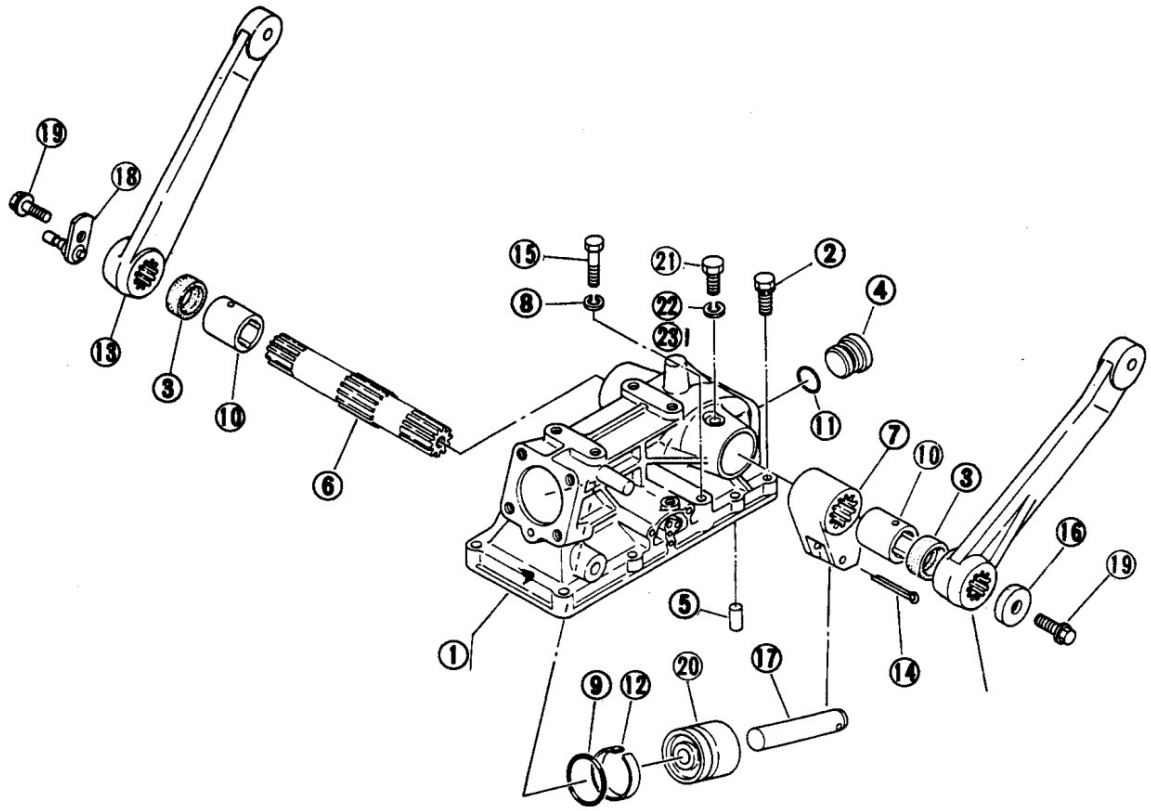
(6) Install the feed back arm (13) on the shaft of the feed back shifter (7), and set it with a spring pin (6).

(7) Set a washer (22) and disk springs (21) to the control lever (1). Then install the link lever shaft (8) on the hydraulic case, and do the lever link arm (11) on the control lever (1).

(8) Install a washer (23) on the tip of control lever, and fasten it with double nuts (4) so that correct torque can be obtained.

Starting torque of position control lever	5 ~ 6 kg (11 ~ 13.2 lb)

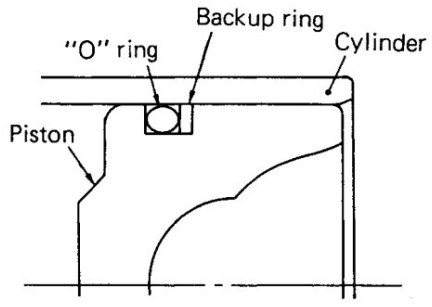
(9) Put a spring pin (6) into the valve shifter (5), install the valve shifter (5) on the tip of link lever shaft (8) together with the plate (24), and fasten them with a nut (4). Lock the nut (4) with a plate (24).

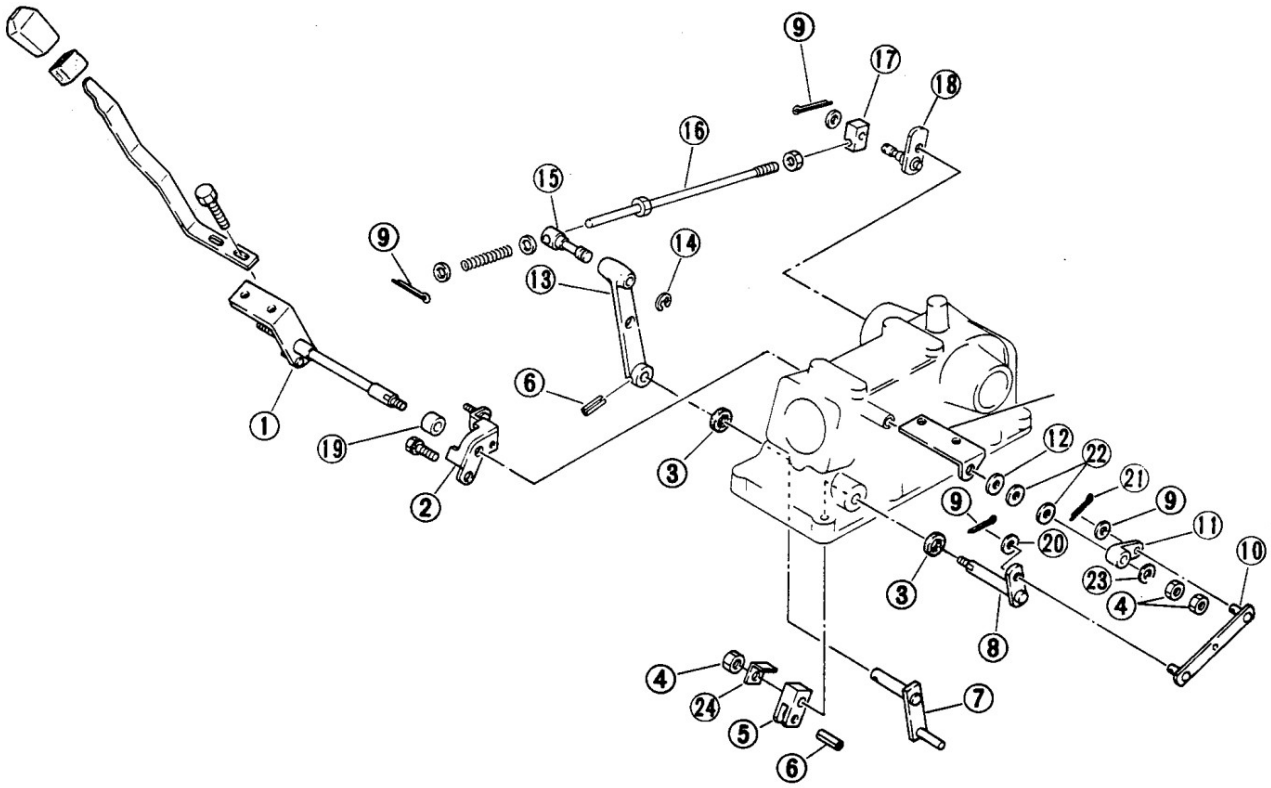


1-Hydraulic case
2-Bolt (M10 x 45) w/washer
3-Oil seal
4-Plug
5-Dowel pin
6-Ram shaft
7-Power arm
8-Spring washer
9-O-ring
10-Bushing
11-"O" ring
12-Back up ring
13-Lift arm
14-Cotter pin
15-Bolt (M10x100)
16-Washer
17-Piston rod
18-Plate
19-Bolt w/spring washer (M10x25)
20-Cylinder
21-Bushing set balt
22-Washer
23-Seal washer

(5) Apply the oil to the back-up ring and "O" ring, and install these rings to the piston.

(6) Apply the oil to the cylinder, and install the piston to cylinder.

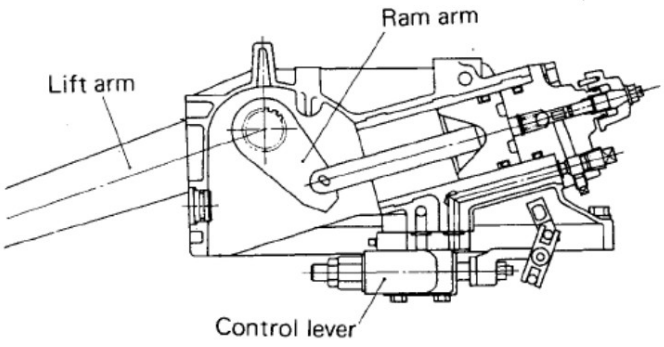




1-Control lever
2-Lever bracket
3-Oil seal
4-Lock nut
5-Valve shifter
6-Spring pin
7-Feed back shifter
8-Link lever shaft
9-Cotter pin
10-Link lever
11-Lever link arm
12-Plate
13-Feed back arm
14-E-type circlip
15-Joint pin
16-Feed back rod
17-Joint
18-Plate
19-Collar
20-Washer
21-Disk spring
22-Washer
23-Washer
24-Plate

Installing the control valve

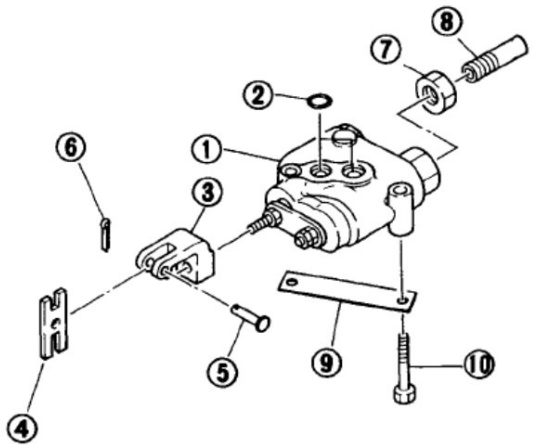
(1) Install a pipe for lubricating power arm with nut on the correctly adjusted control valve.



(2) Install valve link on the tip of fork by the use of pin and set it with cotter pin.

(3) Install the fork equipped with the valve link on the tip of spool valve and fasten it with lock plate nut.

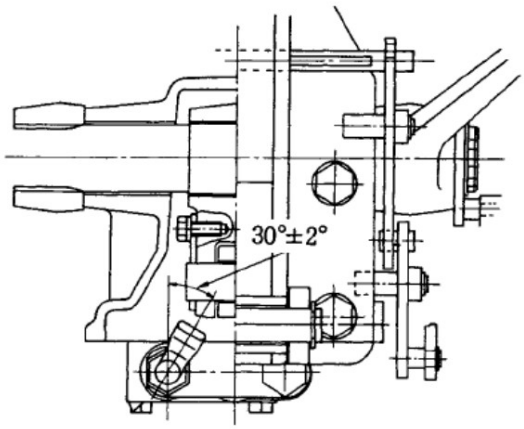
(4) Clean mating surface of the control valve and install "O" rings applied with oil on the control valve to fit the hydraulic case with it.



1-Control valve
2-"O" ring
3-Fork
4-Valve link
5-Clevis
6-Cotter pin
7-Nut (M14)
8-Pipe
9-Lock plate
10-Bolt (M8 x 45)

NOTE

Correctly set the valve link to the valve shifter and lever.



(5) After fixing the lock plate, tighten the control valve to the hydraulic case to secure it with lock plate.

Tightening torque	2.5 ~ 3.0 kg-m (18.1 ~ 21.7 ft-lb)

Removing the hydraulic pipings

(1) Place (a) jack under the rear part of axle housing and take up the weight of the housing with lack.

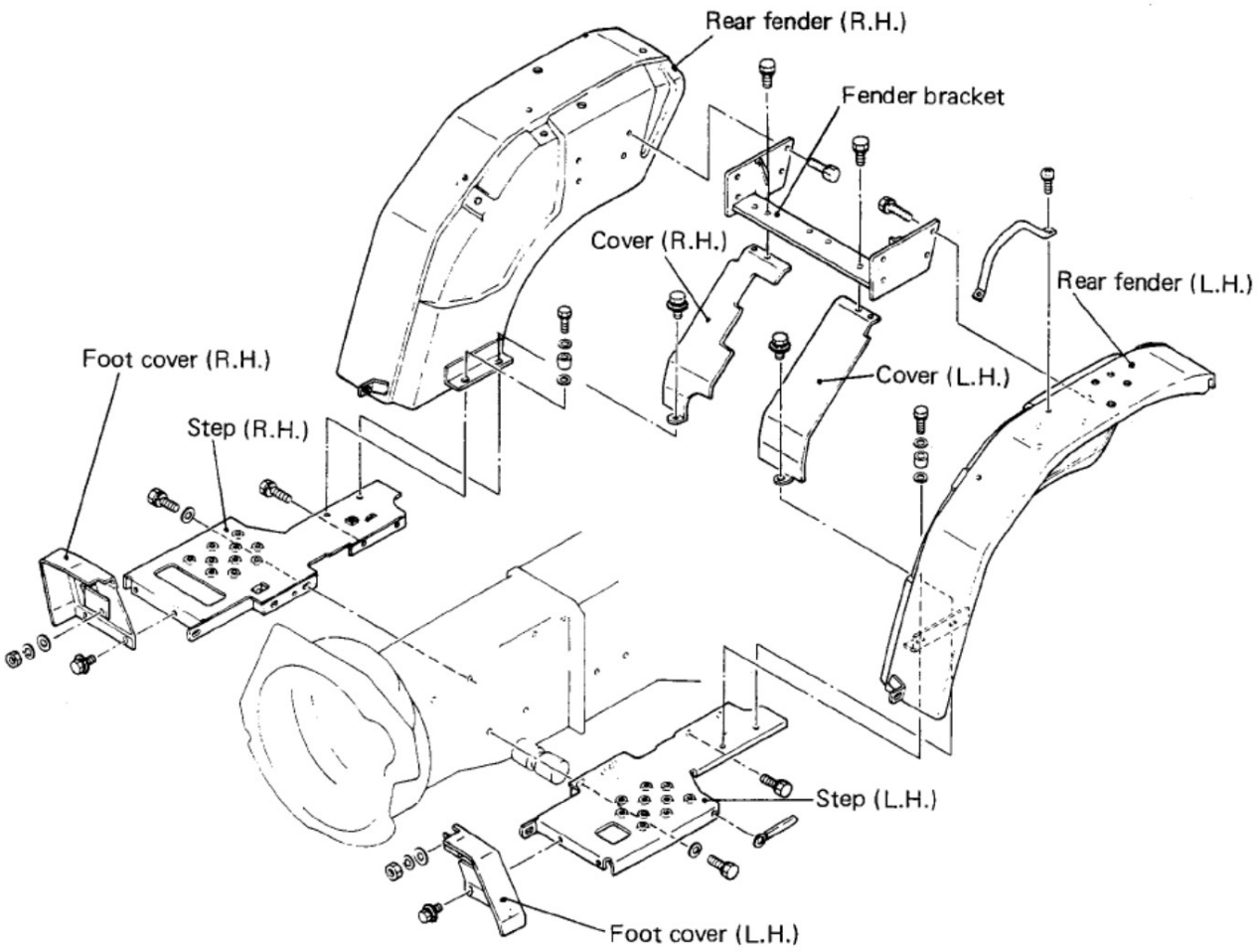
(2) Loosen rear wheel bolts, jack up the rear axle at left side, and tack of the rear wheel.

(3) Take out the lack supporting the rear part of axle housing.

NOTE

Apply the parking brake or shifting gear.

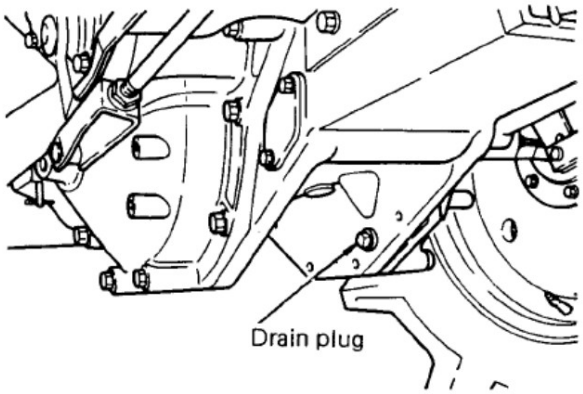
(4) After removing the fenders and covers, remove the left hand step and left hand foot cover.



(5) After opening the bonnet cover, remove left hand safety covers.

NOTE

Dust or impurities will be discharged more easily if the oil is drained while it is warm after operation.

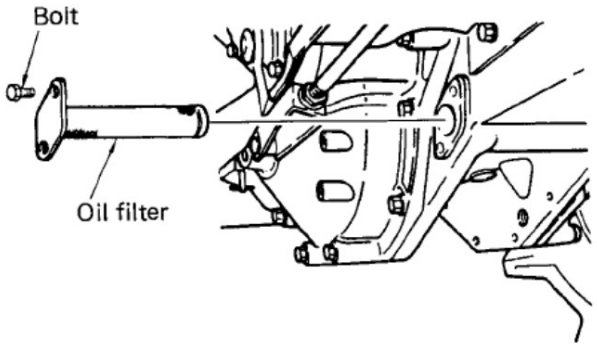


(6) Remove drain plugs at bottom of transmission case and diff-housing to allow oil flow out completely.

NOTE

Dust or impurities will be discharged more easily if the oil is drained while it is warm after operation.

(7) Remove oil filter at right bottom side of transmission case.



NOTE

Remove brake rod as required.

(9) To remove the pipe from hydraulic case, loosen the union bolt of the pressure pipe.

NOTE

As the union bolt heat is not thick enough, be sure to use socket wrench. Using open wrench will give damage to union bolt head.

(10) Loosen bolts securing suction pipe and remove the suction pipe from the left bottom side of diffhousing case.

(11) Loosen the nut securing the oil pump and remove the oil pumps from the engine timing gear case.

NOTE

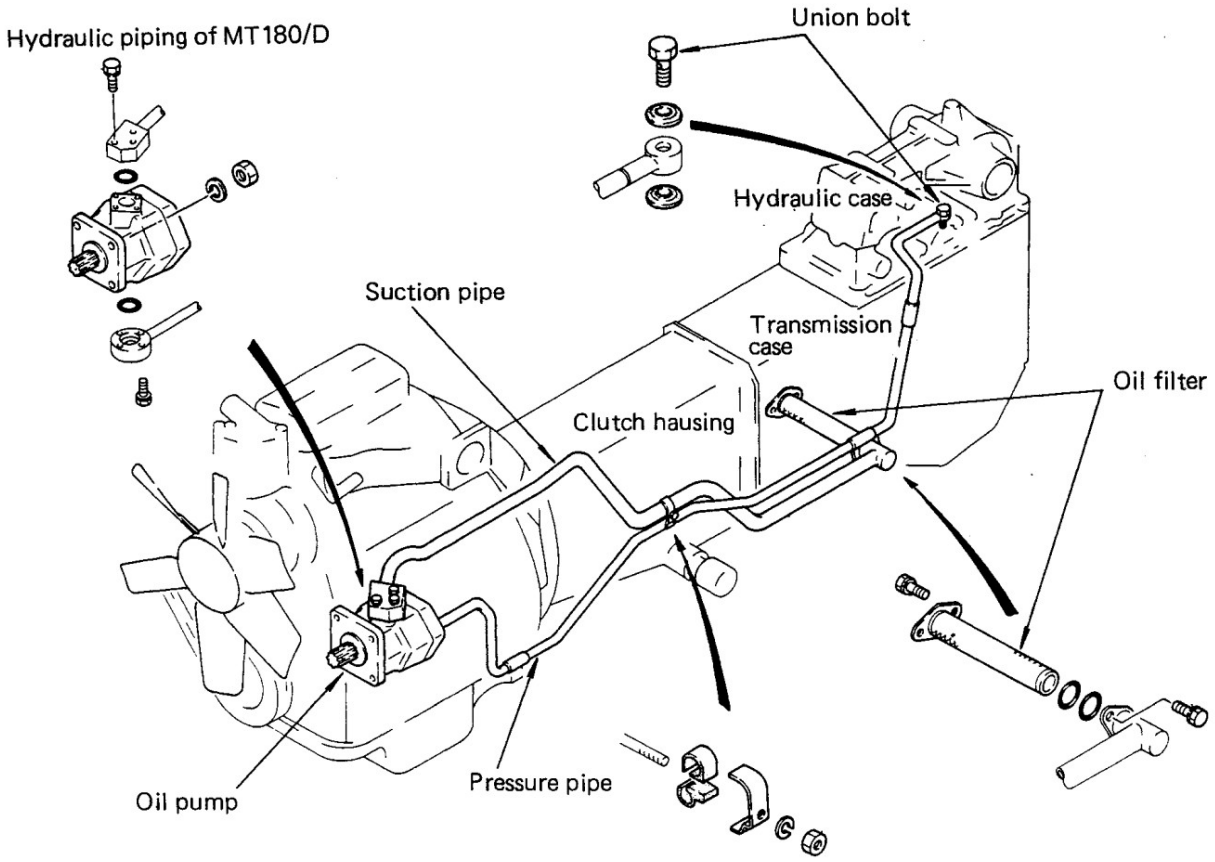
It is not necessary to remove the pipes, not to drain the oil when removing the oil pump only.

(12) Take out the suction pipe and pressure pipe in the front side.

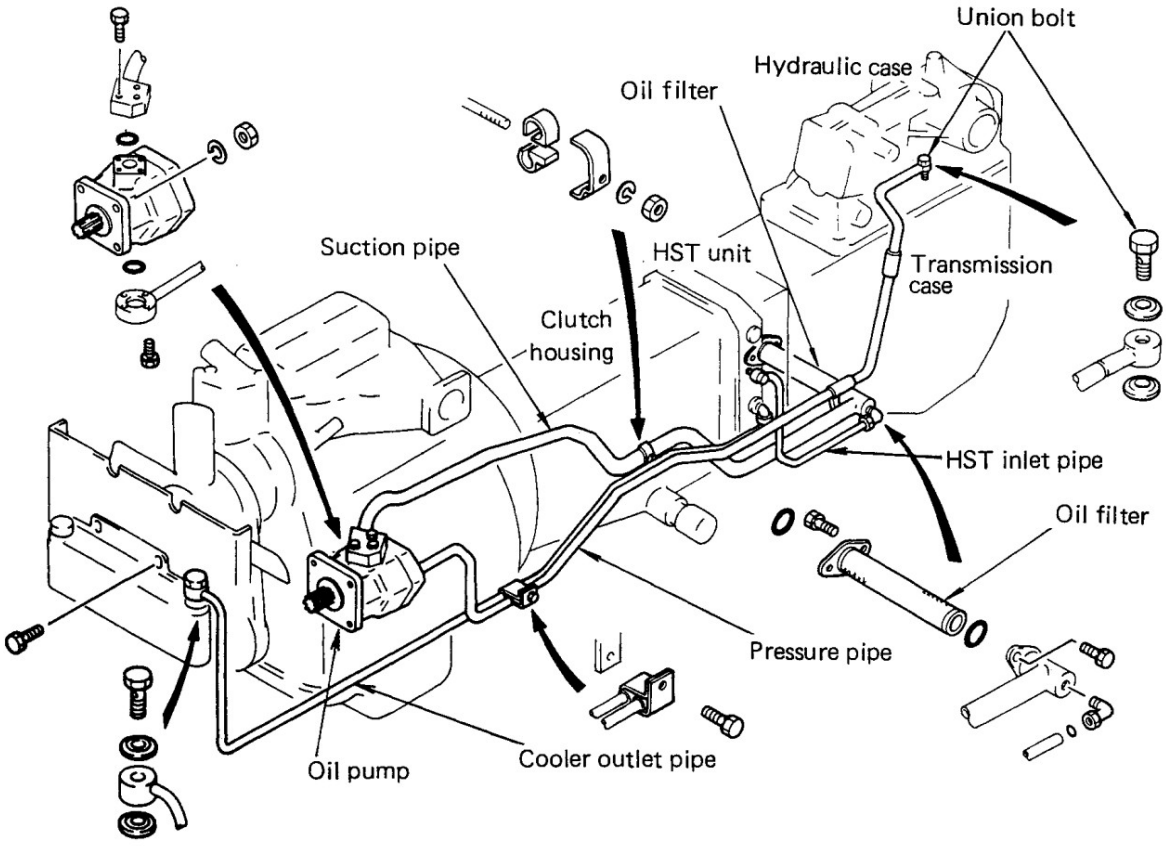
NOTE

Remove clutch return spring as required.

Hydraulic piping of MT180/D



Hydraulic piping of MT180H/HD



Installing the pipings and pump

NOTE

Be sure to replace "O" rings with new ones. When assembling, apply clean oil and assemble carefully.

The procedure of re-installing the pipings and pump is reverse of the foregoing removal procedure.

Item		Tightening torque
Pup Pump side	Suction pipe	1.0 ~ 1.2 kg-m (7.2 ~ 8.7 ft-lb)
	Pressure pipe	1.0 ~ 1.2 kg-m (7.2 ~ 8.7 ft-lb)
Transmission case side	Suction pipe	2.5 ~ 3.0 kg-m (18.1 ~ 21.7 ft-lb)
Hydraulic case	Union bolt	4.5 ~ 5.5 kg-m (32.5 ~39.8 ft-lb)
Oil Filter	Bolt	2.5 ~ 3.0 kg-m (18.1 ~21.7 ft-lb)

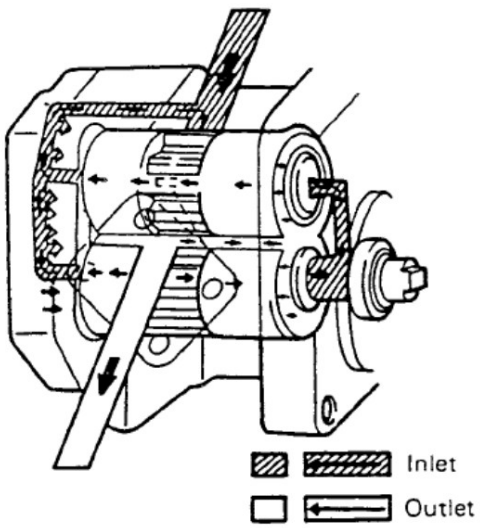
OIL PUMP

Construction

This oil pump [Nachi–GP-3607A] is of the gear type, employing the pressure loading system. The pressurized oil is forced out to the rear side of bearing bushing, and the minimum clearance is maintained between the gear teeth and bushing to minimize internal leakage, thereby securing a high volumetric efficiency even at high-pressure-low-speed operation. (The bearing bushing serves as a pressure loading component and casing at the same time.) The bearing bushing is of movable design, and, as a result, it is able to maintain a proper clearance whether the bushing swells due to heat or is worn due to protracted low-temperature operation.

The bearing bushing is designed to be lubri cated by low pressure oil which is forced fed, independently of the pressurized oil on the outlet side. This prevents the seizing-up of the bearing and the damage of the oil seal.

As far as the oil is clean, 90 percent of the specified volumetric efficiency can be secured for a long period. The pump has been tested for 4000 hours continuous operation and proven to maintain high-performance.



NOTE

a) The pump oil seal is made of synthetic resin, and therefore, mineral oil should be used for lubrication. Use of acid and alkaline oil, kerosene, and high octane vegetable oil is not allowed. Extremely high temperature oil may cause corrosion to the oil seal.

b) The oil should be gear oil SAE 80. For details, refer to the Instruction Book.

Removal

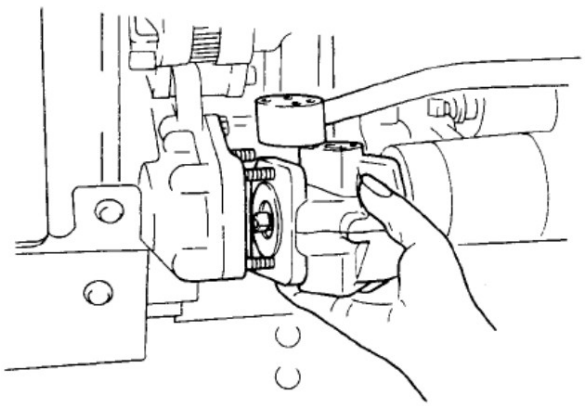
Hydraulic oil (transmission oil) need not be drained out for this removal.

(1) Open the bonnet.

(2) Remove safety cover on the left.

(3) Loosen bolts securing pressure and suction pipe connections. Recover "O" rings.

(4) Loosen nuts securing the pump to timing gear case, and take out the pump.



Disassembly

NOTE

The oil pump should be disassembled in a clean place, and the tools must be also clean. All disassembled parts are blown with compressed air for drying, after being washed. Do not use rags.

Take care not to damage the body and cover, because they are made of aluminum alloys.

For this disassembly work, refer to the exploded view.

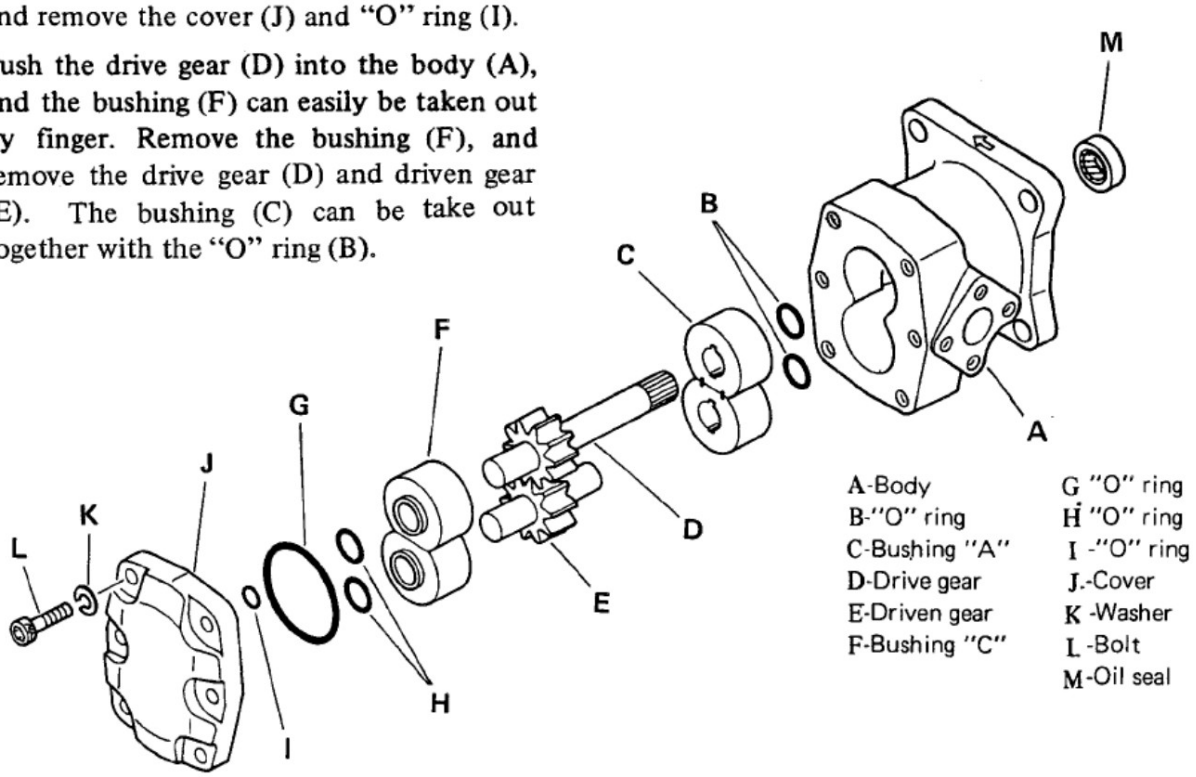
(1) Loosen the bolt (L) with a hexagon hole, and remove the cover (J) and "O" ring (I).

(2) Push the drive gear (D) into the body (A), and the bushing (F) can easily be taken out by finger. Remove the bushing (F), and remove the drive gear (D) and driven gear (E). The bushing (C) can be take out together with the "O" ring (B).

The disassembled parts should be arranged in order. As for the shafts and bushings, their positions should be correctly memorized.

When installing bushings, take care not to confuse the bushing (C) for bushing (F) in relation to their positions.

Each bushing has a mark A or C stamped on its end. A bushing having mark A should be installed on the cover side. (e.g. A indicates clockwise rotation, and C denotes counterclockwise rotation.) The oil seal (M) should not be removed unless otherwise broken. When pulling out the oil seal (M) from the body, take special care not to scratch the housing bore.



A-Body
B-"O" ring
C-Bushing "A"
D-Drive gear
E-Driven gear
F-Bushing "C"
G "O" ring
H "O" ring
I -"O" ring
J.-Cover
K -Washer
L -Bolt
M-Oil seal

Inspection

Replacement of worn or damaged parts should be done with special care. In order to increase pumping efficiency, the gear rotates with its teeth in slight contact with the pump casing. The contact is evidenced on the low pressure side of the pump. After a long period of use, the oil will become dirty, and bushing holes and journal bearings will be worn. As a result, the casing wall begins to show wear. If the amount of wear exceeds 0.05 mm (0.002 in.), the clearance between the gear teeth and the casing wall will be excessive, and oil leakage will increase. This will reduce the performance of the pump. Replacing the bushing will not be effective to improve the performance. The use of a worn bushing is not recommended except when the pump is operated under low pressure and with special care.

In general, working parts are subject to wear after a long period of use, and there will be not a big difference in wear between them. It is advisable, therefore, that when any component parts show an excessive wear, the pump itself should be replaced, instead of replacing worn parts. It will be more economical.

Each part should be washed with kerosene and blown with compressed air. All removed "O" rings should also be replaced. Check the gears and gear shafts for scratches and broken teeth. The contact ratio in a pair of gears in mesh should be even. Measure the shaft diameter with an outside micrometer calipers. If the measurement shows a smaller value than Nachi – 13.96 mm (0.550 in.) , replace the shaft.

Check the bushings for deformed bore and scratches. If any discoloring of a gear can be considered to be related with a defective bushing, check for the relief valve and related oil passages. If the length of a bushing is shorter than the value as shown below, it should be replaced.

16.80 mm (0.661 in.)

Any discolored gear should also be replaced. Measure the clearance between the shaft and bushing. If the measurement is larger than the following value, the bushing should be replaced.

0.177 mm (0.006 in.)

Reassembly

Make sure that all parts are clean. If the oil seal (M) has been removed, it should be replaced. To install the oil seal, use a press. (The seal lip must face inward.)

(1) Place the "O" ring (B) on the bushing (C), and coat it with good quality of mineral grease. Insert it in the body (A) and push it in further. A pair of bushings must be true and coat it with good quality of oil. Insert it in the body (A) and push it in further. A pair of bushings must be true fitted in place without requiring force. If the bushing has a scratch on its surface, it will not move smoothly. In this case, pull out the bushing and smooth down the raised part with oil stone. Make sure that the surface of the bushing is smooth. For this check, use a surface plate. After using oil stone, be sure to wash the bushing. Oiling the bore will make it easy to install the bushing. Make sure that, after installation, the "O" rings are in place.

The "O" ring must be located between the bushing and the bottom of body. The leading gear type is greatly affected by the result of reassembly. Make sure that the escape groove in the bushing surface is not inclined. Incorrect reassembly will not provide the pressure balance effect, and as a result, the bushing in the bore will be deformed by pressure.

(2) When inserting the drive gear (D) into the body (A), take care not to damage the oil seal with the stepped (machined) part of the gear shaft. Insert the drive gear (D) and the driven gear (E) into the body (A).

(3) Fully grease the bushings (F) in pair, and insert them in the body. Place the "O" rings (H) on the bushing (F).

(4) Place the "O" rings (G) and (I) on the cover, and place the cover, Finally tighten the bolt (L) with a hole by using a hexagon wrench. Tightening torque is 0.8 kg-m (5.77 ft-lb). Lock the bolt head with center punch and feed a small quantity of oil through the port.

(5) Make sure that the reassembly is done perfectly by turning the drive gear (D) with an open end wrench. If the gear turns smoothly, the assembly is correct. If too tight, correct it.

Installation

(1) Align the pump shaft with the pump drive shaft, and install it to the engine timing gear case.

(2) Set the "O" ring correctly, and install the suction pipe and delivery pipe to the pump.

Test

Special care should be taken for test run, particularly when bushings, gears and body have been replaced. Test run should be continued at least for 30 minutes. First, make sure that the engine oil, cooling water, transmission oil and other components of the tractor are all perfect. Run the engine with no-load at idling speed, and when oil temperature rises as specified (engine water 82°C or 180°F), increase the engine speed to increase the pump delivery. Operate the control lever for hydraulic control, and give load to the pump.

In particular, while operating the pump, check the temperature of the pump. If the temperature is excessively high (about 80°C or 176°F), reduce the engine speed temporarily, and continue no-load operation until working parts are fully run in.

NOTE

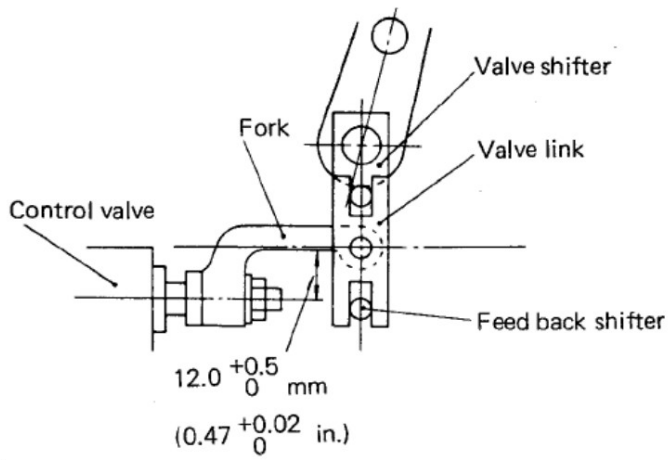
The disassembly and reassembly of the pump are relatively easy, but it should not be unnecessarily disassembled because of trouble of the hydraulic system, of which causes are unknown. Avoid performing disassembly for repair in the field, because it is very difficult to prevent dust and dirt from entering the pump. Parts may also be scratched.

ADJUSTMENT

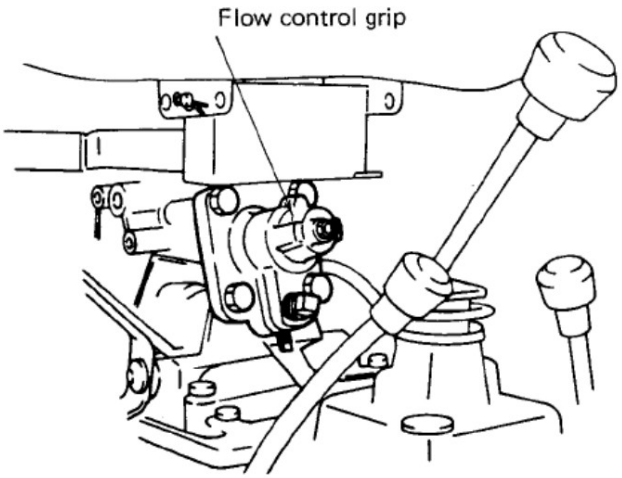
Adjusting the control valve fork

It is required to adjust the fork so as to position it correctly because hole diameter is bigger than that of the tip of spool valve.

Make valve link vertical by means of position control lever. Loosen nut at the tip of spool valve, and adjust fork by moving up and down so that both upper part of the link pin and lower part of valve link set pin come to $12.0\ ^{+0.5}_{0}$ mm ($0.47\ ^{+0.02}_{0}$ in.). After adjusting it to the prescribed dimension, tighten nut, secure the fork and lock it with lock plate.



Adjusting the flow control grip



(1) Attach implement to 3-point linkage and place position control lever in lower position.

(2) Start engine, lift up implement and stop the engine.

(3) Loosen nut on the tip of flow control grip.

(4) Turn the position control lever to LOWER position, and make sure the implement is held.

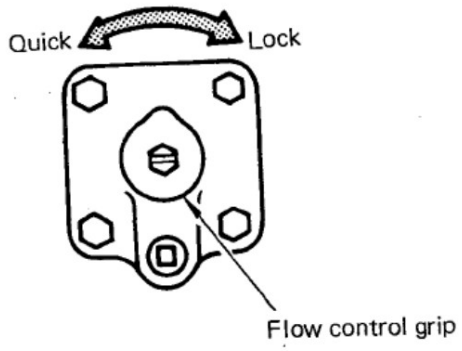
NOTE

In case the implement is apt to be lowered, turn the adjusting screw more clockwise. Start the engine again, turn the control lever to RAISE position. Then turn the control lever to RAISE position, stop the engine and lower the control lever to make sure that the implement is held to the full.

(5) Turn the pilot screw slowly counterclockwise and move it to the position where the implement starts to be lowered. Turn the pilot screw clockwise to the position where the implement is stopped.

Lock the flow control grip with nut.

(6) Start the engine again and turn the control lever to RAISE position. Then make sure that the implement is stopped at the position where the flow control grip is turned clockwise while the implement is lowered rapidly by turning the stopper lever counterclockwise.



Setting of flow control grip

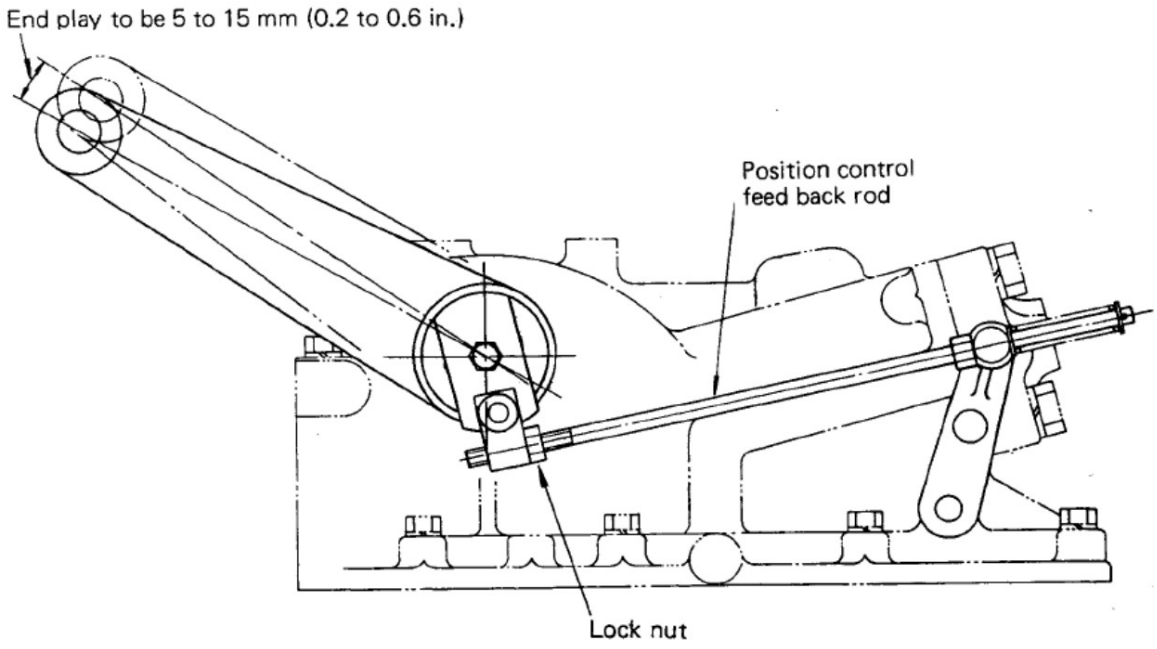
Adjusting the position control

(1) Remove the lift rod from lift arm.

(2) Start engine and locate the control lever at RAISE position.

(3) In case the end play is more than 5 to 15 mm (0.2 to 0.6 in.) on the lift arm.

Loosen lock nut of the feed back rod and extend the feed back rod by turning the rod counterclockwise.



(4) In case there is no play on the tip of lift arm and relief valve is worked.

Loosen lock nut of the position control feed back rod. Then screw the feed back rod into the lift arm side and adjust it so as to obtain the prescribed end play.

TROUBLESHOOTING

Trouble	Possible cause	Remedy
Implement does not move up even when the control lever is set to the lifting positions.	a) Weight of the implement exceeds lifting capacity	Check the weight of the implement
	b) Gear pump discharges no oil (damaged drive shaft)	Replace the gear pump
	c) Air is mixed in the pipe line	Bleed air from the pipe line Refer to the items, "Oil filter" and "Notes," bleed air from the pipe line.
	d) Shortage of hydraulic oil	Check the level of hydraulic oil and supply if not sufficient
	e) Clogged oil filter element	Clean the oil filter element
	f) Dropped set pressure of the pump relief	Readjust the relief pressure: $135\ ^{+5}_{0}$ kg/cm^2 ($1920\ ^{+71}_{0}$ psi) or replace with new one
	g) Unloader valve or poppet does not close	Disassemble and clean the unload valve and correct flaw. Then, confirm smooth operation of the unload valve.
	h) Defective assembly of control valve	Adjust properly
The implement set in neutral shows hunting while the engine is running.*	a) Flaw or dust on the poppet and seat surface	Correct, clean or replace
	b) Flaw or dust on the check valve and seat surface	Correct, clean or replace
	c) Flaw or defect on the "O" ring	Check and replace the "O" ring if defective
	d) Oil leakage from the piston and cylinder	Check for the cause and repair defective parts
	e) Oil leakage from passage between control valve and cylinder	Check the "O" ring and replace if defective
	f) Hydraulic oil	Replace with proper hydraulic oil
Lifting speed of the implement is found slower than the standard.	a) Flaw or dust on the unloader valve seat surface	Clean or replace Replace the unloader valve or the body. When replacing the body, replace the spool valve at the same time.
	b) Oil leakage due to flaw on the relief seat surface	Correct or replace the relief valve poppet
	c) Leakage inside the cylinder	Check, correct or replace the cylinder and piston Check the "O" ring

Trouble	Possible cause	Remedy
The implement set in neutral shows hunting while the engine is running.	a) Inferior power volumetric efficiency of the pump	Replace the pump (Check for the oil leakage)
	b) Clogged strainer	Wash the oil filter
		Check the oil for contamination
		Replace the oil if contaminated
Defective operation of the control lever	a) Dust between the body and spool	Remove and clean the valve
	b) Sticking in the spool valve	Correct or replace the spool valve
		Replace the spool valve and body at the same time.
	c) Sticking in the link system	Disassemble and correct the defective part
		Replace if correction is impossible
Temperature of hydraulic oil is too high	a) Relief valve is operating always	Readjust the relief valve
		Readjust the link system
		Check and adjust the weight of the implement
		Check and correct improper assembling and the control valve.
		Check the oil for contamination
	b) Lower pump volumetric efficiency	Replace the pump
		Check the oil for contamination
	c) Flaw on the unloader valve, body and seat surface	Replace the body and unloader valve
		Replace the body and spool valve as a set
		Check the oil for contamination
	d) Oil leakage due to flaws on the relief valve seat surface	Correct or replace the relief valve
	e) Oil leakage from the cylinder or piston	Check and correct the defective parts
	f) Sticking in the pump	Replace the pump
Abnormal sound	a) Sticking in the pump	Replace the pump
	b) Insufficient suction of the pump	Clean the oil filter element
		Check the oil for contamination
	c) Air is sucked in.	Check "O" rings of each joint for tightening
		Bleed air from pipe line
		Refer to the items, "Oil filter" and "Notes," bleed air from the pipe line.
	d) Air suction from the pump oil seal	Check, correct or replace
	e) Improper hydraulic oil in use	Replace with proper one

Trouble	Possible cause	Remedy
Implement lowers naturally when the engine stops	Follow the steps described in the * marked item, which has the same cause.	
Implement lowers naturally while traveling	a) Control lever moves toward lowering direction during running	Use a stronger friction spring to prevent the control lever from moving
	b) Insufficient set pressure of cylinder relief valve	Adjust the pressure to be as specified

Pump

Trouble	Possible cause	Remedy
Oil leakage	a) Damage of shaft oil seal	Replace with new one
	b) Damage of gasket	Replace with new one
Noise		
Cavitation	a) Clogged strainer	Clean the strainer
	b) Low oil temperature	Raise the temperature
	c) Unsuitable oil	Replace with a proper one
Air is mixed	d) Insufficient oil	Supply oil up to the specified level
	e) Air entered from the suction side pipe line or joint	Repair the defective parts
	f) Damage of the shaft oil seal	Replace with new one
Discharge amount is decreased and discharge pressure is not increased	a) Damage of the bearing gear and body due to foreign matters mixed	Replace the hydraulic oil and clean the oil strainer and pipe line
	b) Damage of the bearing gear and body due to exhaustion of oil	Replace the bearing gear and body or replace the working oil and clean the oil strainer and pipe line.
	c) Insufficient oil	Supply oil up to the specified level
	d) Damage of bearing, gear and body due to overload	Adjust the pressure of the pump relief valve as specified
	e) Damage of halfeight gasket	Replace with new one

SPECIFICATIONS

Specification \ Tractor	MT180/D	MT180H/HD
Type of cylinder	Single action cylinder	
Diameter of piston	60 mm (2.36 in.)	
Stroke of piston	71 mm (2.80 in.)	
Maximum lift power at the end of lower link	500 kg (1103 lb)	
Pressure for pump relief valve setting	135 kg/cm² (1920 psi)	
Type of hydraulic pump	Pressure loading gear type	
Model of hydraulic pump	Nachi: GP–3607A	
Output of hydraulic pump (at 2700 engine rpm)	12.9 liter/min (3.4 GPM)	
Control valve type	2 spool valve with unload valve	
Oil lock valve	In-line non return valve automatic flow control valve	
Strainer mesh	#42 x 100 mesh	
Hydraulic oil	Gear oil SAE #80	
Oil capacity	18 liters (4.74 U.S. gallon) [same as transmission oil]	
Control	Position control, flow control and lift lock	
External service	PT3/8 tap	
Hydraulic adaptor plate	Optional	

REMARQUES

ISO

CHAPTER 8
ELECTRICAL SYSTEM

8

REMARQUES

TABLE OF CONTENTS

REMARQUES

DESCRIPTION

The electrical system of the MITSUBISHI MT160/D, MT180/D and MT180H/HD operates on 12 volts and consists of an alternator, voltage regulator, starter, glow plugs, headlamps, pilot lamps, switches and a 12-volt battery. Its ground polarity is negative (–).

Generator and voltage regulator

The generator supplies current to keep the battery in charge state, replacing the energy consumed by the starter motor and lamps. The generator charging rate is controlled by a voltage regulator which controls the generator output, thereby maintaining a charging rate, and prevents the battery from overcharging under varying temperatures and operating conditions.

Starter switch and starter circuit

The starter switch is actually a "heat and start switch" and permits current to flow from the battery to the glow plugs in its "H" position and to the starter in "S" position. The starter circuit is equipped with a safety starter switch which is mounted on the sub shift mechanism. This switch closes only when the sub shift lever is in neutral position to permit the current to flow to the starter. This is for preventing the tractor from jerking accidentally when the engine is started.

Glow plugs

Three sheathed type glow plugs, one for the combustion chamber of each cylinder, are used. The glow plug indicator mounted on instrument panel glows red when the plugs are energized.

Pilot lamps

The water temperature pilot lamp, engine oil pressure pilot lamp and battery charge pilot lamp are clustered in one and mounted on the instrument panel. These pilot lamps are connected to their respective sensing switches.

"Polymion" battery (perfector type)

Manufactured and sold under the trade name of "Polymion" battery by JAPAN STORAGE BATTERY CO., LTD., this 12-volt, 45-ampere-hour perfector type battery Model NX100-S6L (S) is standard on MT160/D, MT180/D and MT180H/HD. This battery features its extra thin separators which are in base material polyolefin; they are homogeneously porous to permit electrolyte to freely circulate between cell plates. The "Polymion" battery, because of such separators, gains an advantage over an ordinary battery in capacity per size. In other words, this battery is capable of far more power than an ordinary battery of like size. Thus, it is not advisable to substitute this battery with any other type of battery of like size.

Following are the standard items of electrical equipment mounted on MT160/D, MT180/D and MT180H/HD:

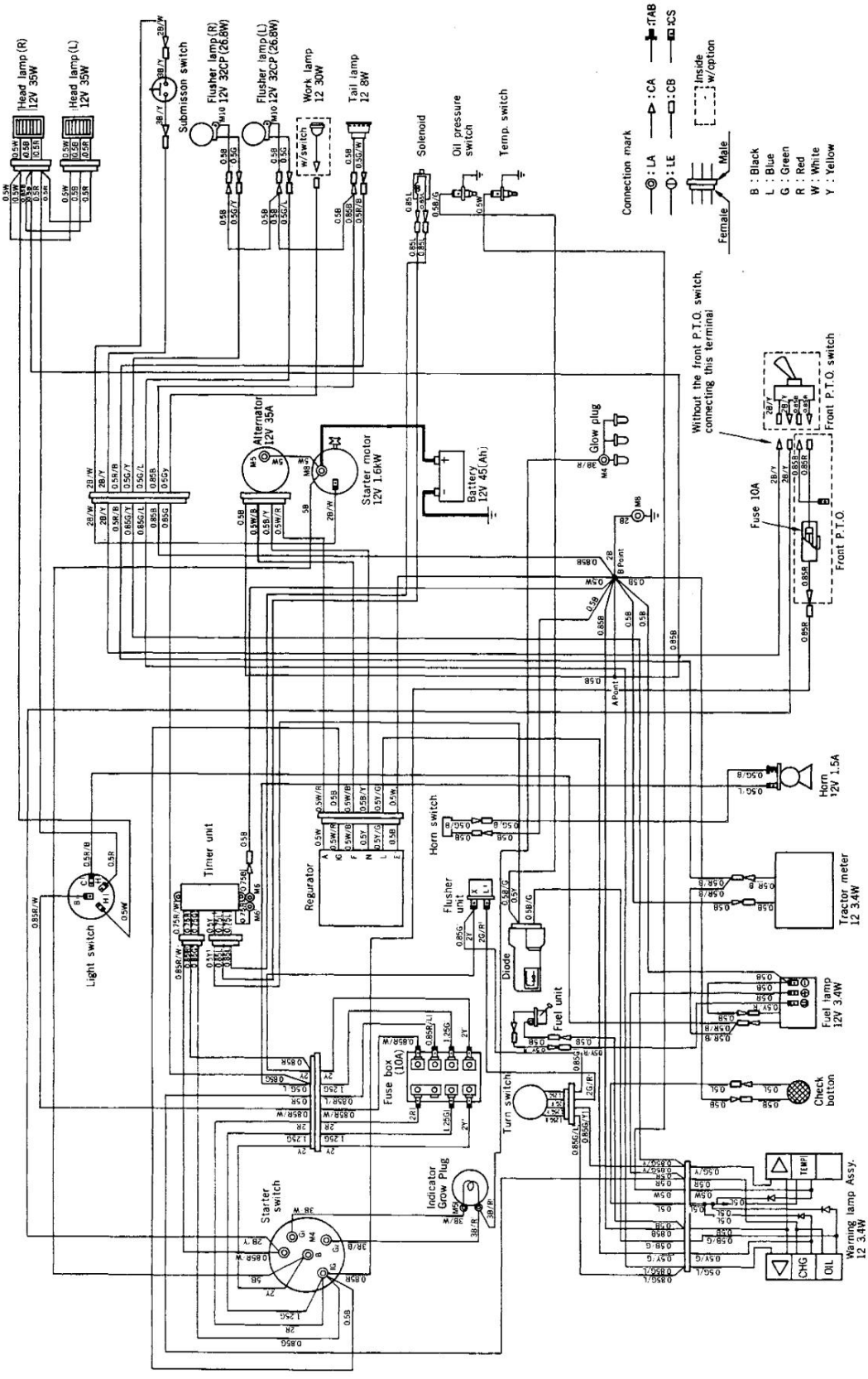
Battery	NX100-S6L(S) 12 volts, 45 ampere-hours
Starter motor	MITSUBISHI M002T50371, 1.6 kilowatts, 12 volts
Alternator	MITSUBISHI AH2053M4, 12 volts, 35 amperes
Indicator lamps	Water temperature pilot lamp, engine oil pressure pilot lamp, battery charge pilot lamp
Water temperature pilot lamp switch	
Engine oil pressure pilot lamp switch	
Glow plugs	Sheathed type, 10.5 volts, amperes
Glow plug indicator	Red-heat type, 30 amperes
Voltage regulator	MITSUBISHI RQB2220D1

Engine ON-OFF key switch	
Lighting switch	
Safety starter switch	
Headlamps	Stanley 12 volts, 25 watts/25 watts
• Two flashing lamps with turn signal	
• Tail lamp	
• Horn	
Fuse holder	Box type with 4 pieces of 10A cartridge type fuse

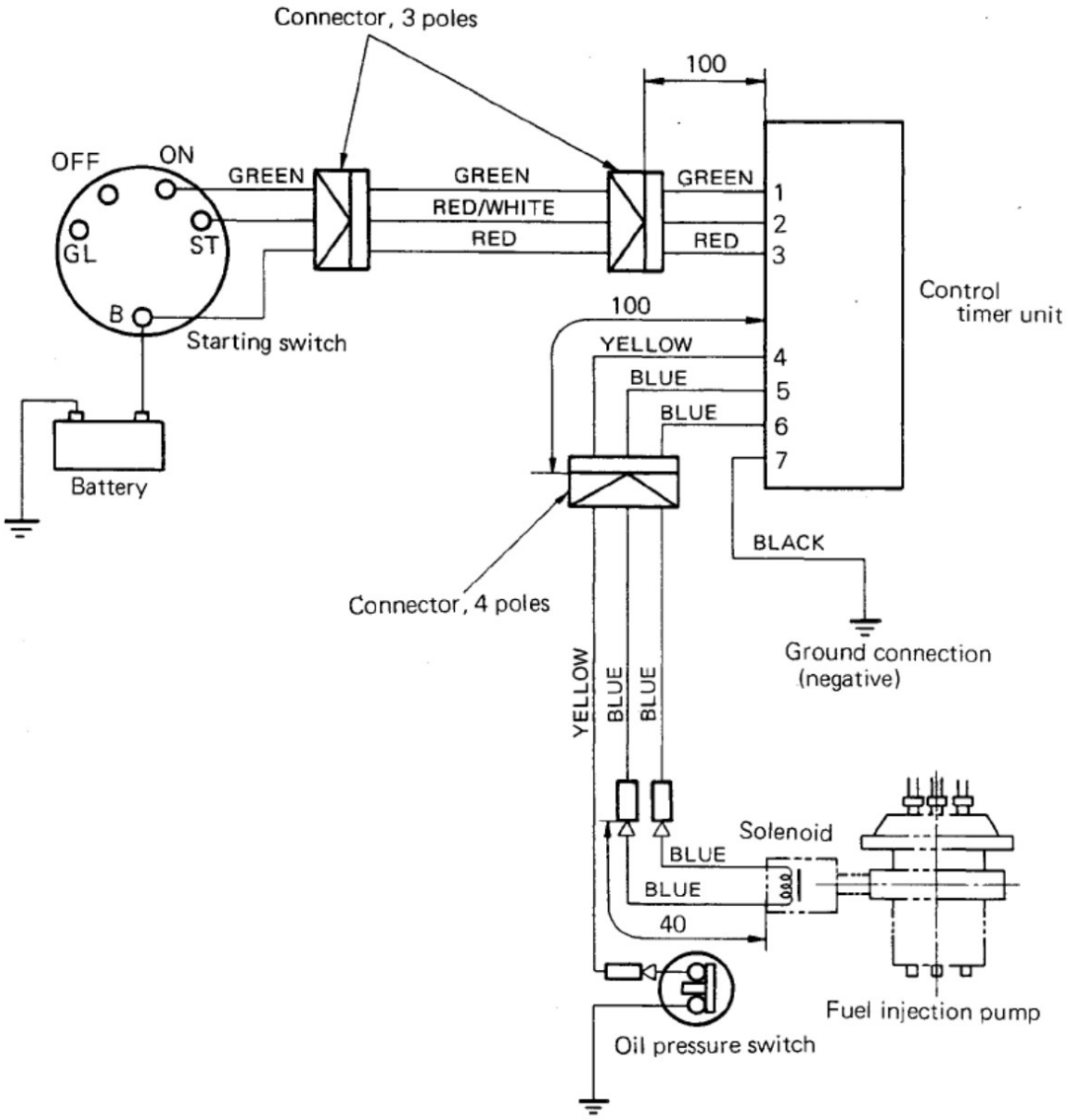
Following are the optional items of electrical equipment:

Working lamp

WIRING DIAGRAM



Wiring diagram of electric shut-off system



Description	Control timer unit and oil pressure switch
Ambient temperature	−30 to 80°C (−22 to 176°F)
Acceleration of VIB	10G (at 3000 rpm)

BATTERY

HANDLING THE PERFECTOR TYPE BATTERY

This battery is of a perfector type and as long as plugs are properly sealed, the battery will operate considerably long. For caution's sake, however, give it an initial charging before use. As the initial charging to this battery, a quick charging is allowable unless the specific gravity of its electrolyte is considerably dropped. In freezing weather, warm up electrolyte before pouring it into the battery.

Following are the basic rules to be followed in handling this battery:

(1) Take sealing tapes off filler plugs and remove the plugs.

(2) About 2.8 liters (3 quarts) of electrolyte will be required to fill the battery up to level. The specific gravity should be 1.260 as corrected to 20°C (68°F).

(3) When filling the battery with electrolyte, make sure that the electrolyte temperature is not higher than 30°C (86°F).

(4) After filling the battery, leave it for a while until the electrolyte level goes down; then, replenish it to the upper level.

(5) The battery will self-discharge if it is kept out of service for long periods of time, or if cell plates are left exposed to the air due to poorly sealed plugs. Such a battery will not deliver the amount of current enough to cause the starter to crank the engine properly even if it is filled with electrolyte up to the upper level. In such a case, remove the battery from the tractor and recharge it.

(6) Where the tractor is stored with its battery filled with electrolyte up to level, check the specific gravity of electrolyte and recharge the battery when the specific gravity is below the specified value.

NOTE

For measuring the specific gravity, be sure to confirm the gravity value obtained in filling in electrolyte for the first time.

(7) If the specific gravity of electrolyte is found below 1.200, charge the battery slowly at the current of 5.0 amperes. Never make a quick charging.

CHARGING THE BATTERY

Slow charging

To recharge the battery which has been left out of service over long periods of time:

(1) The charging current should not exceed 1/20 of the battery capacity; it is normally 2 to 2.5 amperes.

(2) The length of time required for charging is 10 to 20 hours.

Regular charging

To recharge the battery which is discharged in normal service:

(1) The charging current should not exceed 1/10 of the battery capacity; it is normally 4 to 4.5 amperes.

(2) The length of time required for charging is 1.2 to 1.5 times of the value obtained by dividing the rate of discharge (ampere-hour) (presumed) by the charging current.

Quick charging

To charge the battery by using a quick charger:

(1) The charging current should not exceed the battery capacity.

(2) The length of time required for charging is 30 to 60 minutes.

The charging should be continued until the battery is gassing freely and there is no rise in the specific gravity of electrolyte. In fully charged battery, a charging voltage of higher than 15 volts will be noted at each cell and a specific gravity of 1.260 as corrected to 20° C (68° F) will be read.

PRECAUTIONS FOR CHARGING

When recharging the battery (removed from the tractor), observe the following rules:

(1) A battery that is being charged gives off highly explosive gases. Never light a match or a cigarette near such a battery.

(2) If battery temperature rises above 45°C (113°F) during charging, stop charging and have a wait for a while to permit the battery to cool down, or reduce the charging current to 1/2.

(3) In cold weather, a rapid voltage rise will occur in a battery being charged, resulting in an undercharged battery. In such a weather, charge a battery in a warm place.

(4) Remove the battery from the tractor, and remove vent plugs (if equipped) to improve ventilation.

(5) When connecting or disconnecting the leads from a charger to the battery, turn off the switch on the charger, making sure that no charging current is flowing into the battery.

(6) To charge the battery on the tractor with an external charger, be sure to take off the grounded-terminal cable clamp and make good connection of the charger with the battery by clamping the positive (+) lead of the charger on the positive (+) terminal of the battery and the negative (−) lead on the negative (−) terminal.

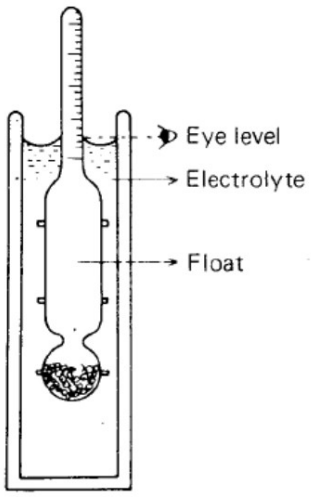
(7) Never use a battery tester on a battery that is being charged. This will allow sparks, resulting in accident.

CARE OF THE BATTERY

Checking the specific gravity of electrolyte

(1) As the battery discharges, the electrolyte gradually loses its specific gravity. Check the specific gravity to determine the state of charge of the battery.

(2) To check the specific gravity, use a battery hydrometer, and take the reading at eye level.



How to read hydrometer

(3) The specific gravity varies with temperature. This effect is due to the fact that as a liquid cools it becomes thicker and gain gravity. As a liquid warms it becomes thinner and loses gravity. The same is true of electrolyte. Thus, temperature should be considered when a gravity reading is taken. Make a correction if the electrolyte temperature is above or below 20°C (68°F) standard.

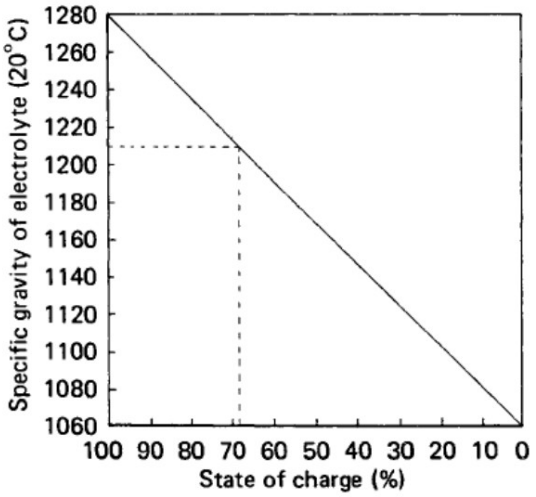
Conversion table of specific gravity of electrolyte

Sulfuric acid weight %	0°C (32°F)	5°C (41°F)	10°C (50°F)	15°C (59°F)	20°C (68°F)	25°C (77°F)	30°C (86°F)	35°C (95°F)	40°C (104°F)	45°C (113°F)	Temperature coefficient
28.0	1.218	1.215	1.212	1.208	**1.205**	1.202	1.198	1.195	1.191	1.188	
28.5	1.223	1.220	1.217	1.213	**1.210**	1.207	1.203	1.200	1.196	1.193	0.00067
29.1	1.228	1.225	1.222	1.218	**1.215**	1.212	1.208	1.205	1.201	1.198	
29.8	1.233	1.230	1.227	1.223	**1.220**	1.217	1.213	1.210	1.206	1.203	
30.4	1.238	1.235	1.232	1.228	**1.225**	1.222	1.218	1.215	1.211	1.208	
31.0	1.244	1.241	1.237	1.234	**1.230**	1.226	1.223	1.219	1.216	1.212	0.00070
31.6	1.249	1.246	1.242	1.239	**1.235**	1.231	1.228	1.224	1.221	1.217	
32.2	1.254	1.251	1.247	1.244	**1.240**	1.236	1.233	1.229	1.226	1.222	
32.8	1.259	1.256	1.252	1.249	**1.245**	1.241	1.238	1.234	1.231	1.227	
33.4	1.264	1.261	1.257	1.254	**1.250**	1.246	1.243	1.239	1.236	1.232	
34.0	1.269	1.266	1.262	1.259	**1.255**	1.251	1.248	1.244	1.240	1.237	0.00071
34.6	1.274	1.271	1.267	1.264	**1.260**	1.256	1.253	1.249	1.245	1.242	
35.2	1.279	1.276	1.272	1.269	**1.265**	1.261	1.258	1.254	1.250	1.247	
35.8	1.284	1.281	1.277	1.274	**1.270**	1.266	1.263	1.259	1.255	1.252	
36.4	1.289	1.286	1.282	1.279	**1.275**	1.271	1.268	1.264	1.260	1.257	
37.0	1.294	1.291	1.287	1.284	**1.280**	1.276	1.273	1.269	1.265	1.261	0.00072
37.5	1.299	1.296	1.292	1.289	**1.285**	1.281	1.278	1.274	1.270	1.266	
38.1	1.304	1.301	1.297	1.294	**1.290**	1.286	1.283	1.284	1.275	1.271	
38.7	1.309	1.306	1.302	1.299	**1.295**	1.291	1.288	1.286	1.280	1.276	
39.3	1.314	1.311	1.307	1.304	**1.300**	1.296	1.293	1.289	1.285	1.281	

Conversion formula

$$\text{Specific gravity at } 20^\circ C\ (68^\circ F) = \text{Hydrometer reading} + \text{Temperature coefficient} \times \left(\text{Electrolyte temperature } (^\circ C) - 20^\circ C\right)$$

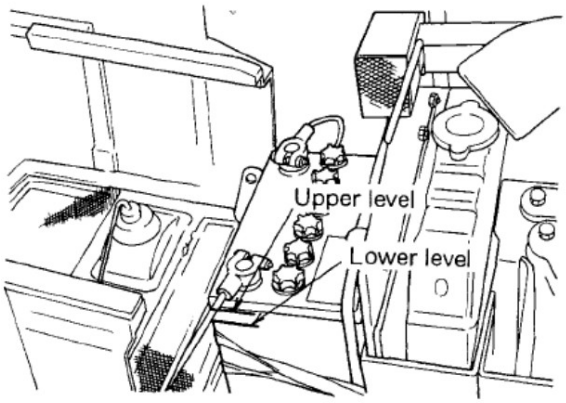
(4) Electrolyte (dilute sulfuric acid) specific gravity varies in relation to the discharge. Accordingly the remaining level of the battery is obtained by measuring the specific gravity.



It is required to adjust the electrolyte specific gravity of the battery to be 1.260 ±0.01 (20°C = 68°F).

Checking the electrolyte level

The battery case is made of transparent synthetic resin. The electrolyte level can be checked at a glance.



Other services

(1) Apply vaseline or grease to terminal posts.

(2) Always keep the top of the battery clean and dry. After refilling, tighten the plugs good and hard and wipe off spilled electrolyte. Once in a while, check to make sure that the cables are clean and tightly clamped to the terminals.

SAFE BATTERY HANDLING

(1) Battery electrolyte, sulfuric acid, is very corrosive and can destroy most things it touches.

- Be careful not to drip electrolyte on the tractor or on yourself; it will ruin the paint on the tractor or eat holes in your clothes.
- If you get electrolyte on your skin, flush it off at once with water. Continue to flush for at least 5 minutes. Put baking soda (if available) on the skin. This will neutralize the acid. If such a soda is not available, wash with soap and water.
- If you get electrolyte in your eyes, flush your eyes out with water, over and over again. Get to a doctor at once! Do not wait!
- A battery is unknown to children. Keep children away from a battery that is being charged. Store the battery out of their reach. There was a child who sucked electrolyte through a straw. This could happen again.

(2) Do not check the state of charge by placing a metal object across the terminals.

EMERGENCY STARTING
(Use of booster battery and jumper cables)

In emergency starting, particular care should be used when connecting a booster battery in order to prevent sparks. Following are the rules to be followed in jump starting:

(1) Shut down the engine.

(2) Connect the ends of RED jumper cable to the positive (+) terminal of each battery.

(3) Connect one end of BLACK jumper cable to the negative (−) terminal of the "good" battery. Then connect the other end of the cable to the engine block on the tractor being started (not to the negative (−) terminal of battery) as apart from the battery as possible.

(4) Start the engine of the tractor being started.

(5) Having made sure that the engine is idling, disconnect the cables by following the reverse of steps 2 and 3 above.

BATTERY DIAGNOSIS

External failures

Failure	Possible cause
Cracked case	• Excessively loose or tight hold-down clamps • Freezing • Oil or gasoline spilled over battery • Flying stones • Attacking of chemicals • Explosion due to clogged vent holes
Bulged case	• Abnormal temperature rise due to excessive charging current • Excessively tight hold-down clamps • High temperature • High voltage due to improper regulator setting
Corroded terminals and cable clamps	• Spilling of electrolyte due to high level • Passage of leak current • Buildup of corrosion around terminals
Burned terminals and clamps	• Excessive discharge current • Excessive resistance due to corrosion around terminals • Spark due to falling metal objects

Internal failures

Tester	Condition	Possible cause
Hydrometer	Electrolyte gravity low in all cells	• Undercharge due to defective charging system • Overdischarge due to excessive loads • Leakage, buildup of corrosion around terminals, or high electrolyte level
	Electrolyte gravity low in one or more cells (variation: more than 0.04)	• Impurities in electrolyte • Separators shorted or continuity between cells
	Electrolyte gravity high	• Low electrolyte level • Sulfuric acid was added where distilled water should have been poured in

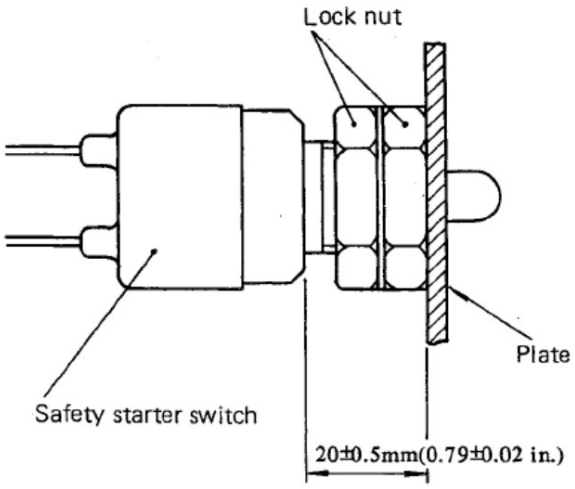
<table>
<tr><th>Tester</th><th colspan="4">Condition</th><th>Possible cause</th></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="2">Hydrometer</td><td colspan="4">No electrolyte</td><td>• Overcharge
• Electrolyte level low</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="4">Electrolyte gravity is normal, but battery will not deliver current</td><td>• Cable clamps loose on terminal posts
• Terminals and clamps burned</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="2">Battery tester</td><td colspan="4">GREEN zone (battery is normal)</td><td>• Cable clamps loose on terminal posts</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="4">YELLOW/RED zone</td><td>• Battery discharged. Cable clamps loose on terminal posts
• Battery dead
• Battery has aged</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="3">Hydrometer
Battery tester</td><td>Specific gravity / Battery tester</td><td>1.220, min (variation: 0.04, max)</td><td>1.220, max (variation: 0.04, max)</td><td>Variation: 0.04, min</td><td></td></tr>
<tr><td>GREEN</td><td>O.K. Use without charging</td><td>O.K. but recharge</td><td>Recharge to correct gravity
Re-test</td><td></td></tr>
<tr><td>YELLOW/RED</td><td>Dead?
Cable clamps loose on terminal posts or burned</td><td>Recharge
Re-test</td><td>Dead
Replace</td><td></td></tr>
</table>

SAFETY STARTER SWITCH

HOW IT WORKS

This switch is, as described previously, a safety means of preventing the tractor from accidentally jerking when the engine is started. Working as a "circuit breaker" for the circuit between the starter switch and starter motor, this safety switch is governed by the sub shift lever. It keeps the circuit open as long as the lever is being placed to "NEUTRAL" position, even if the starter switch (key) is turned to the start position; it closes the circuit when the switch is turned to the start position with the sub shift lever depressed placed to "High" or "Low" position. Thus, safe engine starting is assured for both operator and tractor.

ADJUSTMENT



What to be checked and adjusted for this switch is the interval from the plate to the switch end as shown in figure. This interval is specified to be 20 ± 0.5mm (0.79 ± 0.02 in.) as measured with the sub shift lever placed to "Neutral" position.

If not, adjust it to the specification by means of the lock nuts. Upon complection of adjustment, tighten the lock nuts good and hard, and test to be sure that the starter motor will not rotate when the sub shift lever is being placed to "Low" or "High" positions even if the starter switch is turned for cranking the engine. And then, make sure that the starter motor will rotate when placing the sub shift lever to "Neutral" position.

FUSE

A 15-ampere fuse is in a cylindrical holder located below the dash panel. When this fuse is blown, replace it with a new one of the specified amperage.

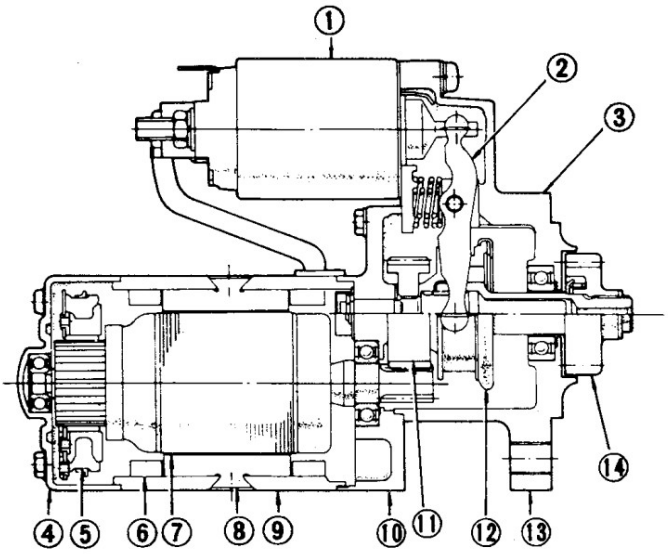
NOTE

Do not attempt to use a fuse of any amperage other than is specified (15 amperes).

STARTER

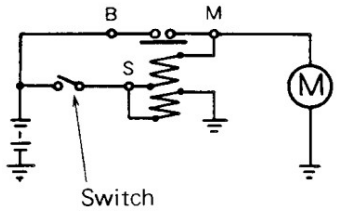
CONSTRUCTION

This starter, because of its built-in reduction gears, is called "internal reduction starter." The motor proper is compact in size and is capable of higher speeds for faster engine cranking.



1-Magnetic switch
2-Shift lever
3-Front bracket
4-Rear bracket
5-Brush
6-Field coil
7-Armature
8-Pole piece
9-Yoke
10-Center bracket
11-Reduction gears
12-Overrunning clutch
13-Front bracket
14-Drive pinion

Starter



Wiring diagram

Following are the design features of this starter entirely different from those of an ordinary starter:

- In an ordinary starter, drive pinion slides on and along motor (armature) shaft. In this starter, it slides on its shaft separated from the motor shaft.
- Armature rotation or drive is transmitted from motor shaft, through reduction gears, to pinion shaft.
- Pinion shift mechanism (Bendix drive) is totally enclosed to keep dirt out, lubricating grease in. This design minimizes pinion seizure due to hardened or deteriorated grease.
- Ends of motor shaft are supported by ball bearings (in "antifriction" fashion). This means far less friction to the shaft rotation than in an ordinary starter.

The pinion shift lever, magnetic switch, overrunning clutch and internal circuitry are basically the same as those of an ordinary starter.

The major functional parts of this starter are as follows:

- Motor: The source of drive
- Overrunning clutch: Is operated by shift lever to shift drive pinion into mesh with the flywheel ring gear. After the engine starts, it allows the pinion to spin independently of, or

"overrun," the armature (the motor).

- Reduction gears: Consist of large driven gear on the clutch (pinion) shaft and small drive gear on the armature (motor) shaft. The gear ratio between the two shafts provides a high cranking torque for starting.
- Magnetic switch: When the key of starter switch is to START position, the winding in this switch is connected to the battery; now, the magnetism is produced in it to pull shift lever actuating plunger. This closes the contacts in the switch to operate the motor. After the engine starts, and the driver takes his hand off the switch key, the key is spring-back to ON position. This opens the magnetic-switch winding circuit to move back the plunger and, at the same time, to open the contacts. Now, the starter circuit is opened, and the starter stops cranking.

TESTING THE STARTER ON THE TRACTOR

There are three basic starter troubles:

(a) The starter does not turn over.

(b) The starter turns over slowly, but the engine does not start.

(c) The starter turns over and cranks the engine at normal speed, but the engine does not start.

These troubles cannot necessarily be blamed on the starter. There is some problem in the switch or battery, or the engine, that prevents starting. Before removing the starter for repair, check to be sure that:

Starter circuit

(a) The battery is in good condition, with its cell plates showing no evidence of "sulfation" or any other faulty condition, and is fully charged.

(b) The battery cables are clean and tight on terminal posts.

(c) The starter terminal connections are tight.

(d) The wires are securely connected to terminals, and are free of any damage, there being no signs of grounding or breaking.

(e) The starter is properly grounded.

(f) The starter switch closes and opens the circuit positively at each position.

(g) The safety starter switch is in sound condition.

REMOVAL

(1) Open the bonnet, and remove the left-hand safety guard.

(2) Disconnect the battery cable from the negative (−) terminal of the battery.

(3) Disconnect the leads from the terminals "B" and "S" on the starter.

(4) Remove the starter by loosening its mounting bolts.

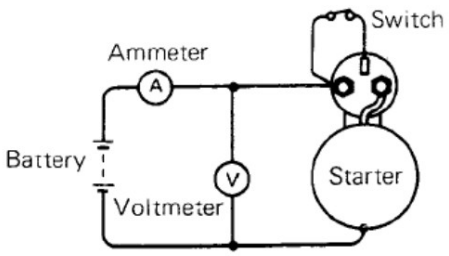
TESTING A REMOVED STARTER

No-load test

Connect the starter to the battery according to the test setup shown. Close the switch to run the starter in no-load condition to check the speed and current. The starter is in good condition if it runs smoothly and meets the following specifications at a battery voltage of 11.5 volts:

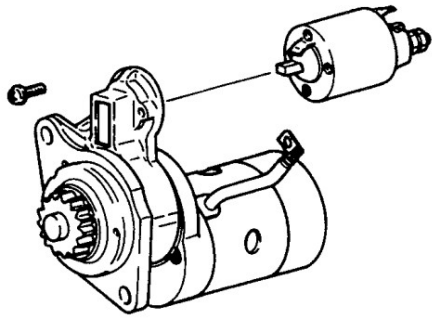
- Current .... 90 amperes, max.
- Speed ..... 3600 rpm, min.

If the starter is found defective in this test, disassemble it and check the motor parts as outlined in INSPECTION, which follows.



No-load test setup

INSPECTION



Magnetic switch removed from starter

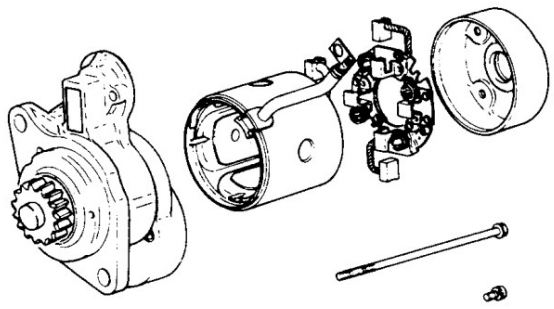
Brushes and brush holders

(1) Check each brush for wear. Replace a brush worn beyond the wear limit line. (See SPECIFICATIONS.)

(2) Check each brush spring for tension with the brush holder installed in place on commutator. Replace a spring weakened or fatigued beyond the service limit.

(3) Check for continuity across positive (+) side brush holder and holder base. Replace the brush holder assembly if any continuity is noted.

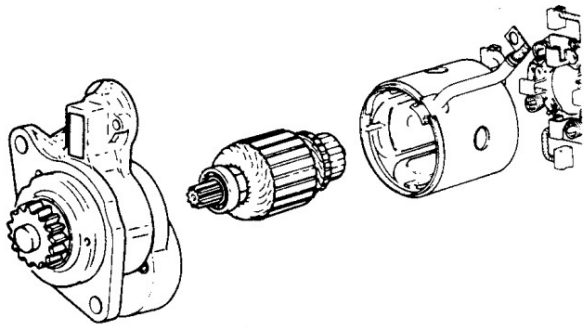
(4) Check each brush holder for installation.



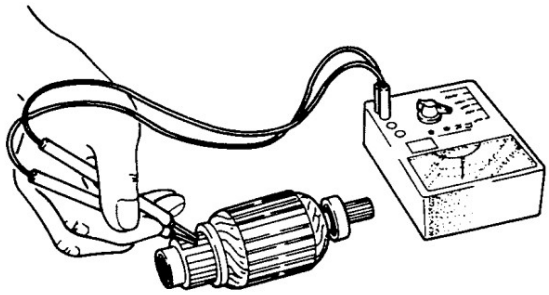
Brush assembly remove from motor

Armature

(1) Test the armature for short circuits on the growler. Also test for ground by placing one test point on the lamination and the other on the commutator. Replace a shorted or grounded armature.



Disassembled view of armature



Commutator inspection

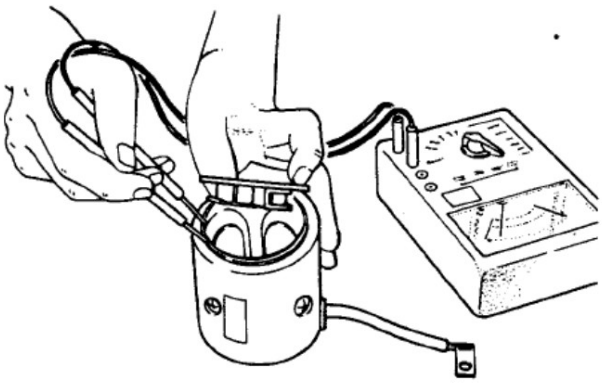
(2) Measure the commutator diameter and undercutting of commutator Repair it if the repair limit is reached. The commutator sometimes becomes covered with a film of dirt or gum. This can be cleaned off by polishing with No. 300 to 400 sandpaper.

Field coil

(1) Using a tester, check for continuity across both ends of the coil (brushes). If no continuity is noted, it is an indication that the coil is open-circuited. In such a case, replace the yoke assembly.

(2) Similarly check for continuity across connector and yoke. If continuity is noted, it is an indication that the coil is grounded; check for insulation and, if defective beyond repair, replace the yoke assembly.

(3) Check the pole shoes and coil for installation, making sure that they are installed securely.



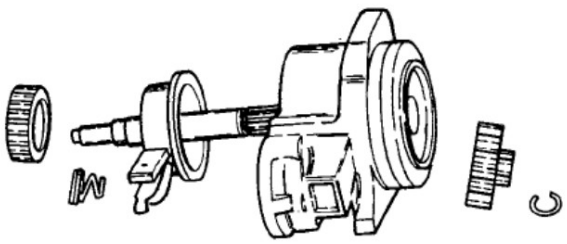
Field coil inspection

Magnetic switch

Check for continuity across the terminals "S" and "M" on one hand and across the terminal "S" and body on the other. Any continuity means that the switch is in sound condition.

Overrunning clutch

Check the drive pinion for badly worn or broken teeth. Replace the pinion if damaged.



Disassembled view of overrunning clutch

Reduction gears

Replace the gears if badly worn or damaged.

Front bracket

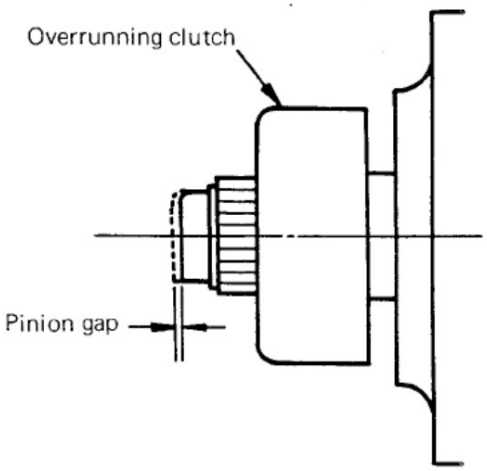
Check the ball bearing and bushing for wear. Replace the bracket assembly if any of them is badly worn.

Pinion gap

(1) Disconnect connector from terminal "M" on magnetic switch.

(2) Connect the starter to the battery (with the positive (+) cable of the battery connected to the terminal "S" of magnetic switch and the negative (–) terminal to the starter) to shift the drive pinion out. Under this condition, slightly push the pinion back toward the armature, and measure the gap.

If the gap is out of specification, increase or decrease the number of washers used between magnetic switch and front bracket to adjust it. Increase in the number of washers will decrease the gap, and vice versa.



Pinion gap inspection

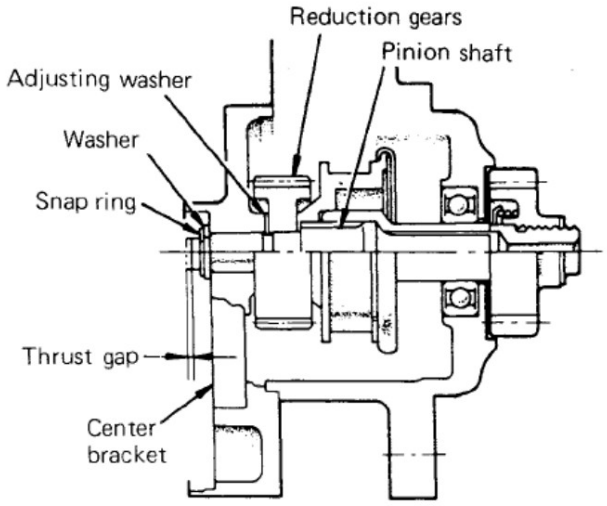
NOTE

a) In this test, never operate the starter for periods longer than 20 seconds to avoid overheating the switch coil.

b) Too large or too small a pinion gap may also be caused by improperly installed shift lever or defective magnetic switch. Check the lever and switch, too.

Pinion shaft

Check the shaft for thrust gap (axial play). The gap should be less than 5 mm (0.20 in.). If the gap is out of adjustment, put adjusting washer into between the center bracket and reduction gear.



Thrust gap (axial play) inspection

(1) To put adjusting washer with the pinion off pinion shaft, proceed as follows:

Place reduction gear on pinion shaft. Pass the shaft through center bracket and secure it in place with washer and snap ring. Move the shaft in axial direction to measure the gap. Adjust the gap by putting the washer.

(2) To put adjusting washer with the pinion on pinion shaft, proceed as follows:

Pass pinion shaft complete with reduction gear through front and center brackets. Tighten bolt and measure the gap by moving the shaft in axial direction. Adjust the gap by putting the washer.

NOTE

When measuring thrust gap with the pinion installed, be sure to remove lever spring.

Magnetic switch

(1) Pull-in action

Apply the battery voltage across the terminals "S" and "M" of the magnetic switch to see if the plunger gets pulled in to shift the pinion; if not, the pull-in coil is open-circuited or the overrunning clutch is defective.

(2) Hold action

With the battery voltage applied across the terminal "S" and the body of the switch, pull out the pinion by hand to the stopper. Release the pinion in this condition to see if the pinion moves back; if not, then the holding coil is in sound condition.

(3) Return action

With the battery voltage applied across the terminal "M" and the body of the switch, pull out the pinion by hand to the stopper. Release the pinion in this condition to see if the pinion moves back; if it does move back promptly, then the coil is in sound condition.

NOTE

In any test outlined above, never apply battery voltage for periods longer than 10 seconds.

INSTALLATION

(a) When installing the starter, clean the mounting flange of starter and the mounting seat on crankcase off oily substance, rust and other foreign matter.

(b) Even a starter which has been tuned up properly will not operate satisfactorily if leads or wires are not of the types or sizes called for, or if connections are poor. Be sure to use leads and wires of the types and sizes called for and tighten terminals good and hard.

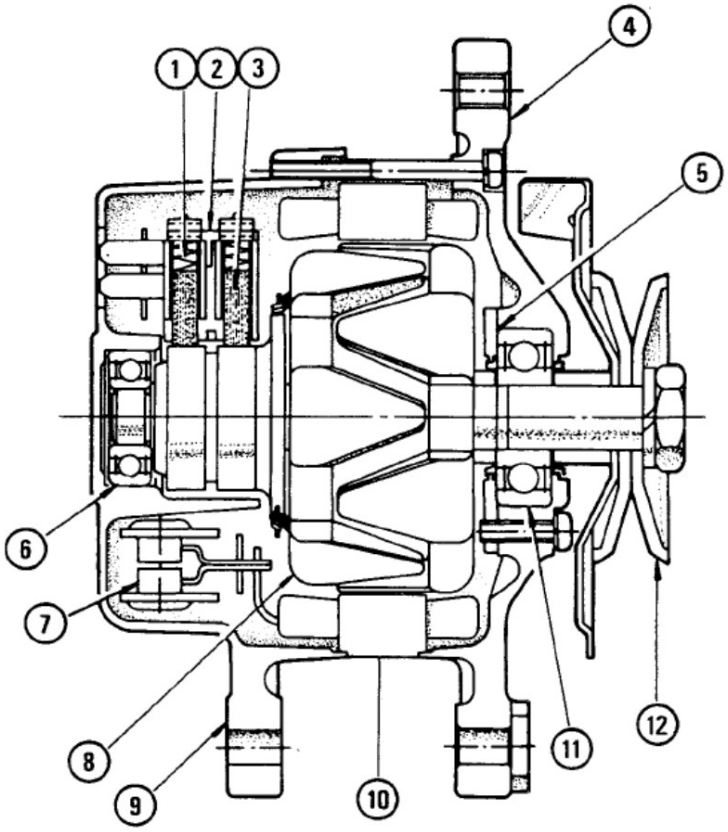
ALTERNATOR

CONSTRUCTION

The alternator consists essentially of a three-phase generator and a silicon-diode rectifier unit for converting the AC output of the generator into a DC power.

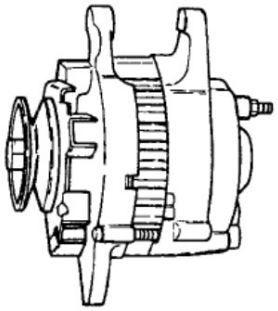
Referring to the longitudinal cross section, rotor assembly (8) is supported by ball bearings (6) (11), bearing (6) being fitted to rear bracket (9) and bearing (11) to front bracket (4). 6-diode rectifier (7) is mounted in a metal bracket called a "heat sink" which takes heat from the diodes during operation.

The rotor shaft carries two slip rings, on which brushes (3) are resting. Excitation current is supplied through the slip rings and brushes to the field coil. Pulley and fan assembly (12) is mounted on the extended portion of the rotor shaft.

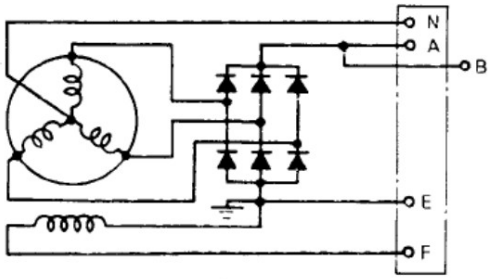


1-Brush spring	5-Bearing retainer	9-Rear bracket
2-Brush holder	6-Rear ball bearing	10-Stator
3-Brush	7-Diode rectifier	11-Front ball bearing
4-Front bracket	8-Rotor assembly	12-Pulley and fan assembly

Alternator — Sectional view



Alternator assembly



Alternator wiring diagram

REMOVAL

(1) Open the bonnet, and remove the left-hand safety guard.

(2) Disconnect the battery cable from the negative (–) of the battery.

(3) Disconnect leads from the terminals on the alternator.

(4) Remove the alternator by removing its mounting bolts.

TESTING AND ADJUSTMENT

NOTE

a) Never use a hign-voltage tester such as a megger; the use of such a tester will be the sure way of rupturing the diodes.

b) When the engine is running at high speed, do not attempt to undo the terminal "A" of the regulator. A sudden rise of the alternator output voltage will rupture the diodes.

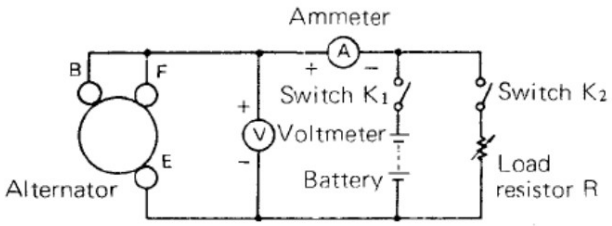
c) Never attempt to start the engine with the lead disconnected from the terminal "B" of the alternator; otherwise the voltage coil of the regulator will be damaged.

d) When charging the battery by means of a quick charger, be sure to disconnect the grounded–terminal cable clamp from the battery for protection of the diodes.

e) When using a steam cleaner, take care not to direct a blast of steam to the alternator.

Alternator output test

Take down the alternator and set it up on the test bench. Connect the battery (14 volts) to the alternator, with a voltmeter and an ammeter inserted as shown, to form a test setup.



Alternator output test setup

Couple the alternator to a variable-speed drive source capable of picking speed up to over 3000 rpm. Close switch K_1 : this energizes the alternator field. Start up the drive source and raise the alternator speed gradually until reverse current no longer flows in the field coil, that is, until the ammeter pointer indicates 0 (zero). When a zero-ampere (0 A) reading is obtained, open switch K_1 to allow the alternator field to draw excitation current from the armature.

With the alternator now running in self-excited condition, raise the speed until the voltmeter shows 14 volts and read the speed right then. If this speed is under 1300 rpm, the field circuit of the alternator is in sound condition.

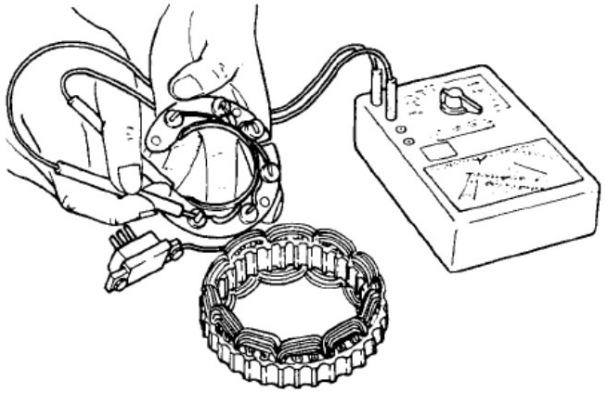
Set the load resistance for the highest resistance value (so that little or no load current would flow), and close switches K_1 and K_2 ; raise the speed gradually while slowly decreasing the setting of the load resistance to increase load current. Under this condition, bring the alternator to a state in which its output voltage (as read on the voltmeter) is 14 volts and the load current is 15 amperes. Read the speed right then; this speed should be under 2500 rpm.

The alternator is in good operating condition when it meets the two requirements stated above: self-exciting speed of 1300 rpm maximum and rated output speed of 2500 rpm maximum. These two are servicing standards.

Bench testing of rectifier diodes

The diodes should be checked for "open" and "short." What is meant by "open" is obvious enough. An "open" diode does not pass any current; its internal circuit is broken somewhere. A "shorted" circuit is that which has its junction ruptured or pierced so that it readily passes current in either direction and thus does not serve as an electronic check valve.

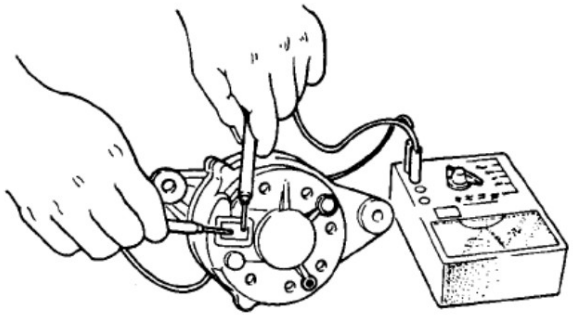
Of the six diodes, three are on the positive side (connected to output terminal A) of the rectifier and the remaining three on the negative side (connected to ground terminal E). The neutral point of the three windings (star-connected) of the alternator is connected to neutral terminal N.



Diode inspection

(1) Checking for "short"

Use a circuit tester and check the positive-side diodes for continuity in the two directions, normal and reverse, with the tester knob set in the ohmic zone. Put the plus (+) probe pin to terminal A and the minus (–) pin to terminal N: the tester should indicate continuity. Exchange the probe pins, putting positive pin to N and minus pin to A: the tester should indicate no continuity. The second trial is important; if continuity is noted, it means that one or more of the three positive-side diodes are ruptured. If this happens to be the case, remove the rectifier and check individual diodes.



"Short" inspection

NOTE

The circuit tester has a built-in battery. Turning its selector knob to the ohmic (resistance) zone connects the battery to the probe pins, making the positive (+) pin minus (–) and the negative (–) plus (+).

The three negative-side diodes of the rectifier can be checked similarly for "short." In this case, the probe pins are to be put to terminals N and E (as if N were terminal A and E were terminal N in the above check).

(2) Checking for "open"

Remove the rectifier and check each

diode individually. This check can be accomplished by checking it for continuity in normal direction.

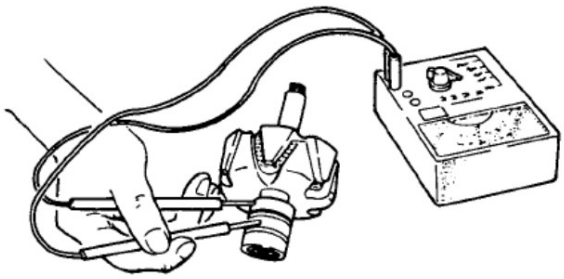
Checking the stator coils for condition

Disconnect the three leads of the stator coil from the rectifier and the neutral lead from terminal N. Check each winding for continuity by putting one probe pin to lead wire N and the other pin to each of the three leads.

Next, check the windings for ground by putting one probe pin to the core and the other pin to each of the three leads. There should be no evidence of continuity. If any continuity is noted, replace the stator.

Checking the field coil for condition

When the field coil is at normal temperature 20°C (68°F), it has an ohmic resistance of about 7.9 ohms as checked at the slip rings. Set the selector knob at the lowest range and put the probe pins to the slip rings. If a reading is much less than 7.9 ohms, it is likely that there is a short-circuit between coil turns; a much higher reading means that some part of the field circuit is nearly broken.



Field circuit inspection

INSTALLATION

NOTE

When connecting the alternator, regulator and battery, be sure to match the polarity signs. A failure to follow this precaution will cause large current to flow from the battery to the alternator, resulting in costly damage to diodes or other parts.

- Install the alternator on the left upper part of the gear case. Put distance piece into between the rear face of gear case and the rear bracket and insert shims so that there is no clearance between the case and bracket. Tighten the bolts on the case temporarily.
- Wrap the drive belt around each pulley and adjust its tension. Secure the alternator brace and tighten the bolts on the case good and hard.

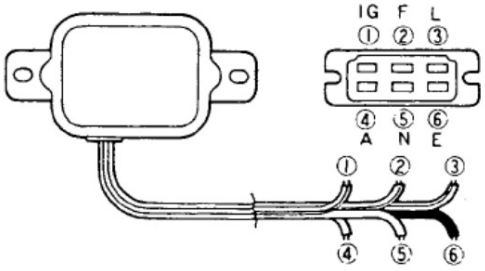
REGULATOR

HOW IT WORKS

The regulator is of two-element type consisting of a voltage relay and a pilot lamp relay. In the view of the regulator with its cover removed, note that the two relays look alike, each being composed of a coil wound around a core, a spring armature carrying a contact point, a frame for supporting the coil, armature and stationary contact points.

The voltage relay is a means of maintaining the alternator output voltage at constant level regardless of the alternator speed. In operation, it limits the alternator field current as necessary to prevent excess alternator voltage.

The pilot lamp relay has its coil connected to the terminal "N" and operates with half the output voltage of the rectifier to merely make or break the pilot lamp circuit. Going out of this lamp signifies that voltage is available from the alternator.



1-White/red lead
2-White/black lead
3-Yellow/white lead
4-White lead
5-Yellow lead
6-Black lead

Color identification of regulator leads

NOTE

When the regulator connector is replaced, adhere to the lead color identification to avoid misconnection.

TESTING AND ADJUSTMENT

NOTE

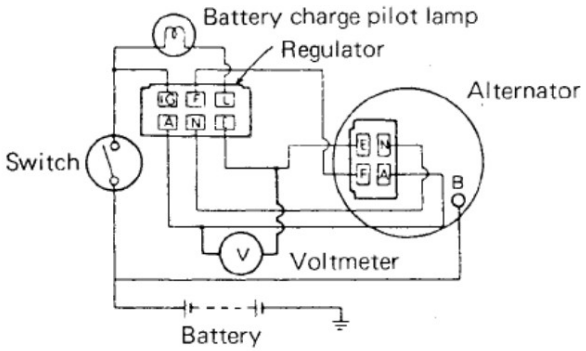
a) Do not connect the terminals "F" and "IG" the wrong way round; otherwise the wire harness or points will be burned.

b) When testing the regulator on the tractor, be sure to turn the starter (key) switch to OFF position and disconnect the lead from terminal "IG" to avoid burning the wire harness and points.

c) Do not break cachet of the regulator. This will release Satoh from any guarantee.

Testing for no-load regulated voltage

Have a voltmeter connected across terminals "A" and "E." Run the engine at idle speed and, while so operating the engine, disconnect the lead from terminal "B" to run the alternator in no load condition. Under this condition, increase the alternator speed up to 4000 rpm and check voltmeter indication. The regulator is in good condition if the voltage read on the voltmeter is 14 to 15 volts.



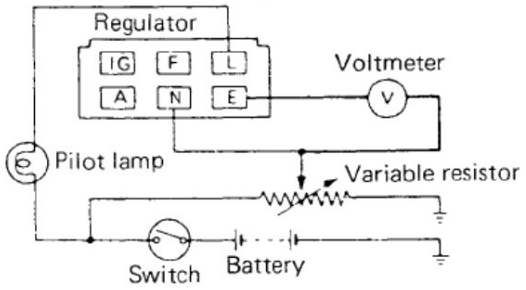
Regulator test setup

Testing for pilot lamp lighting voltage

(1) Connect the pilot lamp and regulator to the battery as shown, with the voltmeter, switch and variable resistor in between.

(2) With the pilot lamp lighted, gradually raise the voltage by changing the setting of the resistor to see if the lamp goes out at anywhere between 4.2 and 5.2 volts.

(3) Gradually lower the voltage to see if the lamp lights up at anywhere between 0.5 and 3.0 volts.



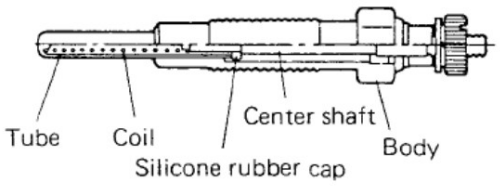
Regulator test setup for checking pilot lamp lighting voltage

Item	Standard
Pilot lamp goes out at	4.2 ~ 5.2V
Pilot lamp lights up at	0.5 ~ 3.0V

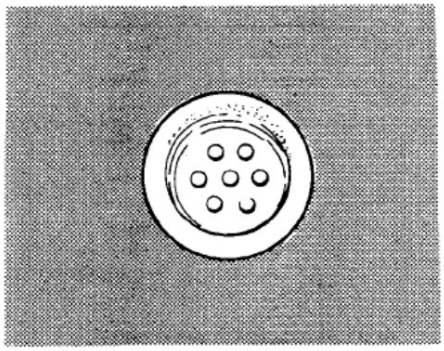
GLOW PLUGS AND GLOW PLUG INDICATOR

HOW THEY WORK

The glow plugs are of sheathed type and constructed as shown. The glow plug indicator simulates the operation (energization) of the plugs.



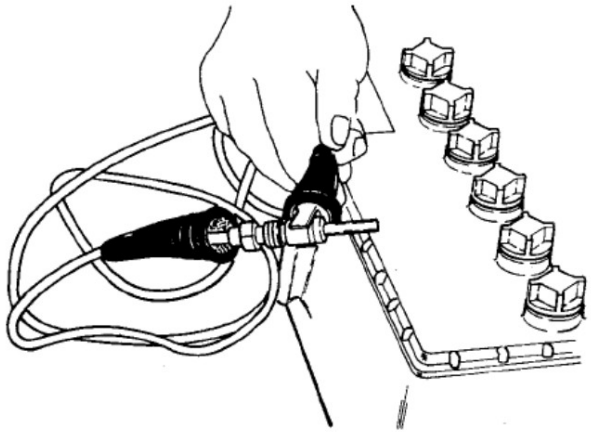
Glow plug



Glow plug indicator

TESTING

- Connect the positive (+) lead of the battery to the terminal of glow plug and the negative (–) lead to the body of the plug. The plug is in good condition if it glows red when it is so connected to the battery.
- The glow plug indicator should glow red within 25 seconds. If it will not glow within 25 seconds, it is an indication that any one of three glow plugs (within the engine) is shorted.



Glow plug inspection

SOLENOID SWITCH

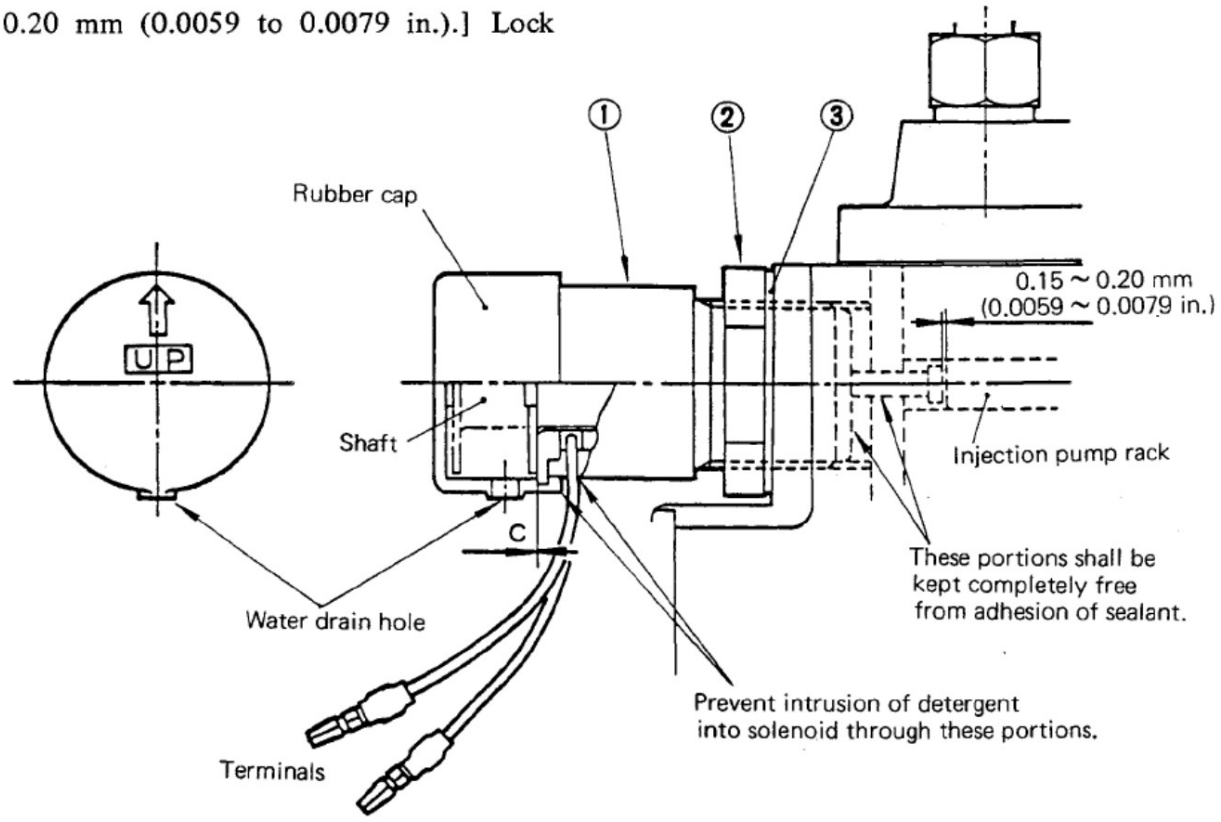
(1) Temporarily install the solenoid (1), nut (2) and gasket (3) to the crankcase. (Coat the effective thread portion of the solenoid with sealant, Three-Bond 1212 or 1211.)

(2) Turn in the solenoid so that clearance "C" becomes zero at the injection pump rack position "zero."

(3) Turn back the solenoid 30° to 45°. [The rack to shaft clearance will become 0.15 to 0.20 mm (0.0059 to 0.0079 in.).] Lock the solenoid at that position with the nut. [Nut tightening torque: about 5 kg-m (36.2 ft-lb)]

(4) Confirm that MS is reset securely when the shaft is pushed fully.

(5) Finally, install the rubber cap with its arrow mark facing upward. (The water drain hole comes to the bottom of the cap.)



Installing solenoid switch

CAUTION

Be sure to prevent intrusion of detergent into the solenoid terminals and the inside of solenoid (cord and shaft).

ENGINE STOP SYSTEM

This system uses a solenoid switch which acts, when the engine starting switch key is turned to OFF, on the fuel injection pump control rack to push it to the "non-injection" position to stop the engine.

Combinations of switch positions

State of engine	Key switch	Oil pressure switch	Electro-magnetic solenoid	Fuel injection pump control rack	Function
Start	ON	ON	ON	STOP	MS resetting
	START	OFF	OFF	MS	Automatic increase of fuel injection quantity for engine start
Running	ON	OFF	OFF	(SS)	Nomal operation
	ON	ON	ON	STOP	Emergency stop caused by an lowering of oil pressure
	OFF	OFF	ON	STOP	Stopping the engine with key switch turned to OFF

Function

(1) MS resetting

When starting the engine, turning the key switch to ON will close a circuit through which current flows to the oil pressure switch. This will cause transistors Tr5 and Tr4 to become conductive, thus allowing current to flow from terminal B of the key switch to transistors Tr3, Tr2 and Tr1. As the solenoid is excited, the control rack of fuel injection pump is placed in the MS reset position.

(2) Automatic increase of fuel injection quantity for engine start

When the engine starting key switch is turned to START, a short-circuit current will flow to the condenser C1 from ST terminal of the switch. Since the timer function is accelerated, the action of the solenoid will be terminated instantaneously and the fuel injection pump control rack will be set to the MS position automatically.

(3) Normal engine operation

After the engine starts, increase of oil pressure will turn the oil pressure switch to OFF, thus opening the oil pressure switch circuit. Transistors Tr5 and Tr4 will become non-conductive (no current flows from the key switch terminal B to the transistors Tr3, Tr2 and Tr1), thus preventing the solenoid from acting.

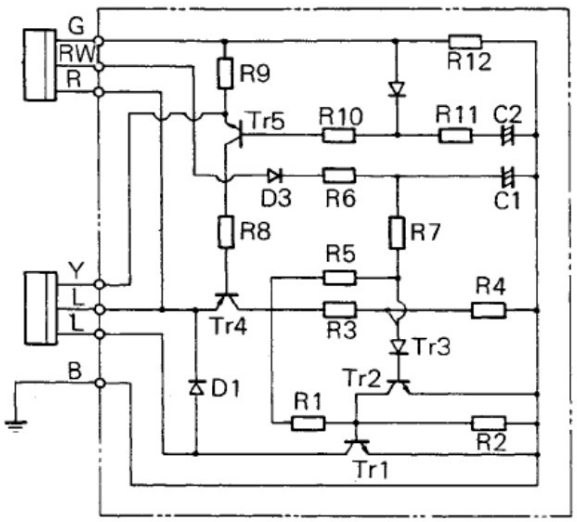
(4) Stopping the engine with key switch turned to OFF

When the key switch is turned to OFF, discharge current of the condenser C2 which has been charged during engine operation will make the transistors Tr5 and Tr4 conductive. Resulting current flow from terminal B of the key switch to the transistors Tr3, Tr2 and Tr1 will excite the solenoid to stop the engine.

(5) Emergency stop caused by an excessive lowering of oil pressure

If oil pressure lowers excessively during engine operation, the oil pressure switch will be turned on to close a circuit through which current flows from terminal B of the key switch to the transistors Tr3, Tr2 and Tr1. As the result, the solenoid will be excited to stop the engine.

After the engine stopped, all transistors are kept in non-conductive condition and no current flows in the timer circuit.



Reference: Tr1 - Tr4 Transistors
D1 - D3 Diodes
C1 - C2 Condensers
R1 - R12 Resistors

Control timer circuit diagram

Checking the system for proper operation

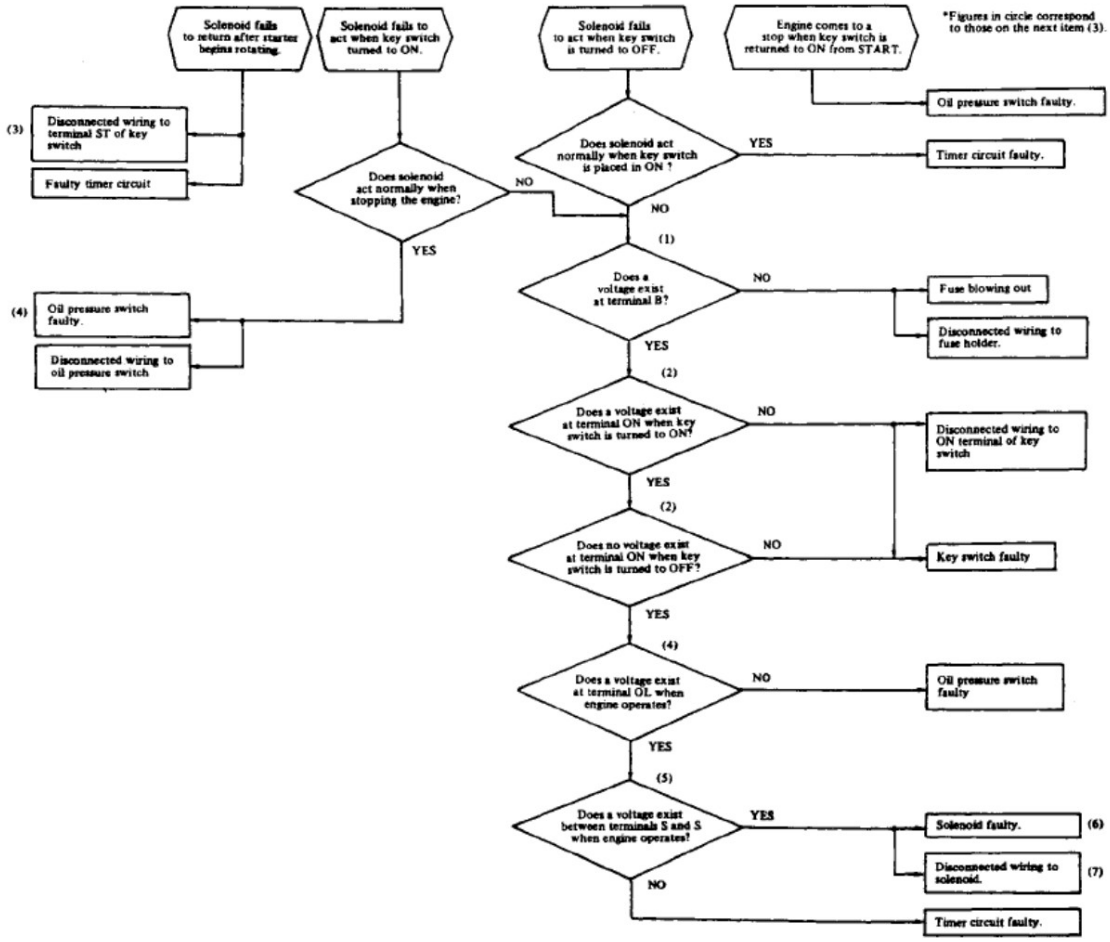
(1) Make the wiring of this system in accordance to with the wiring diagram.

(2) Remove the tie-rod cover to give access to the fuel injection pump control rack. Turn the starting switch key to ON and check to see that the solenoid comes into action, causing the control rack to move accurately to the MS resetting position.

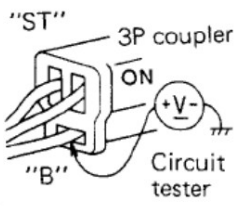
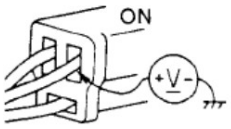
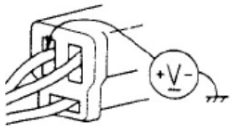
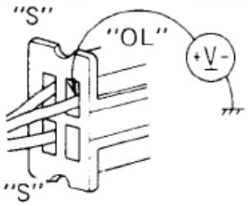
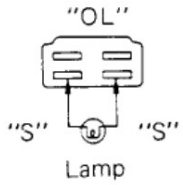
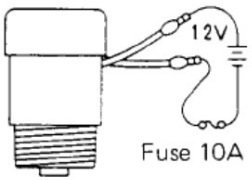
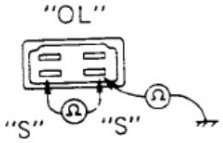
(3) Turn the starting switch key to OFF and reinstall the tie-rod cover. Turn the key from OFF to START, through the ON position, and confirm that the solenoid comes into action at the ON position and the action stops at the START position.

Troubleshooting

If the system becomes malfunctional, find out the cause of trouble using the diagnostic chart below.



TESTING PROCEDURES

No.	Check item	Sketch	Criterion	Testing tool	Testing procedure
1	Voltage at terminal B (Lead wire: red)		Approx. 12V DC	Circuit tester	Connect voltmeter to terminal B of 3P coupler.
2	Voltage at terminal ON (Lead wire: green)		ON: Approx. 12V DC OFF: 0V	Circuit tester	(1) Connect voltmeter to terminal ON of 3P coupler. (2) Read voltmeter each time when key switch is turned to ON and OFF.
3	Voltage at terminal ST (Lead wire: red/white)		ON: Approx 12V DC OFF: 0V	Circuit tester	(1) Connect voltmeter to terminal ST of 3P coupler. (2) Read voltmeter each time when starter is rotated and stopped.
4	Voltage at terminal OL (Lead wire: yellow)		When stopped: 0V When operated: Approx. 12V	Circuit tester	(1) Connect voltmeter to terminal OL of 4P coupler. (2) Read voltmeter each time when engine is stopped and operated.
5	Output of solenoid (Lead wire: blue)		Lamp lights for 7 to 15 seconds	A lamp of 3W or lower rating	(1) Remove 4P coupler and connect lamp between terminals S and S. Keep terminal OL free from connection. (2) Turn key switch to ON and, after waiting for a few seconds, turn the switch to OFF. Lamp will go on and maintain lighting for 7 to 15 seconds.
6.	Action of solenoid		It is normal if plunger of solenoid is attracted..	Battery Fuse (10A)	Connect a battery to solenoid terminals and check for normal movement of plunger. Test should not be continued for more than 10 seconds.
7	Wiring to solenoid (Lead wire: blue)		Approx. 1.7Ω Resistance to body: ∞	Circuit tester	(1) Remove 4P coupler and connect ohmmeter to terminals S and S to read resistance between terminals. Be sure to remove coupler without fail. (2) Measure resistance between ground and each terminals with ohmmeter.

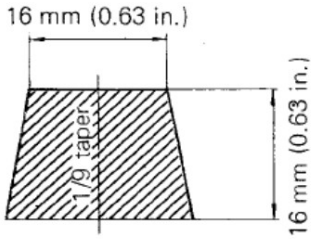
The following parts are not to be repaired for reuse; they should be replaced as an assembly:

(1) Tractor meter
(2) Fuel gauge
(3) Starter switch
(4) Engine ON-OFF solenoid
(5) Water temperature gauge unit
(6) Oil pressure switch
(7) Flasher unit
(8) Glow plug indicator
(9) Combination flasher/turn signal switch
(10) Lighting switch
(11) Safety starter switch
(12) Control timer unit

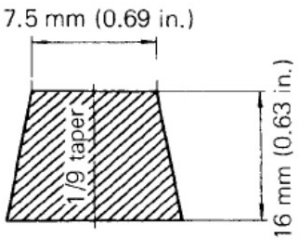
SPECIFICATIONS

Starter	Type			Magnetic shift
	Model			Mitsubishi M002T50371
	Output – voltage		kW – V	1.6 – 12
	Direction of rotation			Clockwise as viewed from drive pinion side
	No-load characteristics	Terminal voltage	V	11.5
		Current	A	90, max.
		Speed	rpm	3600, min.
	Brush length		mm (in.)	17 (0.67) [wear limit: 11.5 (0.45)]
	Brush spring tension		kg (lb)	1.5 (3.3) [service limit: 0.7 (1.5)]
	Pinion gap		mm (in.)	0.5 ~ 2.0 (0.02 ~ 0.08)
	Thrust gap (pinion shift)			0.5 (0.02), max.
Alternator	Type			Three-phase, with built-in silicon-diode rectifier
	Model			Mitsubishi AH2053M4
	Output – current		V – A	12 – 35
	Direction of rotation			Clockwise as viewed from pulley side
	No-load characteristics	Terminal voltage	V	14
		Current	A	0
		Speed	rpm	1100, max.
	Load characteristic	Voltage – current	V – A	14 – 30, min.
		Speed	rpm	2500
Regulator	Type			Tirrill, two-element
	Model			Mitsubishi RQB2220D1
	Regulated voltage		V	14.8
	Pilot lamp switch opening voltage			4.2 ~ 5.2
	Pilot lamp switch closing voltage			0.5 ~ 3.0
Glow plugs	Type			Sheathed
	Voltage – current		V – A	10.5 – 30
	Resistance		Ω	1 ~ 1.2
Glow plug indicator	Type			Red heat
	Rated current		A	30
	Voltage across terminals		V	0.9 ~ 1.1 (at 30A)

Battery	Model and type		NX100–S6L (S)
	Capacity	V ~ Ah	12 ~ 45
	Dimensions (length X width X height)	mm (in.)	238 x 129 x 203 (9.37 x 5.08 x 8)
	Weight	kg (lb)	14 (30.9) including electrolyte
	Electrolyte capacity	liter (qt)	2.8 (3)
	Standard specific gravity of electrolyte		1.260 ± 0.010 at 20°C (68°F)
	Size of terminals		



Negative: 1/9 tapered



Positive: 1/9 tapered

CHAPTER 9
OTHERS

REMARQUES

TABLE OF CONTENTS

REMARQUES

MITSUBISHI ROTARY TILLER (Model 2PR-1110S)

DESCRIPTION

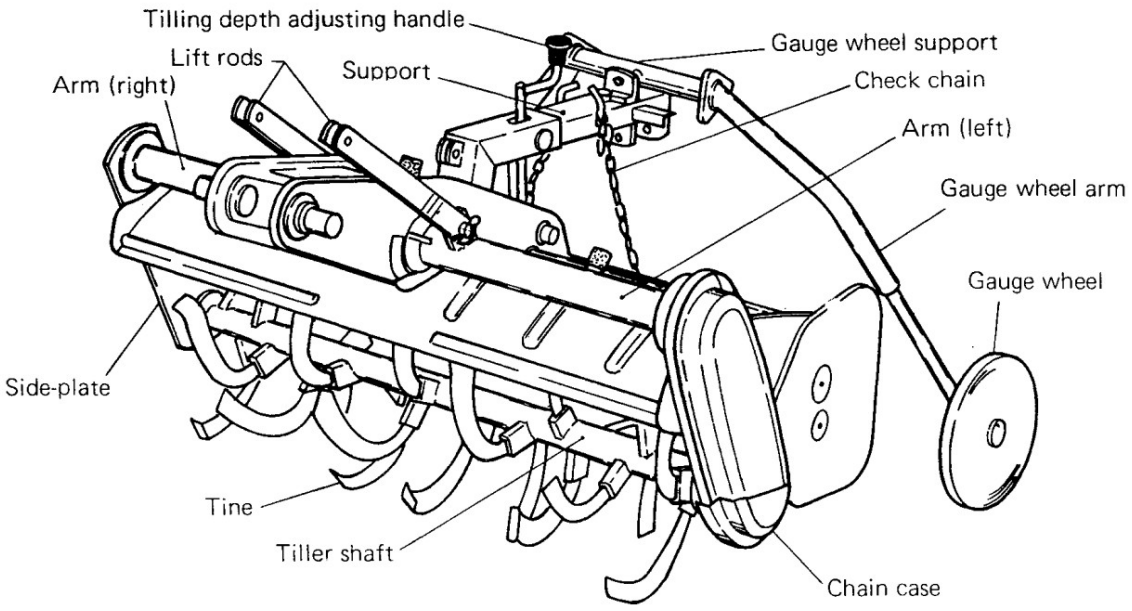
NOTE

This rotary tiller is for MT160/D, MT180/D and MT180H/HD.

Model 2PR-1110S is a high-performance rotary tiller of side-chain-drive type, built compact, light in weight, and durable. It is designed for MITSUBISHI Tractor with the best of what MITSUBISHI has gained in engineering and manufacturing know-how through long years of research and manufacture in the area of farm implements and power machines.

In the 2PR-1110S, as in other MITSUBISHI-made machines, choice materials are used, with each part worked and machined under strict quality control in the MITSUBISHI plant equipped with modern production tools and facilities. Each tiller unit receives close and detailed attention while it is being built, and comes out of the production line to get inspected individually.

- The tiller is easy to hitch to and unhitch from MITSUBISHI tractor: a special bracket mechanism for hitching is used. It is well balanced with the tractor: an ample ground clearance is preserved.
- Tilling width is so large as 1100 mm (43.3 in.), and is covered by so many tines as 28.
- Drive is taken from the tractor's PTO to the side-chain through reduction gearing.
  PTO speeds are matched to the travel speeds of the tractor to ensure the high-performance rotary plowing and other tillage operations.
- Tine mounting holders are angled backward relative to the tiller shaft in order to smoothen the plowing action and to prevent the tiller from getting fouled up with tangling stalks.
- The tines, made of high-grade durability material, are designed for effective plowing in all types of soil with a high degree of efficiency under a wide range of soil conditions, and to make maximized use of drive taken from the PTO.
- Tilling depth can be freely adjusted with a handle by the operator at the wheel.
- Optional equipment is available: The ridger for making ridges, and the puddling rotor which replaces the tiller shaft and others to condition rice paddies prior to rice transplanting.



2PR-1110S side-drive rotary tiller

Compact and light in weight, the 2PR-1110S rotary tiller is designed for bracket hitching to the tractor. Because of the special bracket mechanism, it takes no more than just one person to connect it to and disconnect it from the tractor. All one has to do is just to push the shafts (mounted on the tiller frames) into the "U"-shaped part of the hitching bracket installed on the rear side of the transmission case of the tractor, fit sleeves and then set the shafts by pinning.

Vertical positioning of the tiller is accomplished hydraulically, that is, by utilizing the hydraulic pressure available from the tractor. Controls for this positioning are the two lift rods, right and left.

Drive from the tractor PTO flows into the tiller through the universal joint and gearbox. The spiral bevel gearing of this gear box changes the direction of drive flow in order to transmit drive to the chain inside the chain case attached to the left side of the tiller. The chain drives the tiller shaft to thrust its tines into soil to plow in a turning up and crushing manner. The rear cover serves the purpose of leveling.

The frames, right and left, have hitching pins at the forward end. To the middle parts of these frames are connected the lift rods for raising or lowering the tiller. The support, which carries the gauge wheels and tilling depth adjusting handle, is pinned to the rear parts of these frames.

The tilling depth adjusting mechanism is a crank handle having screw threads. It is by turning this handle that the gauge wheels are raised or lowered for the depth adjustment.

The center cover above the universal joint is a safety guard. Safety features are provided at places of danger to prevent personal injuries. Rotating parts are protected against rain and dust for improved durability.

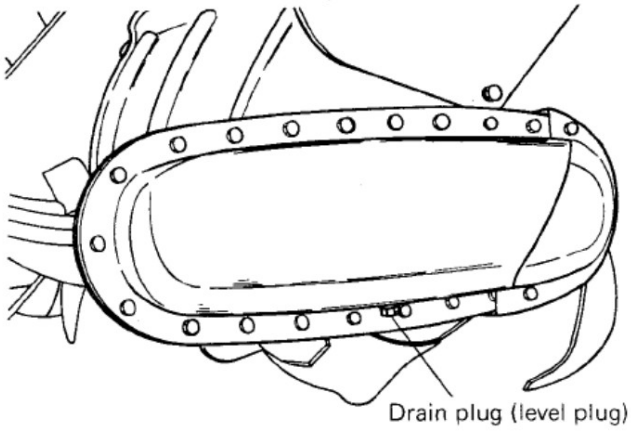
Provisions are made in the rear portion of the support to allow the ridger (optional) to be hitched to it. The tiller shaft, to which tines are secured, is simple in construction and can be easily removed. The puddling rotor or similar optional attachment available for MITSUBISHI tractors (MT160/D, MT180/D and MT180H/HD) can be substituted for the tiller shaft assembly.

DISASSEMBLY

Disassembling the tiller

Prior to disassembly, the tiller must be cleaned by washing with water: never attempt to disassemble the tiller in dirty condition.

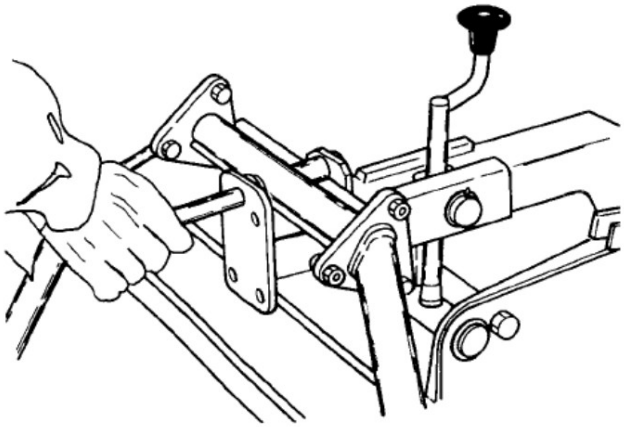
(1) With the tiller hitched in the normal manner to the tractor, remove drain plug on chain case to drain out the oil. Unhitch the tiller from the tractor.



Chain case drain plug

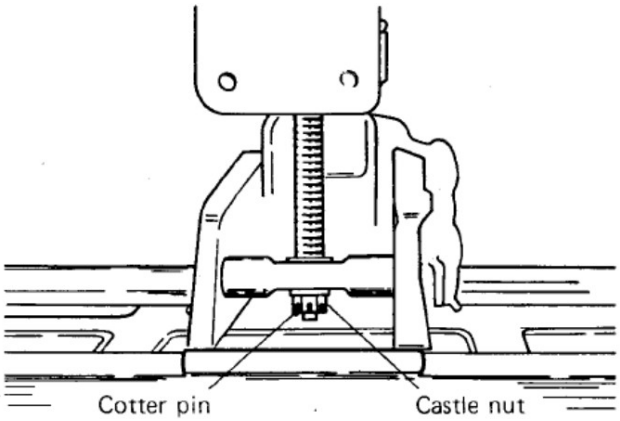
(2) Remove drain plug on gearbox, and drain out the oil.

(3) Pull off set pin on gauge wheel support, and take out the gauge wheel assembly.



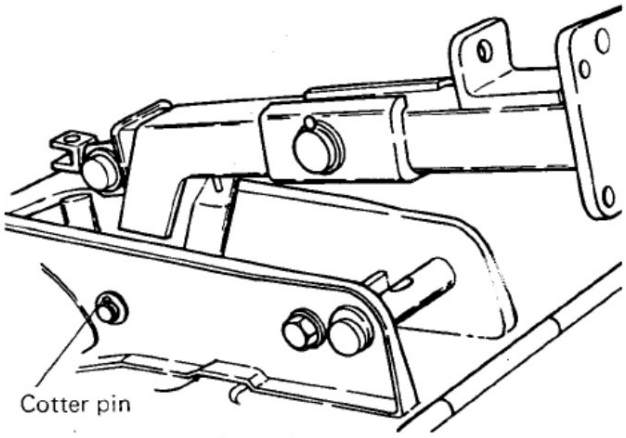
Removing gauge wheel assembly

(4) Pull cotter pin off the castle nut on the end of depth adjusting handle, and remove the nut.



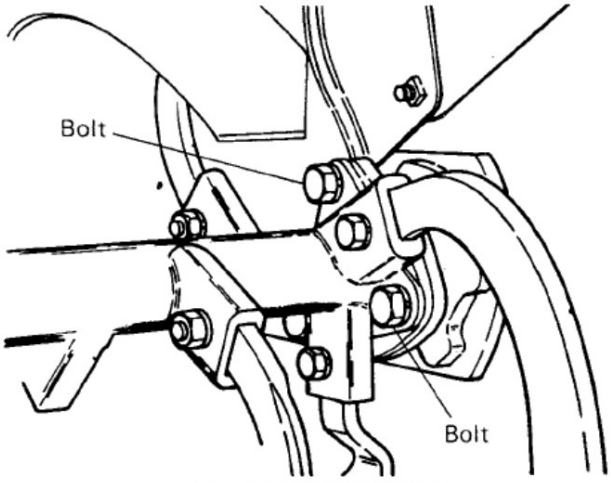
Removing castle nut

(5) Pull cotter pin off the shaft, on which the support and frames pivot, and draw out the shaft while holding the support. The support can now be taken out.



Removing support

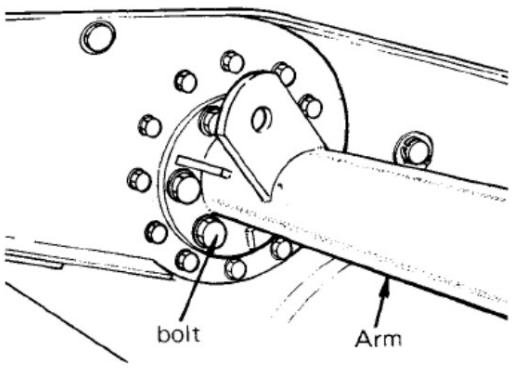
(6) Remove rotary pipe: this is accomplished by removing the bolts, right and left, securing the rotary pipe.



Bolts securing rotary pipe

(7) Remove bolts securing covers to frames, chain case and side-plate and take down the covers.

(8) Loosen bolts securing frames, right and left, to gearbox, and remove the frames. The bolts have been coated with "thread-lock."



Frame securing bolts

(9) Remove bolts securing chain case cover, and take off the cover.

(10) Pull cotter pin off tension spring, and remove the spring.

(11) Pick out circlip at the left end of drive shaft. Straighten tab portion of sleeve nut on rotary shaft, loosen sleeve nut, and remove the upper and lower sprockets, complete with the chain.

(12) Remove bolts securing left-hand arm to chain case, and detach the case. Draw out ball bearing supporting drive shaft.

(13) Remove bolts securing right-hand arm to sub-frame, and detach the side-plate.

NOTE

This step should be omitted unless sub-frame or right-hand arm has to be replaced.

(14) Remove bolts securing arms, right- and left-hand, to gearbox, and remove left-hand arm.

(15) After picking out circlip at right end of drive shaft, draw out drive shaft and left-hand arm from gearbox: the shaft has to be driven out of the box by delivering blows to its right-hand end. Take out bevel gear.

(16) Remove bolts securing gearbox to pinion bearing case, and take out the case. Be sure to cover the liners.

Disassembling the pinion bearing case

Remove rubber cap; straighten tab portion of sleeve nut loosen sleeve unit; and take out pinion gear. As necessary, remove oil seal, ball bearing and tapered roller bearings.

Disassembling the rotary shafts

These shafts can be disassembled in place, with the tiller hitched in the normal manner to the tractor.

(1) Remove rotary pipe and chain case cover. Remove sprockets, complete with chain, and draw out left-hand rotary shaft. It may be necessary to tap but lightly on the shaft so that it will come out. Ball bearing and oil seal need not be removed unless they have to be replaced.

(2) Remove bolts securing the bearing holder to the side-plate, take out the bearing holder. After picking out circlip on right-hand rotary shaft, draw out right-hand rotary shaft.

REMOVAL

Removing the gauge wheels

Remove seal caps. Pick out circlips. This allows the gauge wheels to be removed.

INSPECTION

(1) Inspect the roller chain surfaces. If the surfaces are badly pitted or if the chain as a whole is distorted excessively or if the bushings are cracked, replace the chain.

(2) Inspect oil seal for wear. Check each ball bearing for smoothness of rotation, wear and damage.

REASSEMBLY

Reassembling the tiller

(1) Wash all parts clean with a washing fluid. Inspect each cleaned part for wear, damage or any other malcondition and repair or replace it if necessary. Be sure that all parts to be used in reassembly are in satisfactory condition.

(2) The oil seals, "O" rings, gaskets, circlips and cotter pins that were removed in disassembly should be replaced unless they are in perfectly good condition. It is a good practice to use new oil seals, gaskets, circlips and pins.

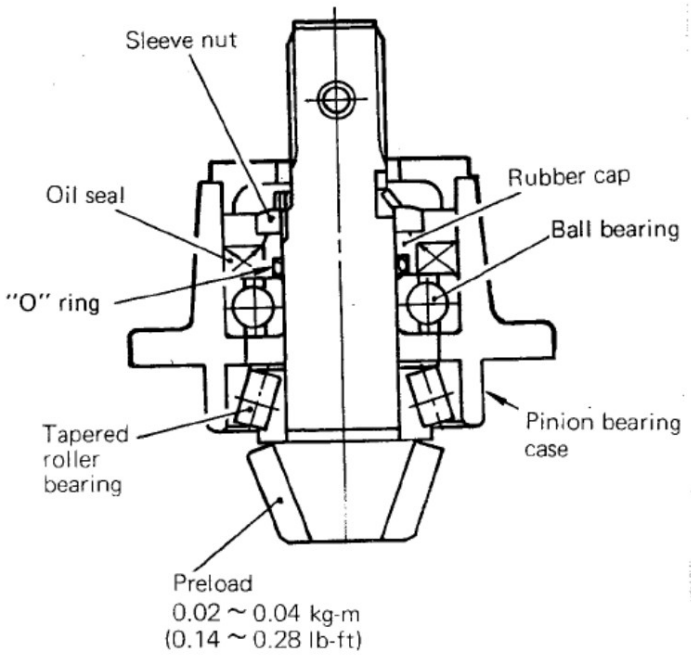
(3) Be sure that each ball bearing is capable of smooth rotation, without evidence of rattle or brinelling.

(4) Rubber parts should be inspected for deterioration, that is, for cracks, swelling, etc., and replace them as necessary.

(5) Distorted or bowed rotary shafts must be repaired or replaced.

(6) During disassembly, surfaces in sliding or rotary contact must be oiled or greased. When positioning each part in place, be sure that the dimensional specification, if any, is met.

Reassembling the pinion gear case



(1) Mount tapered roller bearing on pinion shaft. Be sure to position the bearing correctly, discriminating its inner end from outer end.

(2) Fit the ball bearing to pinion bearing case.

(3) Insert pinion shaft, complete with ball bearing into the pinion bearing case, giving a push to the bearing.

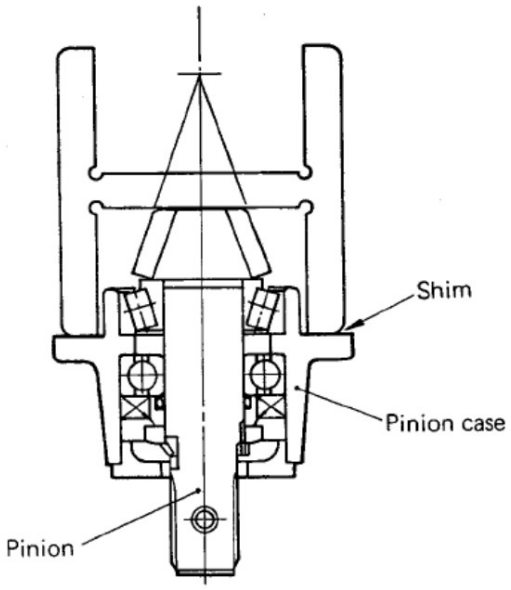
(4) Position oil seal bushing and push in greased oil seal. Secure the oil seal in place by tightening sleeve nut.

Preload	0.02 ~ 0.04 kg-m (0.14 ~ 0.28 ft-lb)

(5) With the bearings properly preloaded, lock the sleeve nut by bending tab portion of sleeve nut sharply.

(6) Select the liner that will give 75 ± 0.5 mm (2.95 ± 0.002 in.) to the cone center of pinion shaft, as measured by using the special tool.

Pinion shaft cone center	75 ± 0.05 mm (2.953 ± 0.002 in.)



Checking cone center

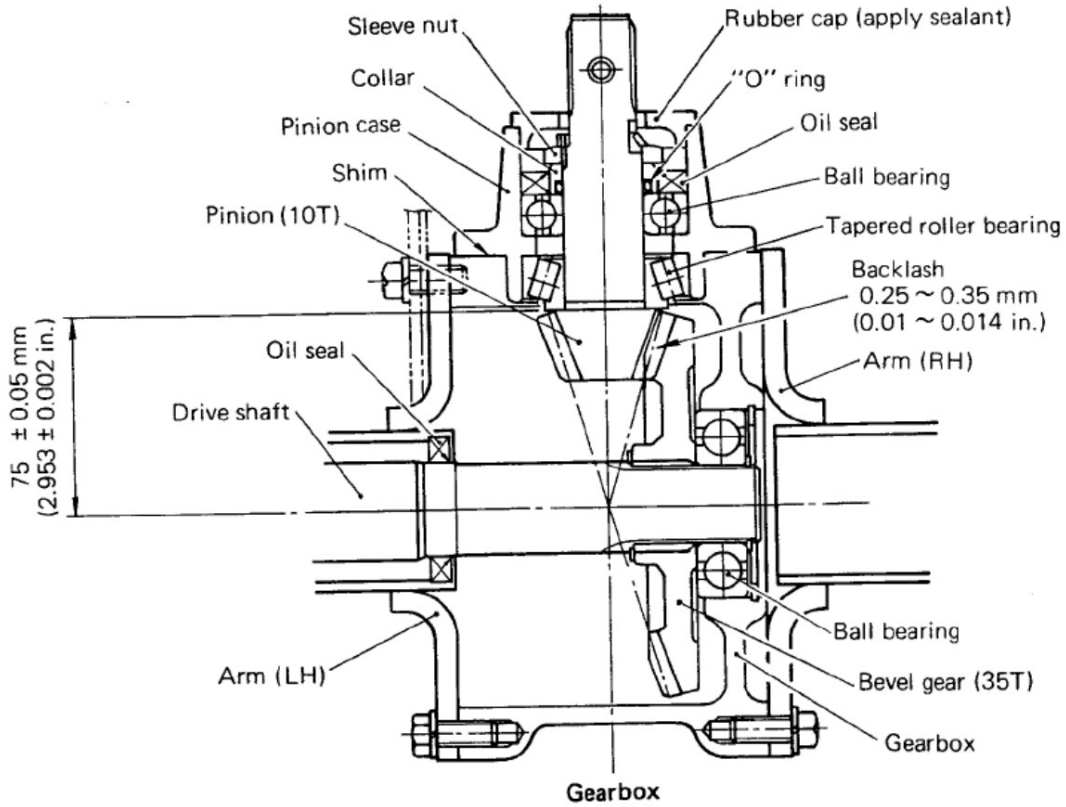
Rest the special tool on the pinion gear, and measure the clearance between forward end of special tool and the face of pinion bearing case, as shown. Select a liner whose thickness is equal to the clearance reading just taken. Insert this liner between the pinion bearing case and the gearbox when fitting the former to the box.

Liner stock is available in these thicknesses:

Thickness	Part No.
0.1 mm (0.004 in.)	1136 3011 000
0.2 mm (0.008 in.)	1136 3012 000
0.4 mm (0.016 in.)	1136 3013 000

Tightening torque for pinion gear case	4.0 ~ 4.6 kg-m (29 ~ 33 ft-lb)

Reassembling the gearbox



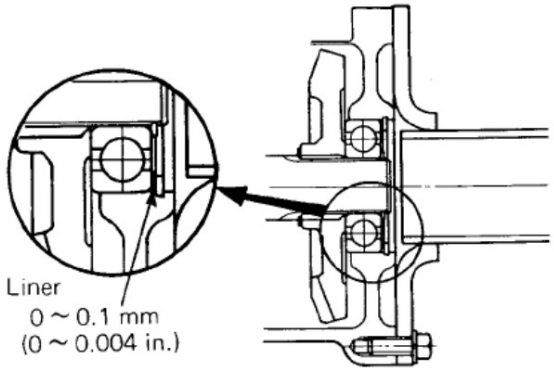
Gearbox

(1) After fitting circlip, insert drive shaft into the left side of gearbox. And bevel gear to the shaft. From the right side, fit the other ball bearing to the shaft.

(2) For the right side, insert a liner at right side of ball bearing and fit circlip tentatively. This liner is a tentative one.

(3) Check the backlash of bevel gear in place. On the basis of backlash reading, select the liner that will produce a backlash of anywhere between 0.25 and 0.35 mm (0.01 and 0.014 in.), and replace the tentative inserted liner by this liner.

Bevel gear backlash	0.25 ~ 0.35 mm (0.01 ~ 0.014 in.)



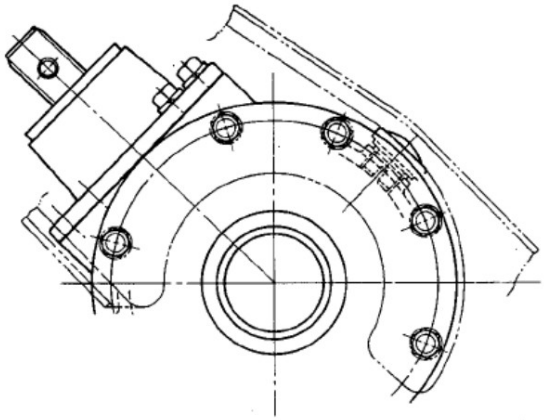
Liner stock for this adjustment is available in the following thicknesses:

Thickness	Part No.
0.2 mm (0.008 in)	69582-00711
0.3 mm (0.012 in)	69582-00712
0.5 mm (0.02 in)	69582-00713

(4) Having determined the liner to be used, fit greased oil seal to left-hand arm. Coat its flange face with sealant, and secure the arm to gearbox.

(5) Put left-hand arm to gearbox so that oil feed pipe is located as shown below, and secure the arm in place with bolts and reamer bolts.

Tightening torque	5.0 ~ 6.0 kg-m (36 ~ 43 ft-lb)



(6) Coat the face of right-hand arm flange with sealant, and secure it to gearbox.

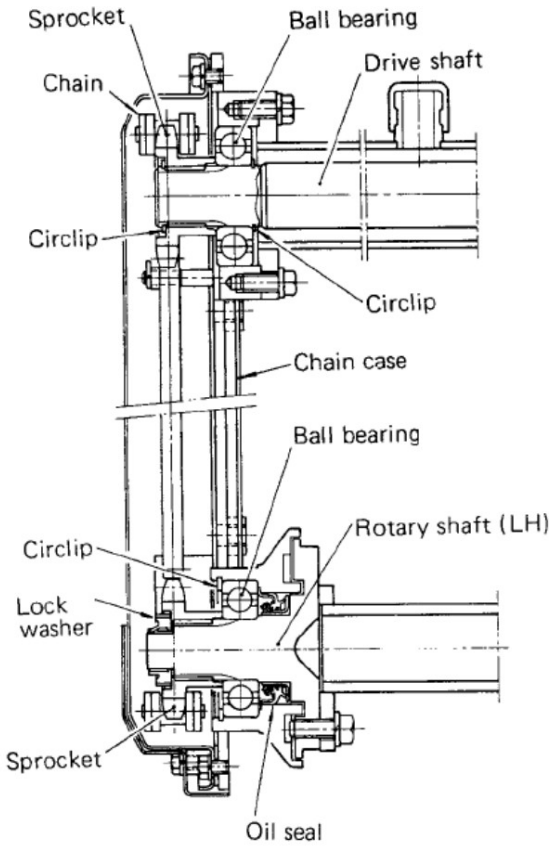
When installing the arm, be sure that it is aligned with the lift rod mounting plate of left-hand arm.

Tightening torque	4.9 ~ 5.7 kg-m (35 ~ 41 ft-lb)

(7) After tightening the arm securing bolts to the specified torque value, re-check bevel gear backlash to be sure that it is within the specified range. If the backlash is noted off the range, remove the two arms, right and left, and replace the liners by the ones that will satisfy the backlash specification.

(8) Fit circlip to the end of drive shaft.

Reassembling the chain case



(1) Grease oil seal, and fit the seal carefully to the lower hole of chain case. Position ball bearing in place by pushing it in, and retain it by installing circlip.

(2) Position left-hand rotary shaft in chain case.

(3) Coat the face of left-hand arm flange with sealant, attach chain case to it, and tighten the securing bolts to this torque value:

Tightening torque	4.9 ~ 5.7 kg-m (35 ~ 41 ft-lb)

(4) Fit ball bearing to drive shaft.

(5) Put chain over two sprockets, and fit the sprockets to drive shaft and rotary shaft. The boss of each sprocket comes on inner side. Make sure that the sprockets go in smoothly onto the splined shaft ends.

(6) Retain the sprocket on drive shaft by fitting circlip. Secure the sprocket on rotary shaft by tightening sleeve nut and locking the nut by bending its tab portion sharply.

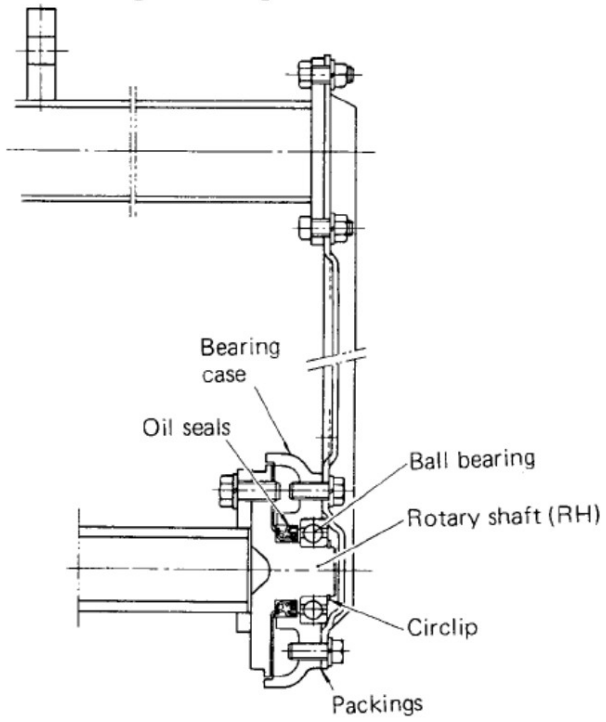
Tightening torque for sleeve nut	15.0 ~ 20.0 kg-m (108 ~ 145 ft-lb)

(7) Install chain tensioning spring and set it by inserting cotter pin.

(8) Secure chain case cover to chain case by tightening cover securing bolts. Before fitting the cover, be sure to coat both faces of the packing with sealant and position the packing neatly on chain case face.

Tightening torque for chain cover securing bolt	1.5 ~ 2.0 kg-m (11 ~ 14 ft-lb)

Reassembling the side-plate



(1) Push greased oil seals into bearing holder at the lower part of side-plate. Insert right-hand rotary shaft into the bearing holder, push in ball bearing, and retain the bearing by putting on circlip.

(2) Apply sealant to both faces of bearing holder and side-plate, and attach the holder to side-plate.

(3) Fill the holder with grease. Secure the cover to side-plate by tightening securing bolts to this torque value:

Tightening torque for cover	4.9 ~ 5.7 kg-m (35 ~ 41 ft-lb)

(4) Secure side-plate to right-hand arm.

Tightening torque for side-plate	4.9 ~ 5.7 kg-m (35 ~ 41 ft-lb)

INSTALLATION

Installing the rotary cover

Some of cover securing bolts on the chain case side are through-bolts. Wrap these bolts with sealing tape. Secure the covers to chain case, tightening the bolts temporarily.

Installing the frames

(1) Using bolts coated with "thread-lock," secure frames to gearbox. Position support in place, and lock it by inserting cotter pins. After installing drive shaft and others, secure the frame by tightening its securing bolts. Be sure to lock the frames by the plate.

Tightening torque for frame	4.9 ~ 5.7 kg-m (35 ~ 41 ft-lb)

(2) Install bolts for fastening rotary cover to frames, and tighten cover securing bolts good and hard.

Others

(1) One end of rotary pipe is marked "L-····, by punching. Position the pipe with its marked end brought to chain case side, and secure it by tightening the bolts to this torque value:

Tightening torque for rotary pipe	7.9 ~ 9.2 kg-m (57 ~ 67 ft-lb)

(2) Fill up gearbox and chain case with the prescribed oil.

(3) After installing rotary pipe, turn it by hand to be sure that it is capable of smooth rotation.

(4) Put the castle nut on the tip of depth adjusting handle; make sure that it moves smoothly; and lock the nut by inserting cotter pin.

(5) Mount the gauge wheel support on the support.

(6) Assemble the gauge wheels by reversing the disassembling procedure.

SPECIFICATIONS

Model				2PR-1110S	
Type				Side drive type rotary tiller	
Applicable tractor				MT160/D, MT180/D and MT180H/HD	
Mounting method				Special 2-point hitch	
Dimensions	Overall length		mm (in.)	1210 (47.64)	
	Overall width			1230 (48.41)	
	Overall height			800 (31.50)	
	Weight		kg (lb)	136 (299.8)	
Tilling tines	Tilling width		mm (in.)	1100 (43.31)	
	Tilling depth			150 (5.91)	
	Diameter			450 (17.7)	
	Number of tines			28	
	Drive system			Universal joint spiral bevel gear, chain side drive	
	Depth control			Lifting and lowering of tail wheels with a handle	
	Tilling shaft revolution at rated engine rpm	C-1	rpm	178	173 Incase of MT180H
		C-2		263	339
		C-3		430	
	Holder pitch		mm (in.)	46.5 (1.8)	
	Tilling pitch	F-1 C-1		112 (4.6)	
		F-1 C-2		168 (3.1)	
		F-1 C-3		280 (1.9)	
		F-2 C-1		76 (7.0)	
		F-2 C-2		114 (4.8)	
		F-2 C-3		189 (2.9)	
		F-3 C-1		46 (11.9)	
		F-3 C-2		70 (8.1)	
		F-3 C-3		116 (4.9)	
Oil capacities	Gear case oil		liter (pint)	0.4 (0.85) SAE# 80 ~ 90 gear oil	
	Chain case oil			0.7 (0.65) SAE# 80 ~ 90 gear oil	

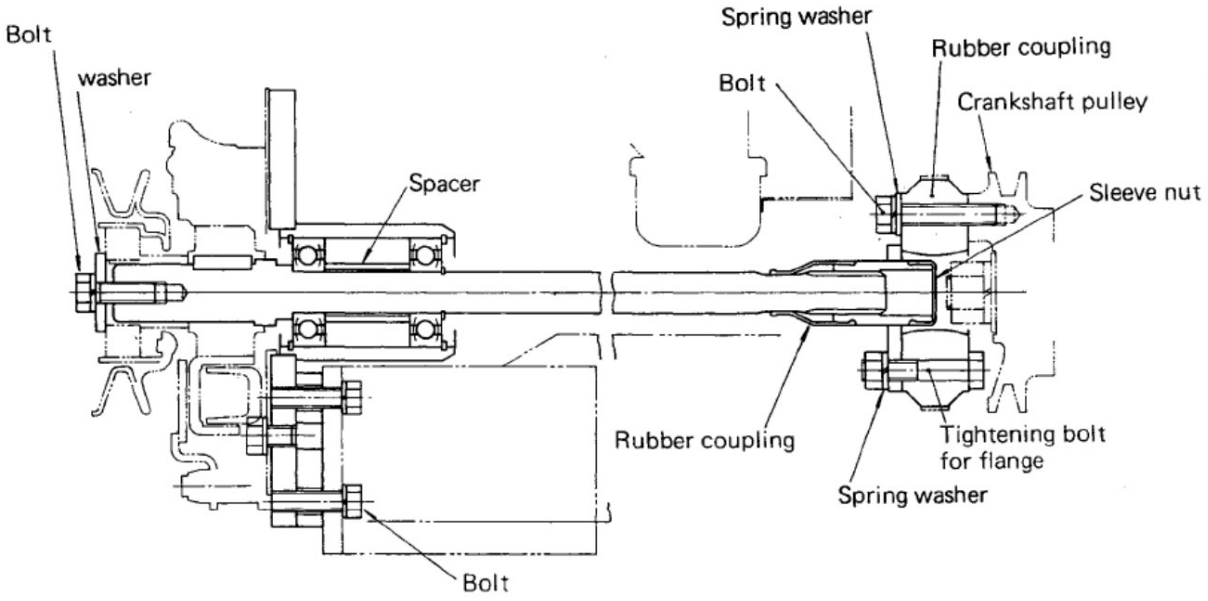
These specifications are subject to change without notice.

FRONT POWER TAKE-OFF (PTO) KIT

This PTO kit also can be installed on MITSUBISHI tractor (MT160/D, 180/D, and 180H/HD).
The only alteration required for installing the kit is to reposition the flange piece in place by reversing.

Description

This PTO is for making power available at the front end of the tractor from its engine through the CG rubber coupling provided on crankshaft pulley. With the front PTO kit installed, such an implement as a mower, sweeper, snow blower or the like can be driven from the engine.



Front PTO kit

Disassembly

(1) If the kit includes an electromagnetic clutch, remove the guard and undo the electric cord connection. Slacken "V" belt tensioning pulley, and remove the "V" belt. Loosen lock nut with washer; remove base securing bolts; and take down the clutch.

(2) Remove bolts securing the mounting bracket to chassis, and take down the front PTO.

(3) Pick out circlip, and draw the shaft out. The shaft may have to be tapped on lightly to make it come out: use a plastic hammer in such a case.

(4) Remove ball bearings, circlips and collar from the bracket.

Reassembly

(1) After fitting circlip to the front end of bracket, insert ball bearing into the bracket.

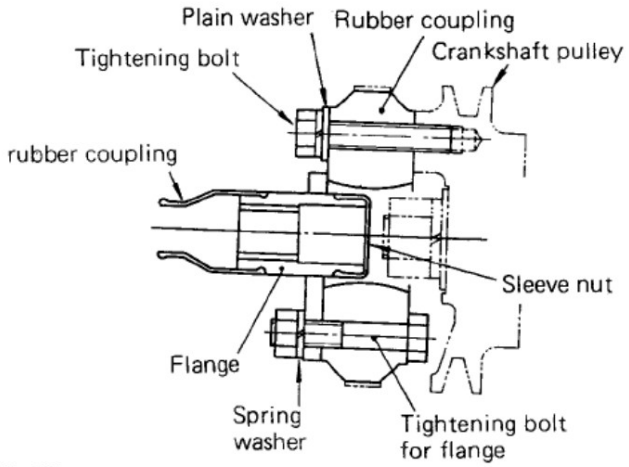
(2) Fit ball bearing collar and ball bearings to the PTO shaft. Insert it into the bracket and retain it in place by putting on circlip.

(3) Fit it to the bracket.

NOTE

When installing the front PTO, never loosen the nut on engine crankshaft.

(4) Mount the flange together with cap on rubber coupling, bringing its boss to outer side, and secure it to the coupling by tightening three bolts and nuts.



(5) With the flange secured as shown above, install the coupling on crankshaft pulley by tightening its mounting bolts to this torque value:

Tightening torque for coupling	4.0 ~ 4.5 kg-m (29 ~ 33 ft-lb)

NOTE

a) When installing rubber coupling to crankshaft pulley, be careful not to tighten it together with flange. In other words the flange is to be secured to the coupling and tighten with three sets of bolts and nuts, and the coupling is to be secured to crankshaft pulley and tightened with other three pieces of bolts.

b) The new rubber coupling comes with a steel band strapped around it. Remove this band after installing and securing the new coupling.

(6) Grease the splines cut in the rear end of PTO shaft, and insert this splined end of it with boot into the splined flange piece secured to rubber coupling. Keeping PTO shaft level with crankshaft, secure its bracket to chassis by tightening the bracket mounting bolts to this torque value:

Tightening torque for bracket	4.0 ~ 4.5 kg-m (29 ~ 33 ft-lb)

Install the electromagnetic clutch in the order that is reverse of its removal.

NOTE

When installing the pulley and magnetic clutch, the core might interfere with the clutch drum being positioned in place. In such case, eliminate the interference by loosening bolts securing the magnetic clutch base in place and displace the base out of the way for the drum. Be sure that the radial clearance between core and drum is uniform all around.

The axial clearance, too, must be uniform all around. To obtain a proper axial clearance, insert a liner between clutch drum and shoulder formed of PTO shaft.

Electrical wiring for Front PTO kit